OWNER´S MANUAL

Vehicle and Infotainment
ŠKODA OCTAVIA

ŠKODA


5E0012720AL

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

This Owner's Manual contains instructions about the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help and technical vehicle data.

Read this Owner's Manual carefully, because the operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

When using the vehicle, the universally applicable country-specific legal requirements (e.g. for transporting children, deactivating the airbag, tyre use, road traffic etc.) must always be observed.

Always pay attention when driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO

5E0012720AL

Table of Contents

Liability for defects and ŠKODA warranty for new cars

Materials defect liability
Your ŠKODA Partner, as a vendor, is liable to you for material damage to your new ŠKODA car, ŠKODA Genuine Parts or ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in accordance with statutory regulations and the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars
As well as the materials defect liability, ŠKODA AUTO a.s. grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as "ŠKODA warranty)," according to the conditions described below.

As part of the ŠKODA warranty, ŠKODA AUTO will ensure the following services.

- Free repair of faulty components or vehicle defects that occur within two years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of paintwork defects on your vehicle that occur within three years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of rust perforation to the bodywork of your vehicle that occurs within twelve years from the start of the warranty. Only rust perforation of body panels from the inside to the outside is included in the definition of rust perforation on bodywork and covered by the ŠKODA warranty.

The start of warranty is the date on which the first buyer purchases the new cars from the ŠKODA Partner[1]. This date must be noted accordingly by the ŠKODA Partner in the Owner´s Manual for your vehicle » *Documentation of vehicle handover*.

Vehicle repairs may be carried out either by replacing the faulty part or by repairing it. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty. In particular, there shall be no claims for replacement, cancellation, provision of a courtesy vehicle for the duration of repairs or compensation for damages.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner in a country in the European Economic Area (i.e. the countries of the European Union, Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein) or in Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner in one of these countries.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland.

One of the conditions for service from the ŠKODA warranty is that all service work has been carried out in a timely and adequate manner and in accordance with ŠKODA AUTO provisions. It must be proven that service work has been carried out properly and in accordance with the ŠKODA AUTO provisions when raising a claim from the ŠKODA warranty. In the event of a missed service or failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO provisions, you may still be entitled to warranty claims as long as you can prove that the missed service or the failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO provisions was not the cause of the defect.

Natural wear and tear to your vehicle is not covered by the ŠKODA warranty. The ŠKODA warranty also does not cover faults to bodywork, installations or conversions provided by third-parties, or vehicle faults caused as a result. The same applies to accessories that are not factory installed and/or delivered.

In addition, this warranty does not apply if the defect was caused by one of the following:

- Unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. use in racing competitions or overloading), improper care and maintenance or unapproved modification to your vehicle.
- Non-compliance with provisions in the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions.
- External causes or influences (e.g. accidents, hail, flooding etc.).

[1] Due to the requirements of generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be specified instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

- Parts fitted on or in the vehicle whose use has not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO, or modification of the vehicle in a manner not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. tuning).
- Damage caused by you that was not immediately seen to by a specialist garage or was not rectified properly.

It is the customer's responsibility to prove that it was not the cause.

This ŠKODA warranty does not affect the purchaser's statutory rights from materials defect liability from the vehicle vendor and other potential claims from product liability laws.

Mobility warranty
The mobility warranty provides a sense of security when travelling in your vehicle.

If your vehicle breaks down on the road due to an unexpected failure, services to keep you moving are provided under the mobility guarantee, which include the following services for you: Breakdown assistance at the roadside and towing to ŠKODA Service partners, technical assistance on the phone or on-site commissioning.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the ŠKODA Service Partner may provide further services as required, such as replacement transportation (bus, train etc.) or a courtesy vehicle etc.

More information regarding terms and conditions for the provision of a mobility warranty for your vehicle can be obtained from your ŠKODA Partner. They will also provide you with detailed terms and conditions for the mobility warranty with respect to your vehicle. In the event that there is no mobility warranty coverage available for your vehicle, you should check with any ŠKODA Service Partner about the possibility of a subsequent agreement.

Optional ŠKODA extended warranty
If you opted for a ŠKODA extended warranty when purchasing your new car, the two-year ŠKODA warranty with regards to all free warranty repairs is extended by the period you chose or until the chosen mileage limit has been reached, whichever occurs first.

The previously mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against rust perforation are unaffected by the ŠKODA extended warranty.

The ŠKODA extended warranty does not apply to external and internal foils.

The information on the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA extended warranty is provided by your ŠKODA partner.

Note
The ŠKODA extended warranty is only available in some countries.

Printed Owner's Manual

In the printed Owner's Manual, the most important information relating to vehicle operation is included. The Owner's Manual with further detailed information is available in the **Online Version** on ŠKODAweb pages » Fig. 1 *on page 8*.

These Owner´s Manual apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

This Owner's Manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The scope of equipment in your vehicle refers to your purchase contract for the vehicle. For any questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **Pictures** in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO pursues a policy of ongoing product and model development with all vehicles. Changes in terms of supply scope are possible at any time with regard to design, equipment and technology. The information listed in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

Therefore legal claims cannot be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in this Owner's Manual.

We recommend that the **web pages** that are referred to in this Owner's Manual are displayed using the classic view. If the web pages are displayed using the mobile view, they may not contain all necessary information.

Online Owner's Manual

Fig. 1
Online manual on the ŠKODA websites

The online Owner's Manual contains some detailed information, which is not listed in the printed version of the manual.

To **display the online Owner's Manual**, proceed as follows.

1. Read the QR-Code » Fig. 1 **or** Enter the following address in your web browser.

   http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

   The web page with a model overview of the ŠKODA brand is opened.
2. Select the desired model - a menu with the manuals is displayed.
3. Select the construction period as well as the language.
4. Select one of the following manual types.
   - File in **PDF**format
   - **Online**version of the manual
   - Variant for the mobile device - **MyŠKODA App application**

Notes

Terms used

"Specialist" - Workshop - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA Service Partner" - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to perform service work on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA Partner" - A company that has been authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes

"Press" - Short press (e.g. a button) within 1 s

"Hold" - Long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 s

Explanation of symbols

- Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings
- Situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible
- ® Registered trademark
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display
- Text display in the segment display
- → Marker to the next operation step

WARNING

Texts with this symbol draw attention to threats of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Structure of the Owner´s Manual and further information

Structure of the manual
The Owner's Manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Paragraph** (e.g. Operating instructions) - the title of the paragraph is always indicated on the lower left-hand side
  - **Main chapter** (e.g. Checking and refilling) - the title of the main chapter is always indicated on the lower right-hand side
    - **Chapter** (e.g. Engine oil)
      - 🕮 **Introductory information** - Module overview within the chapter, introductory information about the chapter content and, where appropriate, information relevant to the whole chapter
      - **Module** (e.g. Checking and refilling)

Information search
When searching for information in the Owner´s Manual, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the Owner's Manual.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear” relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units
The volume, weight, speed and length data are given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

Display
In this Owner's Manual, the MAXI DOT display is used as the display in the instrument cluster unless otherwise stated.

Emergency assistance
In the case of a breakdown, the required breakdown service contact information can be found in the following locations.

- ▶ Contact information from ŠKODA Partner (e.g. window sticker)
- ▶ Infotainment (Phone - breakdown service / information service menu)
- ▶ Mobile application ŠKODA
- ▶ ŠKODA websites

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
ACC	Adaptive cruise control
AG	Automatic gearbox
AGM	Vehicle battery type
TCS	Traction control
CNG	compressed natural gas
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
COC	Declaration of conformity
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
ET	Rim depth
EU	European Union
G-TEC	Labelling for natural gas vehicles
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
KESSY	Keyless unlocking, starting and locking
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for output
LED	Lighting element type
M1	A passenger car constructed primarily for the transport of people
MCB	Multi-collision brake
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
MSR	Engine drag torque control
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	personal identification number
Qi	Standard for wireless charging by electrical induction
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbo-charging and common rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbo charging and direct injection
VIN	Vehicle identification number
W	Watt, unit of power
Wi-Fi	Wireless data network
XDS	Functional extension of the electronic differential lock

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This section of the manual includes important information on the subject of passive safety. We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, safety of children and anything similar.

Other important safety information can also be found in the following chapters of this Owner´s Manual. The Owner´s Manual should therefore always be in the vehicle.

Before setting off

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Check the function of the lighting and turn signal systems.
- Check the function of the wipers and check the wiper blades for wear. Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed. Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
- Secure all items of luggage.
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
- Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Protect children by using a suitable child seat» page 23, *Transporting children safely*.
- Adopt the correct seated position. Instruct your passengers to assume the correct seated position» page 12, *Correct and safe seated position*.

Driving safety

In the interests of traffic safety, the following information must be observed.

- Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, (e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls).
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, (e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs).
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys (at least every two hours).

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions for the **Passenger** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.

The following list contains instructions for all **Passengers** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to the side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your limbs out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.

WARNING

▪ The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
▪ Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 23, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
▪ The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

WARNING

By sitting incorrectly, the occupant is risking life-threatening injuries.

Driver's correct seated position

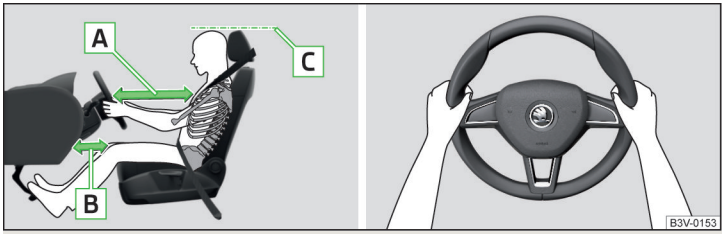


Fig. 2 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 13 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
✓ For vehicles equipped with driver knee airbags, adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dashboard in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 2 - B.
✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 2 - A.
✓ Adjust the headrest so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of your head (not for seats with integrated headrests) » Fig. 2 - C.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 16, *Using seat belts*.

WARNING

▪ Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
▪ When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position » Fig. 2. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle, inner edge of the steering wheel or similar). Otherwise, in the event of airbag deployment, you could suffer serious injury to the arms, hands and head.
▪ Ensure that no objects are located in the driver's footwell, as they could lodge in the pedal system whilst driving. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

Fig. 3 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 13 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Swing the safety lever under the steering wheel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 3.
› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the holder in arrow direction 3 until the stop.

! WARNING

▪ Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
▪ The safety lever must always be locked after adjusting so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position – risk of accident!

Passenger's correct seating position

Read and observe ! on page 13 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
✓ Adjust the headrests so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of your head » Fig. 2 *on page 13* - C (not for seats with integrated headrests).
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 16, *Using seat belts*.

! WARNING

▪ Ensure a distance of at least 25 cm to the dashboard, otherwise the airbag system will not be able to protect you properly - risk of death!
▪ Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surface of the seats! You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

Passengers' correct seating position on the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 13 first.

For passenger safety on the rear seats and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following information must be observed.

✓ Adjust the headrests so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of the head » Fig. 2 *on page 13* - C.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 16, *Using seat belts*.

emergency call

Only valid for some countries.

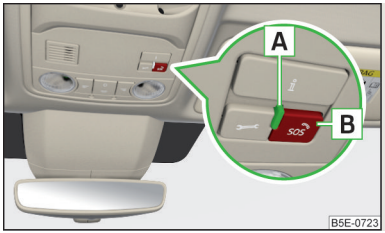


Fig. 4
Warning light and emergency button

The emergency call system (hereinafter only system) is used for automatic or manual connection to an emergency number.

Vehicles with the Care Connect » page 114 service are equipped with the system.

After connection, communication is made with the associated control centre via the loudspeaker and microphone built into the vehicle.

Warning light and emergency button » Fig. 4

A Warning light

B SOS D - establishment of connection to emergency number

Automatic establishment of connection

In the case of an accident with airbag deployment, the system automatically establishes a connection to an emergency call number.

In the case of a less serious accident, the system offers automatically connects to an emergency call or breakdown call number via the Infotainment screen.

Manual establishment of connection

› Press the button B » Fig. 4 for longer than 3 s (the established connection can be **terminated** by pressing the button again).

› To confirm the **connection setup** displayed in the Infotainment screen / on the display of the instrument cluster **or** wait a few seconds, the connection is set up automatically. The warning light A flashes green.

The **Function of the system** after switching on the ignition by the warning light A appropriate » Fig. 4,

▶ In functional system, the indicator will light green.

▶ If a fault, the warning light illuminates red.

! WARNING

- The availability of a mobile network is indispensable for the system function - no emergency call is possible if a mobile network is not available.
- In the case of a system fault there is a risk that the system will not activate in the event of an accident. This must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

i Note

- Along with the connection to the emergency call number, the system sends the predefined vehicle and occupant data time at the time of the accident (e.g. the vehicle identification number, the vehicle location, the number of unbelted occupants, the number of deployed airbags and other similar information) to the emergency call centre.
- If the vehicle is located in an area without an operational emergency call system infrastructure, then the vehicle data is not transmitted to the emergency call centre.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy considerably. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

When transporting children, observe the following information» page 23, *Transporting children safely*.

WARNING

- Put the seat belt on before starting any journey! This also applies to other passengers - there is a danger of injury!
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 12, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of safety belts

- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.
- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.

WARNING (Continued)

- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e.g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 79.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair the proper operation of the inertia reel » page 267.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If parts of the belt system become damaged (e.g. the belt webbing, the belt connections, the inertia reel, the locking part etc.), the respective seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage immediately.
- Seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced by a specialist garage. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Correct routing of seat belt

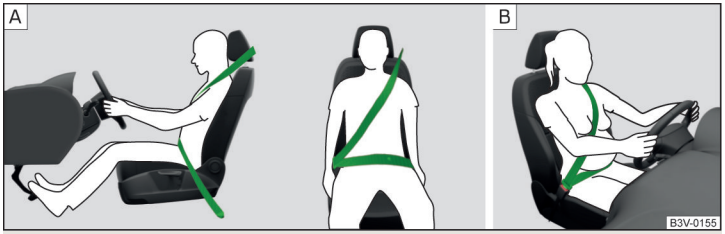


Fig. 5 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

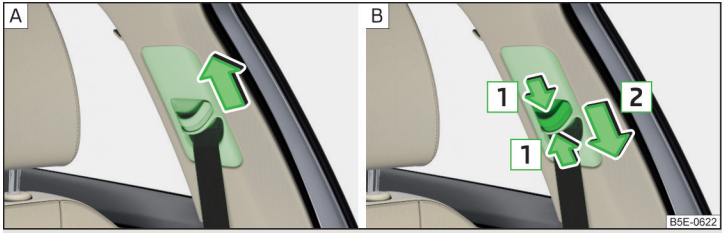


Fig. 6 **Seat belt height adjusters for front seats**

Read and observe ! on page 16 first.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The **shoulder part of the belt** must run approximately over the middle of your shoulder (never across your neck) and fit well against your upper body » Fig. 5 - A.

The **lap part of the belt** must run lap part of the belt must run in front of the pelvis (must never run across your stomach) and must always fit snugly » Fig. 5 - A.

In the case of **pregnant women**, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 5 - B.

Seat belt height adjusters for front seats

› Push the seat belt guide loop **upwards** in the direction of arrow» Fig. 6 - A.
› **Or**: push together the mechanism in the direction of arrows 1 and push the return pulley **downwards** in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 6 - B.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

! WARNING

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys, etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

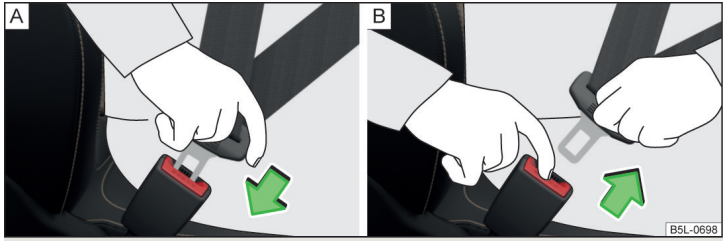


Fig. 7 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 16 first.

Before fastening

› Adjust the headrest properly (does not apply to seats with integrated headrests).
› Adjust the seat (applies to the front seats).

› Adjust the belt height (applies to the front seats).

Fasten

› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat » Fig. 7 - Ⓐ until it audibly clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

Release

› Hold the lock tongue and press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 7 - Ⓑ. The lock tongue pops out.
› Guide the belt back by hand so that the seat belt does not twist and the seat belt strap rolls up fully.

WARNING

The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.

Inertia reel and belt tensioners

Introduction

Inertia reels

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel. The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have the inertia reel inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

If there is a collision with a certain severity the seat belts are tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body motion is prevented.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of **minor** collisions, in the case of a roll-over and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system, including the removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.
- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

As a supplement to the seat belts, the airbag system provides additional passenger protection in the event of severe frontal and side collisions.

The best possible protective effect of the airbag can only be achieved if the seat belts are applied properly. The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belts.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the warning light in the instrument cluster » page 36.

System description

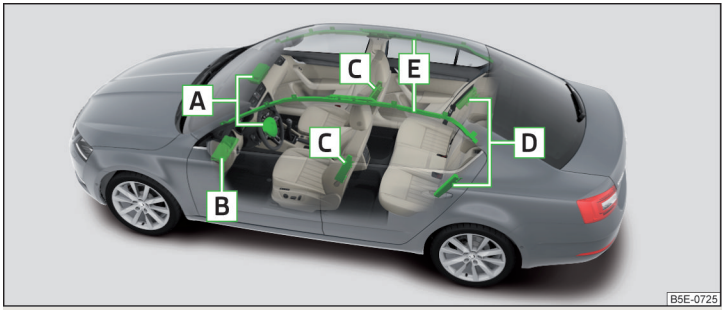


Fig. 8 **Airbag installation points**

Airbag installation points » Fig. 8

- A Front airbags
- B Driver's knee airbag
- C Front side airbags
- D Rear side airbags
- E Head airbags

Front airbags - The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

The front airbags are provided with the lettering AIRBAG on the steering wheel and on the dashboard on the front passenger side.

Driver´s knee airbag - The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

The knee airbag is provided with the lettering AIRBAG on the dashboard on the driver's side.

Side airbags - The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunged into the fully inflated airbag. The risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

The side air bags are marked by a label with the letteringAIRBAG on the front seat backrests. The rear side airbags are provided with the lettering AIRBAG in between the entrance area and the rear seat backrest.

Head airbags - The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

The head airbags are provided with the lettering AIRBAG marked on the B-pillar cladding.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following parts.

- Individual airbags.
- Warning light in the instrument cluster » page 36.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 22.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag in the middle of the dash panel » page 22.

Airbag deployment

Fig. 9 **Inflated airbags**

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

When triggered, the airbag is filled with gas and unfolds. The inflation of the airbag is carried out in a fraction of a second.

Upon inflation of the airbag, smoke is released. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Triggering conditions
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. Important here is the hardness of the object on which the vehicle impacts, the impact angle, the vehicle speed, etc.

The deceleration plays an important role in the deployment of the airbags. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.
- Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
- Front side airbag.
- Rear side airbag.
- Head airbag.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- All doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.
- The interior light comes on (if the automatic operation of the interior light is switched on - switch).

When there is no air bag deployment?
With **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear collision, overturning of the vehicle or vehicle roll-over there is no airbag deployment.

Safety instructions

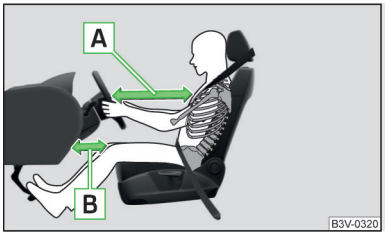


Fig. 10
Safe distance from the steering wheel and the dashboard

WARNING

General information
- **The best possible protective effect of the seat belts and the airbag system can only be achieved in the correct seated position** » page 12.
- The airbag develops considerable forces when triggered, which can lead to serious injuries or even death if the correct seating position or seated position is not observed. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 25.
- If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.

WARNING (Continued)

- The airbag system must be replaced if it has been deployed.
- In the area of the front airbag and the knee airbag, the surface of the steering wheel and the dashboard should be cleaned using only a dry cloth or one that has been dampened with water.

WARNING

Information about front airbags

- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or the dashboard » Fig. 10 - A. If you do not keep this distance, it means that the airbag system cannot protect you - There is a risk to life! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 22, *Airbag deactivation*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed.
- No other persons, animals or objects may be positioned in front of the occupants on the front seats in the deployment area of the front air bags.
- The steering wheel and the surface of the dashboard on the front passenger side must not have stickers attached, covered or modified in any other way. No parts (e.g. cup holders, mobile phone mounts etc.(should be mounted in the vicinity of the airbag installation locations and in the airbag deployment area.
- Never place objects on the surface of the dashboard on the front passenger side.

WARNING

Information about knee airbags

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dashboard in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 10 - B. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.

WARNING (Continued)

- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. Nothing may be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

WARNING

Information about for side and head airbags

- No objects (e.g. sun visors turned towards the windows) should be located in the deployment area of the side and head airbags. No accessories (e.g. cup holders etc.) should be fitted to the doors - risk of injury!
- Hang only light clothing on clothes hooks in the vehicle. Do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets of the clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang the clothing.
- The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » page 261.
- No excessive forces, such as knocks, kicks etc., should be exerted on the seat backrests - there is a risk of damage to the side air bags. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Have any damage to the original seat covers or stitching at the installation point of the side airbags repaired immediately by a specialist garage.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the seat) must only be carried out by a specialist garage. Further information » page 261.

WARNING (Continued)

- No modifications should be made to parts of the airbag system, to the front bumper or to the body.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.

Airbag deactivation

Introduction

Deactivating airbags

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » Fig. 11 *on page 22* - A.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

The airbag deactivation is indicated by the warning light » page 36.

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- If a child seat must be used on the front passenger seat, where the child is transported facing rearward » page 23.
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated upon the sale of the vehicle, the buyer must be informed of this!

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

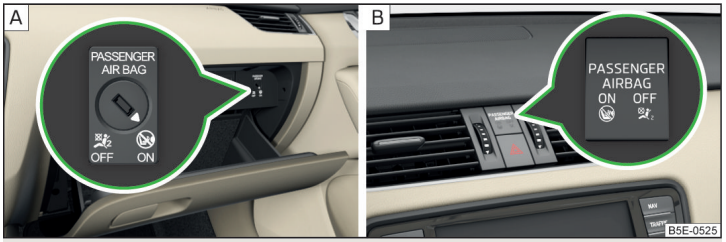


Fig. 11 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front passenger airbag**

Key switch positions » Fig. 11 - A

OFF The front passenger airbag is deactivated - after the ignition is switched on, the indicator light illuminates OFF » Fig. 11 - B

ON The front passenger airbag is switched on - after switching on the ignition, the warning light illuminates for 65 seconds ON

Switch off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key ».
› Carefully insert the key into the slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **OFF**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch ».
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the warning light OFF illuminates after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key ».
› Carefully insert the key into the slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **ON**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch ».
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.

› Check that the warning light ON illuminates after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The key cannot be inserted into the key switch while driving. Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag! The airbag could be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!
- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the warning lights ON OFF flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident. Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, children must be transported in child seats!

The information in this Owner´s Manual as well as the instructions of the child seat manufacturer must be observed when installing and using the child seat.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you always transport child seats on the rear seats. Children should be transported on the front passenger seat only in exceptional circumstances.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 Economic Commission for Europe standard must be used.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard have a test seal that cannot be removed: A large letter E in a circle, with the test number underneath.

WARNING

- One should never carry children - or indeed babies - on one's lap.
- When leaving the vehicle, do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. They might not be capable of leaving the vehicle or helping themselves independently in the event of an emergency. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.
- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.

WARNING (Continued)

- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- When installing the child seat on the back seat, the corresponding front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child being transported in a child seat.
- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 80. After removing the child seat, refit the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat (variant 1)

Does not apply to Taiwan

Fig. 12 **Warning labels**

Read and observe ! on page 23 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag. This could cause serious injury to the child, or even death.

This is indicated also on stickers that are located at the following positions.

- On the passenger sun visor» Fig. 12 - A.
- On the B-pillar on the front passenger side » Fig. 12 – B.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » !.
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 and 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side. Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt does not “jam” in the return pulley. In the event of an accident, there is the risk of injury to the neck of the child carried due to the seat belt!

WARNING

- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- As soon as the child seat, in which the child is transported with their back in the direction of travel, is no longer used in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be switched on again.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat (variant 2)

Applies to Taiwan

Fig. 13
Warning labels

Read and observe ! on page 23 first.

No babies, infants or children are to be carried on the front passenger seat.

A label to this effect can also be found on the front passenger's sun visor » Fig. 13.

Child safety and the side airbag

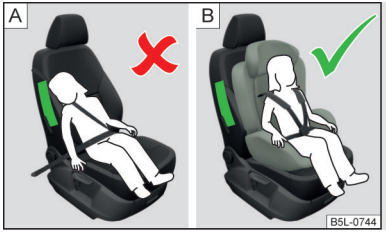


Fig. 14
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! on page 23 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 14 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the area into which the side airbag will deploy to allow the airbag to provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 14 - B.

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! on page 23 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Use of child safety seats which are secured using a seat belt

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Read and observe ! on page 23 first.

Overview of the usability of child seats secured with a seat belt on seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats External	Rear seat centre
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U Child seat category “Universal” - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

attachment points of the ISOFIX system

Fig. 15
Labels of the system ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a system for securing child seats quickly and safely.

Two locking eyes are located between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing the ISOFIX system child seat in place.

First, remove the caps A in order to access the locking eyes» Fig. 15. After removing the child seat, replace he caps.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions of the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk of death!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with a ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child safety seats with the ISOFIX system

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a]	Front passenger seat[b]	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
0+ up to 13 kg	E	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
	D			
	C			
1 9-18 kg	D	**X**	**IL-SU IUF**	**X**
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			
2 15-25 kg	-	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
3 22-36 kg	-	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**

[a] The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

[b] If the front passenger seat is fitted with ISOFIX system attachment points, it is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suitable for installation of a ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the ISOFIX installation of a child seat with "Universal" approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER system attachment belt.

X The seat is not fitted with ISOFIX system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER system

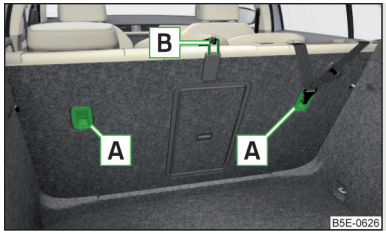


Fig. 16
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

TOP TETHER is an attachment system that restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The locking eyes **A** for attaching the belt of a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 16.

Some country-specific models can also be equipped with a locking eye **B** on the back of the middle rear seat backrest » Fig. 16.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system.
- Only use child seats with the **TOP TETHER** system on the seats with the attachment points.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.

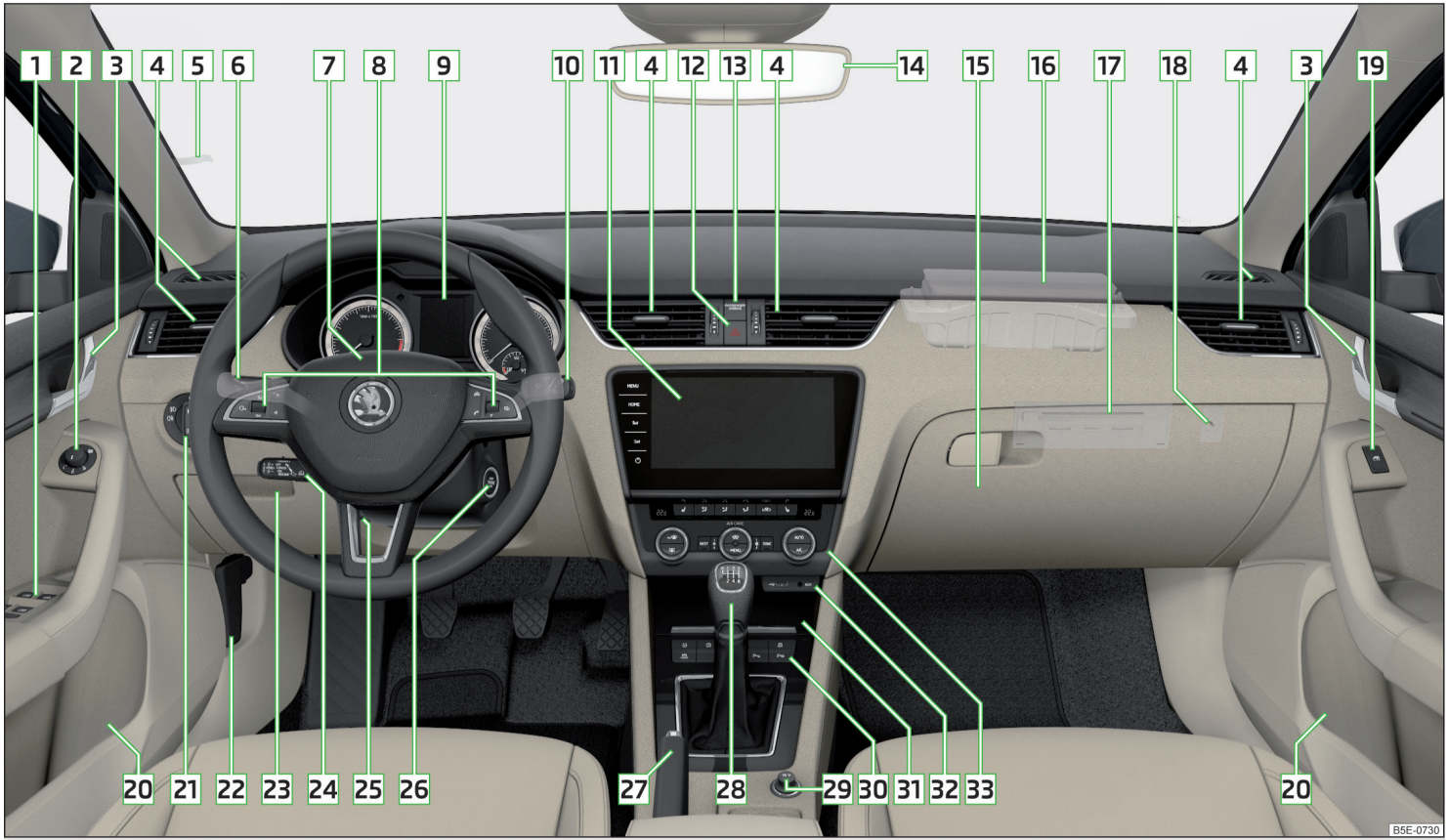


Fig. 17 **Cockpit example for LHD**

Operation

Cockpit

Overview

Note

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in » Fig. 17.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

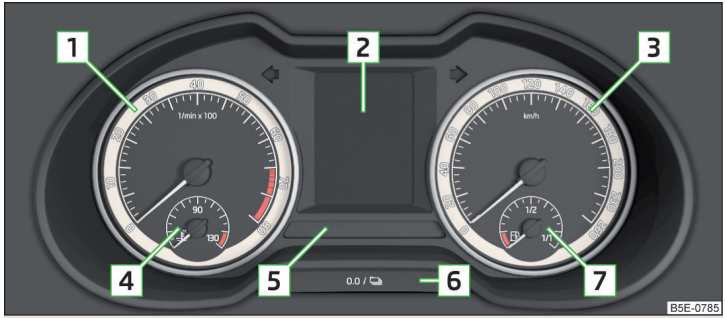


Fig. 18 **Instrument cluster**

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 32
- with warning lights » page 33

2 Display » page 42

3 Speedometer
- with warning lights » page 33

4 Depending on equipment fitted
- Coolant temperature gauge » page 32
- Gas gauge[1)]

5 Bar with warning lights » page 33

6 Operation key:
- Setting the time » page 43
- Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 42
- Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 49

7 Petrol/ diesel reserve display » page 33

The brightness of the instrument illumination is set automatically depending on the ambient lighting throughout. If the visibility is poor and the lights are not on, the brightness of the instrument lighting reduces to alert the driver to switch on the lights in due time.

The brightness of the instrument lighting can be adjusted in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → → **Light**.

Engine revolutions counter

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 18 *on page 32* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the tachometer red scale range indicates the maximum permitted speed for an engine that has been driven-in and has reached operating temperature.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D/S** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 43.

CAUTION

The pointer of the engine revolutions counter must reach the red area for only a short time - there is a risk of engine damage!

Coolant temperature gauge

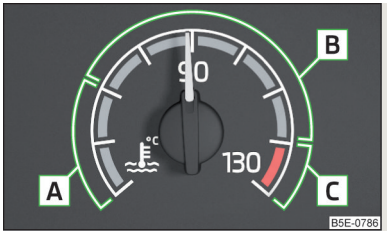


Fig. 19
Coolant temperature gauge

The display » Fig. 19 only works if the ignition is switched on.

[1)] Applies to G-TEC vehicles.

Cold range - The pointer is in the range A, the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds and high engine loads.

Operating range - The pointer is in the range B.

High temperature range - The pointer is in the range C. The coolant temperature is too high. The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 39.

Fuel gauge - natural gas

Fig. 20
Gas gauge

The display » Fig. 20 only works if the ignition is switched on.

The capacity of the natural gas fuel tank is approximately 15 kg.

If this fuel level reaches the reserve area, in the display the icon and a request for natural gas refuelling is displayed.

Note

The arrow ▶ next to the symbol within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Fuel gauge - Petrol/ Diesel

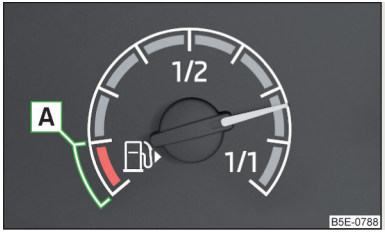


Fig. 21
Fuel gauge - petrol/diesel

The display » Fig. 21 only works if the ignition is switched on.

The capacity of the fuel tank for petrol/diesel is approximately 50 litres for vehicles with front-wheel drive, and approximately 55 litres for vehicles with four-wheel drive.

If the fuel level reaches the reserve level A » Fig. 21, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 37.

WARNING

For the vehicle systems to function correctly, and thus for safe driving, there must be sufficient fuel in the tank. Never drain the fuel tank completely – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

The arrow ▶ next to the symbol within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Warning lights

Introduction

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test. If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

The warning lights are located at the following positions in the instrument cluster » Fig. 18 *on page 32*.

- Engine revolutions counter 1
- Display 2
- Speedometer 3
- Bar with warning lights 5

Warning lights in the display
Depending on the significance, the warning light ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) illuminates in the bar with the warning lights along with some other warning lights in the display.

Depending on vehicle equipment, some warning lights can be displayed in colour on the display. For example. the coolant warning lamp may be represented as follows.

▶ - Segment display / monochromatic (“black and white”) MAXI DOT display
▶ - Coloured MAXI DOT display

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 68. Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 272.

Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

(P) lights up – the handbrake has been applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

▶ Release the handbrake.

Brake system

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

(!) illuminates – the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 277.

WARNING

- If the warning light (!) lights up at the same time as the warning light (ABS) » page 36, (ABS) *Anti-lock braking system (ABS)*, (STOP) **do not continue your journey.** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Front seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

lights up - the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

At a speed of more than 30 km/h, the warning light flashes and an audible warning sounds at the same time.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 minutes, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light illuminates permanently.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

illuminates - the ACC delay is not sufficient.

▶ Apply the brake.

For more information about the ACC system » page 232.

Power steering/steering lock (KESSY system)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

Fault in the power steering
(!) lights up – this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist is no longer working (significantly higher steering forces).

(!) lights up – this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.

▶ Switch off the ignition, start the engine again and travel a short distance.
▶ If the warning light ! does not go off, stop the vehicle, **do not continue your journey**. Seek help from a specialist garage.
▶ If the warning light ! does not go off, you can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering lock defect (KESSY system)
An audible signal sounds as a warning.

! flashes	M Steering column lock faulty. Stop! S STOP VEHICLE STEERING FAULTY

▶ Park the vehicle, **do not continue your journey**. After switching off the ignition, it is no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. Infotainment), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

! flashes	M Steering lock: Workshop! S STEERING WORKSHOP

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering column lock not unlocked (System KESSY)

! flashes	M Move the steering wheel! S MOVE STEERING WHEEL

▶ Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.
▶ If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light ! comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after the motor is restarted and a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Stability Control (ESC)/Traction control (TCS)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

If your vehicle is equipped with the ESC system, the TCS is part of the ESC system.

flashes – the ESC or TCS is currently active.

lights up – there is an ESC or TCS fault.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the ESC or TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.
▶ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ESC or TCS is fully functional again.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

For more information on the ESC system » page 209 or TCS system » page 210.

Traction control (TCS) deactivated

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

illuminates – the TCS system is disabled.

Note
On vehicles without the ESC system, the warning light **does not illuminate** upon deactivation of the TCS system, a message is just displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

lights up – there is an ABS fault.

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! WARNING

- If the warning light lights up at the same time as the warning light » page 34, *Brake system*, **do not continue your journey.** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

lights up – the rear fog light is switched on.

Emission control system

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

lights up – there is a fault in the emission control system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Preheating unit (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

flashes – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

There is a fault in the preheating unit if the warning light does not come on or illuminates continuously once the ignition has been switched on.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

EPC Engine electronics warning light (petrol)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

EPC lights up – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Safety systems

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

System fault

lights up - there is a fault in the airbag system.

M **Error: Airbag**

S **AIRBAG ERROR**

▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch

illuminates for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool

illuminates for around 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for approximately 12 seconds.

M **Airbag/ belt tensioner deactivated.**

S **AIRBAG/ BELT TENSIONER OFF**

ProActive passenger protection

illuminates and the following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Proactive passenger protection not available.**
S **PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT NOT AVAIL**

or

M **Proactive passenger protection: function restricted.**
S **LIMITED PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT**

The seat belt for the driver and front passenger needs to be replaced.

▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

Tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

Change of tyre pressure values

(!) lights up - there was a pressure change in one of the tyres.

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

▶ Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
▶ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressures » page 281.
▶ Correct the tyre pressure if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 286 or use the repair kit » page 289.
▶ Save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 249.

System fault

(!) flashes for approximately 1 minute and remains lit – there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

▶ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light (!) flashes after starting the engine again, there is a system error.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light (!) comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Other incidents

The warning light (!) might be lit for one of the following reasons.
▶ The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute the load evenly.
▶ The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
▶ Snow chains are mounted.
▶ A wheel has been changed.

CAUTION

Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light (!) in the instrument cluster can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Brake linings

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

illuminates - the brake pads are worn.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Low fuel - petrol/diesel

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

illuminates – the fuel level in the fuel tank is at the reserve level (approximately 6 litres).

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

▶ Fill up with fuel » page 268.

Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning lights indicate the status of the Lane Assist system.

More information about the Lane Assist System » page 244.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

flashes – the left turn signal is turned on.

flashes – the right turn signal is turned on.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate (does not apply when towing).

When the hazard warning light system is switched on, this will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Trailer turn signal lights

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

flashes – the trailer turn signal lights are switched on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

▶ Check the trailer bulbs.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

illuminates – the fog lights are switched on.

Speed regulating system/speed limiter

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

illuminates - the vehicle speed is limited by the speed regulating system or the adaptive cruise control or by the speed limiter.

flashes – the speed set with the speed limiter has been exceeded.

Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

lights up – apply the brake.

Natural gas operation

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

illuminates - the vehicle is running on natural gas.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

lights up – the main beam or the headlight flasher is switched on.

Automatic gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

Gearbox overheated

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Illuminates	**M Gearbox overheated. You can drive on.** **S GEARBOX OVERHEATED**

Transmission overheated. You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution.

Illuminates	**M Gearbox overheated. Stop! Log book!** **S STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT**

▶ **Do not drive the vehicle!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

You can continue your journey as soon as the warning light disappears.

▶ If the warning light does not go out, **do not continue your journey.** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Transmission problem

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox faulty. Stop the vehicle safely!**
	S	**GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP**

▶ Park the vehicle, **do not continue your journey.** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox in emergency mode. No reverse gear.**
	S	**GEARBOX ERROR REV_ GEAR NOT AVAIL**
Illuminates	M	**Error: Gearbox. Speed is limited.**
	S	**GEARBOX ERROR**

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Rear seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

lights up – a rear seat belt is not fastened.

lights up – a rear seat belt is fastened.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular light lights up briefly and indicates the current belt status!

Generator

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

lights up – the battery is not being charged whilst the engine is running.

▶ As the vehicle battery during your journey, are all non-essential electrical loads (e.g. Infotainment) must be switched off.
▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! CAUTION

If in addition to the light the light illuminates while driving, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

Coolant level too low

Illuminates	M	**ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK Log book!**
	S	**ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK**

▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and let it cool.
▶ Check the coolant level » page 276.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the warning light lights up again, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

▶ Switch off the ignition.
▶ Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the warning light lights up again, **stop driving.**

▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

Illuminates	M	**Engine overheat. Stop! Log book!**
	S	**ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP**

▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and let it cool.
▶ Continue your journey only after the warning light has disappeared.

Engine oil pressure

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

flashes – the engine oil pressure is too low.

▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.
▶ If the warning light flashes, **stop driving**, even if the oil level is OK. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.
▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If it is not possible to top up with engine oil under the given conditions, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

Engine oil level too low

⚠ Illuminates	M	**Oil level: add oil!**
	S	**ADD OIL**

▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If the engine oil is not replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high

⚠ Illuminates	M	**Reduce oil level!**
	S	**OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH**

▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.
▶ If the oil level is too high, you can driven on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Fault on the engine oil level sensor

⚠ Illuminates	M	**Oil sensor: Workshop!**
	S	**OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP**

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

If it is not possible to top up with engine oil under the given conditions, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

⚠ illuminates – one of the lamps is faulty.

A message will appear in the display about the affected lamp.

Diesel particle filter (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

⚠ illuminates – the filter is clogged with soot.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light goes out.

✓ Fourth or fifth gear engaged (automatic gearbox: position **D / S**).
✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
✓ Engine speed between 1800 - 2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning light extinguishes.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does not go out and the warning light begins to flash.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the actual weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.
- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials, such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or the like.

CAUTION

- As long as the warning light illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.

Note

We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

⚠ illuminates – the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.

▶ Top up the windscreen washer fluid » page 274.

High-beam assistant

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

illuminates – the high beam assistant is activated » page 67, *Light Assist*.

START-STOPsystem

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning lights Ⓐ indicate the status of the START STOP system » page 199.

Display of a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

❄ illuminates – the outside temperature is below +4 °C.

WARNING

Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The fuel filter with water separator, filters out dirt and water from the fuel.

If too much water is present in the separator, the following information appears on the instrument cluster display.

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

⚠ Illuminates	**M** Water in fuel filter. Log book! **S** WATER IN FUEL FILTER

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning lights indicate the condition of the ACC system » page 232.

Front Assist

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

illuminates – the safe distance to the vehicle in front is below the minimum.

Information on the Front Assist system» page 238.

Front assist

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

⚠ Illuminates

▶ Front Assist has recognised the risk of a collision or automatically triggered an emergency braking manoeuvre » page 238.

▶ An automatic deactivation of Front Assist took place with ESC Sport activated » page 209 and with ASR activated» page 210.

▶ Front Assist is currently not available » page 240.

with the lettering OFF ⚠ illuminates - Front Assist is deactivated » page 240.

Economy mode

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

eco illuminates - the vehicle is in economy mode due to the intervention of the active cylinder management or due to the neutral position of the automatic gearbox.

OFF ROAD mode

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

illuminates – the conditions for the engagement of OFF ROADmode are met» page 211, *OFF ROAD mode*.

flashes – the hill descent assistant is engaged at the moment.

Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

⚠ illuminates – there is a DCC fault.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Service

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

illuminates – information regarding a service appointment that is due » page 49, *Service interval display*.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

Display in the instrument cluster

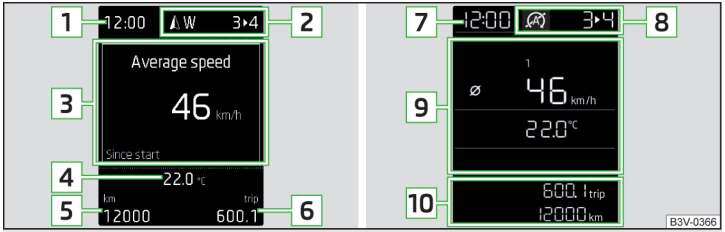


Fig. 22 **Display types: MAXI DOT / Segment display**

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the information system uses the display in the instrument cluster to provide the following information » Fig. 22.

1 Time / symbols of the Infotainment voice control
2 Engaged gear / gear recommendation
Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
Warning lights of the START-STOP system
Compass display[1)]
Detected traffic signs
3 Driving data (multifunction display)
Warning lights
Information messages
Door alarm
Eco tips
Service interval display
4 Outside temperature

[1)] Applies to vehicles with factory-installed navigation system.

5 Cruise control / speed limiter
Total distance travelled
6 Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
7 Time
8 Warning lights of the START-STOP system
Engaged gear / gear recommendation
Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
9 Outside temperature
Warning lights
Driving data (multifunction display)
10 Total distance travelled
Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
Cruise control / speed limiter
Service interval display
Information messages

Door, luggage compartment and bonnet alarm
When the door or luggage compartment / bonnet is open, a graphic warning appears in the display.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)
› Press button A » Fig. 23 *on page 43*.

Setting the clock

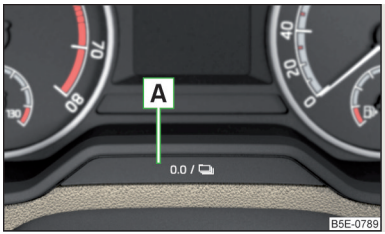


Fig. 23
Button in the instrument cluster

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 23 until the time is shown in the display.
› Release the button A and the system switches to the hour setting function.
› Press the button A again and set the hours.
› Wait 4 seconds, the system switches to the minutes setting.
› Press the button A again and set the minutes.
› Wait 4 seconds, the system switches to the initial setting.

The time can also be set in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → **Time and date**.

Gear recommendation

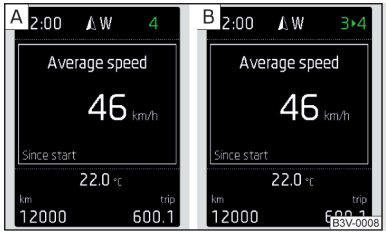


Fig. 24
Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation

A suitable engaged gear or, where appropriate, a recommended gear is displayed, with the aim of conserving the life of the engine and increasing driving efficiency.

Display » Fig. 24
A Optimal gear engaged
B Gear recommendation (e.g. 3 ▶ 4 means that it is advantageous to switch from 3rd to 4th gear)

For vehicles with automatic transmission the recommended gear will be shown provided the mode for manual switching (Tiptronic) is selected.

! WARNING
The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

Vehicle condition

Fig. 25
Vehicle condition

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on. If there is a fault in the system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After the message is displayed for the first time, the warning lights ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) continue to be displayed.

The vehicle condition can be displayed in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → **Vehicle status**.

In the screen, information regarding vehicle condition or function of the tyre pressure monitor is displayed.

› Using the function surfaces◁ ▷ select the menu item *Vehicle status*.

Function surfaces and display » Fig. 25

A Vehicle representation (the zones of the vehicle are shown in different colours, corresponding to any warning messages that occur. The warning messages are displayed once you touch the “vehicle”)

✓/⚠ No message/warning messages relating to vehicle status and the number (if there is only one message, one warning message text is displayed)

Display information about the status of the START-STOP system

Activation / deactivation of notes relating to START-STOP-System messages in another screen display

Operation of the information system

Operation via the operating lever

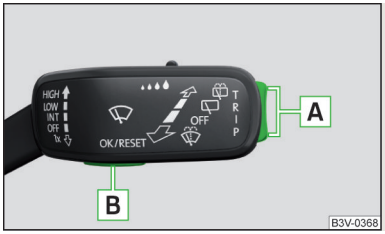


Fig. 26
Buttons on the operating lever

Operating the multifunction display

A **Press** (up or down) - select data / set values

B **Press** - display / confirm data

Operating the MAXI DOT display

A **Press** (up or down) - move in the selected menu
Hold (up or down) - display main menu

B **Press** - confirm selected menu item

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel

Fig. 27 **Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel**

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel

Switch voice control on/off

A **Turn** - set the volume
Press - sound on/off

▷ Skip to next track/station
◁ Switch to previous track/station
Display the assistance systems menu
Press - display the telephone menu; accept/end the call; select contact
Hold - repeat last call; reject call

Operating the multifunction display

B **Turn** - select data / set values
Press - display / confirm data

Operating the MAXI DOT display

Hold - display main menu
Press - return to a higher level in the menu
B **Turn** - move in the selected menu
Press - confirm selected menu item

Note

Depending on equipment not all functions may be available. The system indicates this by means of a text message on the Infotainment screen.

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

The driving data display is only possible with the ignition switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

If vehicles with MAXI DOTdisplay do not show the journey data after switching on the ignition, select the menu item **Journey data** in the main menu and confirm » page 47.

The units can be set and some information can be displayed in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → **Units**.

Note

The setting of the information display is stored in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Information Overview

Overview of driving data (depending on the vehicle equipment).

Range - drive distance in km which can be covered with the existing tank capacity and with the same driving style. If you drive more efficiently this value can increase. With G-TEC vehicles the following details are displayed - total range / with natural gas / petrol.

Average fuel consumption - is calculated continuously since the last time the memory was deleted. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 100 m driven. With G-TEC vehicles, the average consumption of fuel currently being used is displayed.

Current fuel consumption - when the vehicle is stationary or slowly moving, the fuel consumption is displayed in l/h (--,- km/l appears on models for some countries). With G-TEC vehicles the current consumption of the fuel currently being used is displayed (with regards to a stationary or slow moving vehicle, the natural gas consumption is displayed in kg/h).

Oil temperature - if the temperature is lower than 50 °C or if there is a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature, the --- symbols are displayed.

Warning when the preset speed is exceeded - allows the setting of a speed limit where, if exceeded, an acoustic warning signal and a warning message appears on the display of the instrument cluster.

Traffic sign recognition - traffic signs display » page 246, *Traffic sign recognition*.

Current speed - digital speedometer.

Average speed - is calculated continuously since the last time the memory was deleted. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

Driving route - distance driven since the last time the memory was deleted.

Driving time - driving time since the last time the memory was deleted.

Comfort consumers - information about the total consumption of the comfort consumers in l/h and a list of three consumers (e.g. air conditioning etc.), which have the largest share of fuel consumption.

Refill amount[1] After the consumption of about 10 litres of fuel from the fully refuelled tank, an amount of fuel is displayed in l. This amount can now be safely refilled.

Natural gas quality The details of the quality of natural gas are displayed as a percentage of between 70% to 100%. The higher the value of natural gas, the lower is the consumption.

Coolant temperature - If the coolant temperature is in the range 70-120 °C, the engine operating temperature has been reached. If the temperature is below 70 ° C, high engine speeds and straining the engine should be avoided. If the temperature is over 120 °C, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 39.

It is possible, in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Instrument cluster**, to show/hide the multifunction display menu items in the Instrument cluster display and to reset the journey data.

Infotainment display

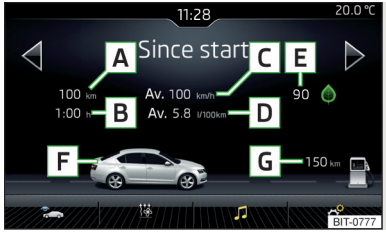


Fig. 28
Journey data

› In Infotainment in the menu CAR/ tap the function surface → **Journey data**.

Screen display » Fig. 28

- **A** Distance travelled
- **B** Driving time
- **C** Average speed
- **D** Average fuel consumption
- **E** Transit point rating (**DriveGreen** Function)
- **F** Graphic fuel level display (if the estimated range is less than 300 km, the vehicle starts to approach the symbol)
- **G** Approximate range[2]

Use the function surfaces ◁ ▷ to select one of the following preset lists.

- ▶ *Since start* - Driving data for the individual trip
- ▶ *Long-term* - Long-term journey data
- ▶ *Since refuel* - Data since refuelling

Warning when exceeding the set speed

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Set the desired speed limit is 5 km/h steps.
› Confirm the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

The set speed limit can be manually adjusted later if needed.

Reset the speed limit

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› By confirming the stored value, the speed limit is reset.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

[1] Only valid for some countries.
[2] For vehicles with CNG drive the approximate range with gasoline and CNG is displayed separately.

Memory

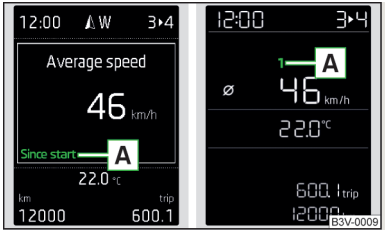


Fig. 29
Memory display: MAXI DOT display (Ⓜ)/segment display (Ⓢ)

The system saves the data in the three memories described below which are displayed at the position A » Fig. 29.

Since start (Ⓜ) Or “1” (Ⓢ)
In the memory, driving data is saved for the time between switching on and switching off the ignition. New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term (Ⓜ) And “2” (Ⓢ)
The memory gathers driving data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 kilometres driven.

The indicator is automatically set back to zero if one of the indicated values is exceeded.

Since refuel (Ⓜ) or “3” (Ⓢ)
The driving data is stored in the memory since the last fuel refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

› To **choose the memory bank**, confirm the selected indication again and select the desired memory.
› To **delete the memory bank** of the chosen selection, hold down the button confirming the selection.

The following driving data are stored.
▸ Average fuel consumption.
▸ Distance driven.
▸ Average speed.
▸ Driving time.

Note
Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

The MAXI DOT display is a user interface which, depending on the equipment configuration, provides information about the Infotainment, the multifunction display, the assistance systems etc.

The menus with details can be operated and displayed using the buttons on the operating lever or the multifunction steering wheel » page 44.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **Journey data** » page 45
- **Assist systems** » page 48
- **Navigation** » page 47
- **Audio** » page 48
- **Telephone** » page 48;
- **Vehicle** » page 44
- **Lap timer** » page 48

Note
- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must first be confirmed to access the main menu.
- The display language can be set in Infotainment » page 129, *Setting the Infotainment language* and » page 137, *Setting the Infotainment language*.

Menu itemNavigation

The following information is displayed in the **Navigation** menu item.

▸ Driving recommendations
▸ Compass
▸ Last destinations

Menu item Audio

The following information is displayed in the **Audio** menu item.

Radio

- Currently playing station (name/frequency).
- The selected frequency range (e.g. FM) optionally with the number of the station button (e.g. FM3), if the station is stored in the memory list.
- List of available stations (if more than 5 stations can be received).
- TP traffic announcements.

Media

- Name of the track being played, if necessary, further information regarding title (e.g. artist, album name), if this information is stored as a so called ID3 tag on the audio source.

Menu item Telephone

The call list with the following symbols is displayed in the **Telephone** menu item.

- Incoming call
- Outgoing call
- Missed call

Symbols in the display

- Charge status of the telephone battery[1)]
- Signal strength[1)]
- A telephone is connected to the unit
- Missed calls (if there are several missed calls, the number of calls is shown next to the symbol)
- Switch-off microphone

Menu item Assist systems

The following systems are activated/deactivated in the **Assist systems** menu item.

- Front Assist
- Lane Assist
- Rear Traffic Alert
- Assist system for blind spot monitoring

Menu item Lap timer (Stop watch)

The Lap timer function offers the possibility of calculating the lap time, for example when driving on a race course. The measured time is shown in the display.

The calculated times are displayed in minutes, seconds and tenths of seconds.

The following functions are available.

- **Start time** - start the timing manually or continue the interrupted measurement
- **Since start** - Start the timer automatically upon start-up
- **Statistics** - Evaluate and reset the measured times

Time measurement

- To start the measurement manually, choose the menu item **Lap timer** - **start** .
- To start the measurement automatically, choose the menu item **Lap timer** - **Since Start** . Timing will begin automatically when starting up.
- To start the measurement of the next lap during time measurement, choose the menu item **new lap**.

During timing, information about the fastest and the last lap time are also shown in the display.

Measure split time

- During the timing, select the menu item **Split time**. The split time data is displayed for about 5 seconds in the display.

The split time can be measured repeatedly during a round.

Stop measurement

- During the timing, press the menu item **Stop**.

The time measurement is stopped, the following functions are now available.

- **Continue** - Continue measurement of the current lap time
- **New lap** - Start measurement of the next lap time.
- **Abort lap** - Cancel the timer (the aborted lap time is not stored)
- **Hang up** - End timing (the aborted lap time is stored)

[1)] This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Evaluate recorded times

▶ Select the menu item **Lap timer - Statistics**.

The following information is displayed.

▶ **Fastest:** - the fastest lap
▶ **Slowest:** - the slowest lap
▶ **Average:** - the average lap time
▶ **Total time:** - the total of all the lap times

Reset measured times

▶ Select the menu item **Lap timer - Statistics - Reset**.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Only use the **Lap timer** when you are in any traffic situation where you have full control over the vehicle.

Note

- The system allows the measurement of up to 11 lap times.
- measurement of the individual lap time is ended after 99 h., 59 min. and 59 sec. After this time has been reached, measurement of the new lap time starts automatically.
- The measured times cannot be reset individually.
- If the measured times are not reset, then these are stored even after turning off the ignition.

Service interval display

Introduction

The service interval display shows the kilometres or days until the next service event.

Information regarding the service intervals » page 262.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

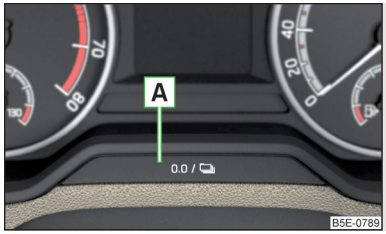


Fig. 30
Button in the instrument cluster

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 30 until the **Service** menu item is shown in the display.
› Release the button A.

In the display, the symbol appears for 4 seconds along with the following message for the kilometres or days to the next service appointment.

The details regarding the remaining kilometres or days until the next scheduled service can also be displayed in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → **Service**.

Service messages

Messages before reaching the scheduled service date

Before the next service date has been reached, the symbol as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display after switching on the ignition.

Messages upon reaching scheduled service date

Once the service interval is reached, the symbol appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, together with the message:

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval
For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

Personalization

Introduction

Thanks to the personalisation, more drivers have the opportunity to use a vehicle with individually set system functions by means of a user account which is assigned to the respective vehicle key.

WARNING

Make all adjustments when the vehicle is stationary - otherwise there is the risk of accident!

Operating principle

Fig. 31
Switch to a different user account

Read and observe ! on page 50 first.

After unlocking the vehicle and opening the driver's door, all the personalised functions are adjusted according to the user account that is assigned to the key which was used to unlock the vehicle.

Any change to the set personalised functions is automatically stored in the active user account.

As part of the personalisation, three default user accounts as well as a **guest** account are provided.

Switch to a different user account
You can switch to a different user account in the instrument cluster display » Fig. 31 within 10 seconds after turning on the ignition.

An account can be changed at a later time in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → → **Vehicle status** → (if the **Tyre Pressure Monit. System** is displayed first of all, then use the arrow ◁ or ▷ switch to **Vehicle status**).

If an account is selected in which not all of the points required by the system are set, a configuration wizard can be automatically displayed on the Infotainment screen » page 124.

Electrically adjustable driver's seat (referred to only as seat in the following)
The seated position adjustment is carried out in the following cases.
- After unlocking the vehicle and opening the driver's door.
- After switching to a different user account and at a speed less than 5 km/h.

The seat adjustment can be terminated as follows.
- By tapping on the function surface **Cancel** on the Infotainment screen.
- By pressing any key on the seat » page 77.

Note

Vehicles with the personalisation function are provided with three vehicle keys.

Overview of some personalized functions

Read and observe ! on page 50 first.

- Driving mode - the last selected mode, mode setting **Individual**
- Setting the electrically adjustable driver's seat.
- Exterior mirror adjustment.
- Assistance systems - Lane Assist, parking aid (Park Pilot).
- Light - ambient lighting, convenience turn signal, COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME.
- Climatronic - temperature in each individual area, fan speed, recirculation mode.
- Infotainment settings - brightness level of the screen, keyboard arrangement.

- Radio - sound settings, station sorting.
- Media - shuffle / repeat title, selected video format.
- Voice control - acoustic signals.
- Navigation - home address, alternative routes, recommended route, reminder of the lack of fuel.

Note

The scope of the personalisation functions is dependent on the type of Infotainment package.

Setting the personalization

Read and observe ! on page 50 first.

› In Infotainment in the menu CAR / tap the function surface → **Personalisation**.

The following menu items are displayed.

Personalisation
Active - activate/deactivate the personalisation

Select a user account
A list of user accounts with the option to manage user accounts and to switch to another account.

- > - Account management with the following options:
  - **Rename user account** - rename the user account (not applicable to the **Guest** account)
  - **Copy settings to another account** - copy the settings of an active user account to another user account
  - **Reset user account** - reset the selected user account to factory settings

Adjusting
- **Key assignment:** - options for assigning the vehicle key to the user account:
  - **Manual** - detected vehicle key must be assigned to the active user account manually
  - **Automatic** - detected vehicle key automatically assigned to a different account of the active user account
- **Assign vehicle key to current user account** - manual assignment of the detected vehicle key to the active user account - follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen
- **Reset all** - reset the personalisation and the user accounts to factory settings

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

The vehicle is equipped with a central locking system which makes it possible to unlock / lock **all** the doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid simultaneously.

The door unlocking can be adjusted individually » page 54.

The **unlocking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing twice.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically.

The **locking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing once.

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

! WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons (e.g. children) could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These individuals might not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!

! CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the keyway clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.

unlock / lock with the key on the lock cylinder

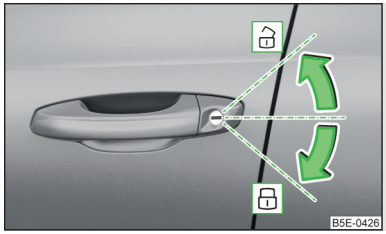


Fig. 32
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key to lock/unlock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 32

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle

! CAUTION

If the locking cylinder is provided with a cap» page 296, to unlock / lock the vehicle with key, the cap must be removed beforehand.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key

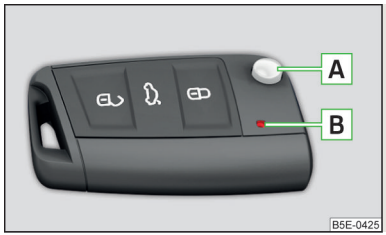


Fig. 33
Key with pop-out key bit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

Description of the key » Fig. 33

- Unlock button
- Lock button
- Depending on equipment fitted:
  - Unlock boot lid (by pressing) / unlatch and partially open (by holding) (vehicles with manual valve operation)
  - Open/close/ the boot lid Stop movement of the boot lid (vehicles with electric folding operation)

A Locking button for folding the key bit in/out

B Warning light for the battery charge - if the warning light does not flash when a button on the key is pressed, the battery is discharged.

Unlock/unlatch the boot lid (vehicles fitted with manual folding operation)

By pressing the button, the lid is unlocked.

By holding the button, the lid is unlocked and unlatched (partially open).

If the lid is unlocked or unlatched using the button, then the lid is automatically locked after closing. The period after which the lid is locked can be set » page 57.

! CAUTION

- The remote control may be affected by signal superposition of transmitters that are in the vicinity of the vehicle.
- The effective area of the remote control key is around 30 m. If the central locking on the remote control responds from a distance of less than around 3 m, the battery must be replaced» page 295.

Locking / unlocking - KESSY

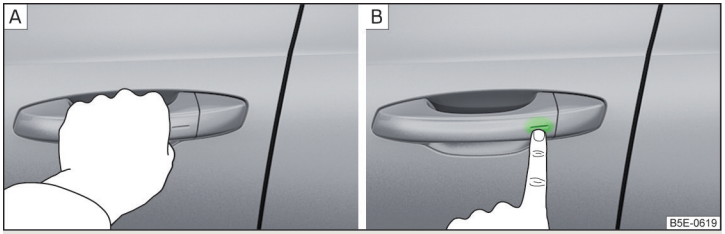


Fig. 34 **Vehicle unlocking / vehicle locking**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

› Grip the door handle to **unlock** the vehicle » Fig. 34 - A.
› Touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger to **lock** » Fig. 34 - B the vehicle.

When unlocking/locking the vehicle, the key must be at a maximum distance of approximately 1.5 m from the front door handle.

Information on locking
On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside if the ignition has not been turned off.

After locking the car, it is not possible to unlock within the next 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle
If one of the doors is closed after the vehicle has been locked and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the passenger compartment, the vehicle will be automatically unlocked. After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

If the boot lid is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the lid is automatically unlatched (partially opened). After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. The boot lid **remains unlatched** (partially opened); the other doors remain locked.

! CAUTION
Some types of gloves can affect the unlocking or locking device via the sensors in the door handle.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button

Fig. 35
Central locking button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

Conditions for the locking/unlocking using the central locking button.
✓ The vehicle is not locked from the outside.
✓ None of the doors are open.

› To **lock/unlock**, press the » Fig. 35 button.

Locking is indicated by illumination of the symbol in the button.

The following applies after locking.
▸ Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
▸ The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

! WARNING
Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

SafeLock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

SafeLock prevents the doors from behind opened from inside as well as window operation. This makes it more difficult for anyone to break into the vehicle.

Switching on
SafeLock switches on when the vehicle is locked.

This function is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off.

M **Check SAFELOCK! Log book!**

S **CHECK SAFELOCK**

Switch-on display
With the activated SafeLock, the warning light in the driver´s door flashes for 2 seconds in rapid succession, this then starts to flash at longer intervals.

Switching off
- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- **or:** by deactivating the interior monitor and the towing protection » page 56.

The warning light in the driver´s door flashes fast for about 2 seconds, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

The safelock switches on the next time the vehicle is locked.

! WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

The following central locking functions can be set individually in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → **Open and close**.

All doors
The function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door
The function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control. KESSY allows the unlocking of a single door which is in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Doors on a vehicle side
This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control unit. KESSY allows the unlocking of both doors which are in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Automatic locking/unlocking
This function enables the locking of all doors and the boot lid from a speed of 15 km/h. Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.

The renewed unlocking of the doors and the boot lid is carried out when the ignition key is removed or when the door is opened from inside (depending on the individual setting for the central locking system).

Opening / closing door

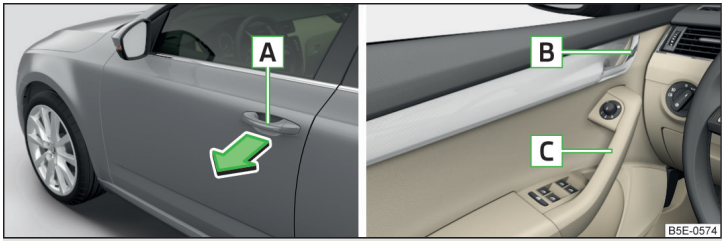


Fig. 36 **Door handle/door opening lever**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

› To **open from outside**, unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 36.
› To **open from inside**, pull on the door opening lever B and push the door away from you.
› To **close from inside**, grip the handle C and close the door.

! WARNING

- The door must be closed properly, otherwise it could open whilst driving - risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when no one is located in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - it can be fatal!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!

Child safety lock

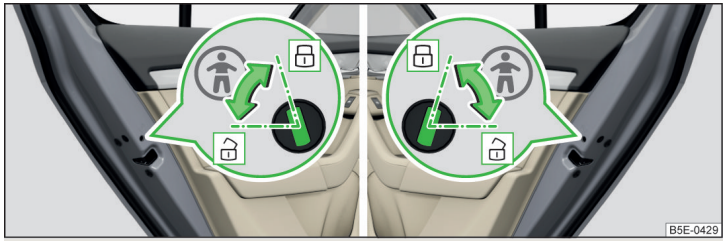


Fig. 37 **Rear door: Switching the child safety lock on/off**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Manually controlled parental settings

› To **switch on**, turn the parental control with the vehicle key in position » Fig. 37.
› To **switch off**, turn the parental control with the vehicle key in position.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

Synchronising the remote control

If the buttons on the remote control key have been operated several times beyond the effective range of the system or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced and the vehicle cannot be unlocked using the remote control, the key must be synchronised.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

Fault with the central locking

If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then illuminates for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

A fault in the central locking system means the vehicle doors and the boot lid cannot be emergency locked or emergency unlocked» page 296.

Failure of the system KESSY
If there is a fault in the KESSY system, the appropriate error message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Low voltage of the key battery
If the voltage of the key battery is too low, a message appears in the display of the instrument cluster referring to the need to replace the battery. Replace the battery » page 295.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to as alarm).

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked. This is automatically disabled after release.

CAUTION
Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

Note
The alarm system has its own power source, the service life of which is 5 years. In order to ensure functionality of the alarm system, we recommend that you get the alarm checked after this time by a specialist garage.

Alarm trigger

Read and observe ! on page 56 first.

The alarm is triggered when one of the following unauthorised actions is activated on the vehicle with an activated warning system.
- Opening the bonnet.
- Opening the boot lid.
- Opening the doors.
- Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Movement in the vehicle.
- Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
- Uncoupling the trailer.

An alarm is triggered also when the driver's door is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder.

The alarm is switched off by pressing the button on the key or switching on the ignition.

Interior monitor and towing protection

Fig. 38
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 56 first.

The **interior monitor** detects movements inside the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

The **anti-towing** detects tilts in the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

Both systems should be deactivated if there is a possibility that the alarm will be triggered by movements (e.g. by people or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

Deactivation
› Switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.
› Press the OFF button on the centre column on the driver side » Fig. 38; the OFF symbol illuminates in the button.
› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Disabling the two systems switches off SafeLock.

CAUTION

The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

Manually operated tailgate

Introduction

WARNING

- Never drive with the boot lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the boot lid, it could crack – risk of injury!

Open/close boot lid

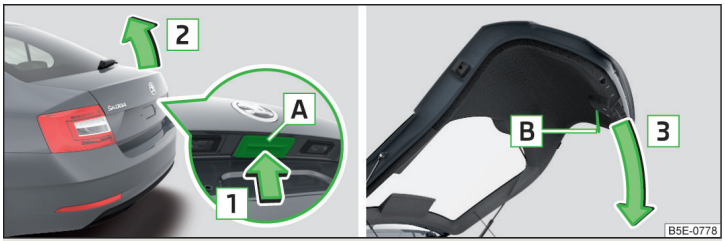


Fig. 39 **Opening / closing tailgate**

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

› To **open**, press the A button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 39.
› Raise the lid in the direction of the arrow 2.
› To **close**, grab the mount B and pull in the direction of arrow 3.

Note

Button A » Fig. 39 is deactivated when starting or at a speed of more than 5 km/h. The button is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Setting the delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically.

Electric boot lid

Introduction

The boot lid (hereinafter as lid) can be operated electrically and manual in the event of an emergency » page 59.

WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident.
- Never drive with the lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Only open and close the lid when no one is located in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- Make sure that no limbs are caught or crushed when closing the lid - risk of injury!
- When you open the boot lid make sure that there are no persons in the opening area of the lid - there is a danger of injury!

CAUTION

Do not attempt to close the lid manually during the electrical closing process - there is a risk of damaging the electric lid operation.

CAUTION

- Check that no objects are located in the opening/closing area which could hinder the movement (e.g. cargo on the roof rack or on the trailer etc.) - there is a risk of damage to the lid!
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g. by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the snow from the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.
- The flap is always to be close before disconnecting the battery.

Description of operation

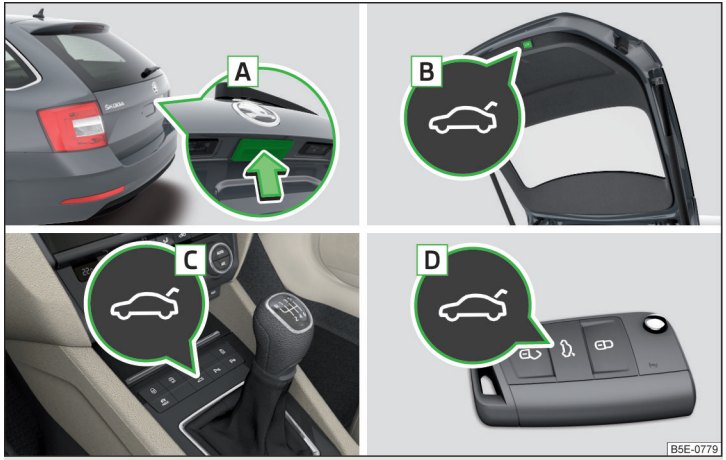


Fig. 40 **Lid operation**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 57 first.

Ways to open the lid

- By pressing the handle A » Fig. 40.
- By holding the button C.
- By holding the button D on the key.

Ways to close the lid

- By pressing the button B » Fig. 40.
- By pressing the handle A.

Ways to stop the lid movement

- By pressing the button B » Fig. 40.
- By pressing the button C.
- By holding the button D on the key.
- By pressing the handle A.

Audible signals

An acoustic signal is sounded when opening/closing the lid by means of the button C or D.

Note

If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and, as a result, the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

Set the top position of the lid

Read and observe ! and ! on page 57 first.

The top position of the lid can be adjusted (e.g. in a limited space to open the lid due to the garage height or for a more comfortable operation, depending on the height of the person).

Adjusting the top position of the lid

› Stop the lid in the desired position.
› Press and hold button B » Fig. 40 *on page 58* until you hear an acoustic signal.

Adjusting the top starting position of the lid

› Carefully raise the flap manually to the limit.
› Press and hold button B » Fig. 40 *on page 58* until you hear an acoustic signal.

Note

The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 57 first.

Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Possible solutions
The lid cannot be opened	Unlocking the lid » page 297
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Removing a possible obstacle (e.g. snow), reopening the lid » page 58 Press handle A » Fig. 40 *on page 58* and pull the lid upwards
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid
The lid is open and the battery was disconnected	

Close manually

Close the door slowly, push down the lid, push in the lock on the centre of the edge, above the ŠKODA logo.

Window operation

Introduction

The windows can be operated mechanically by means of the handle attached to the respective door panel.

The windows can be operated electrically from the following locations; all windows from the driver's seat and also via the buttons for the windows in the passenger door or the rear doors.

WARNING

- Always close the window carefully and controlled. Otherwise, you may cause considerable crushing injuries to yourself or fellow passengers.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 60. If there is an obstacle (e.g. If a body part gets trapped), the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean (free of ice and similar) to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- Always close the electric windows before disconnecting the battery.

Note

If the windows are opened, dust and other dirt can get into the vehicle and the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Mechanical windows

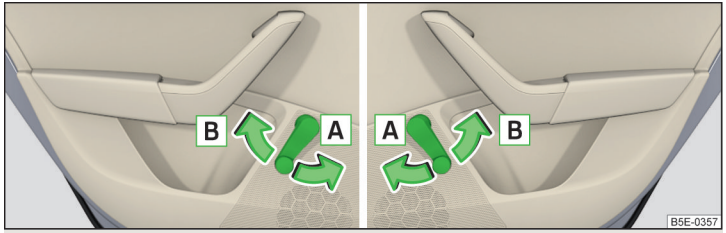


Fig. 41 **Window operation: Left/right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

› To **open**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 41.
› To **close**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow B.

Electric Windows

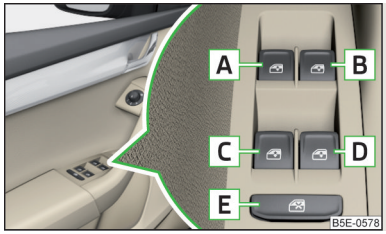


Fig. 42
Electric window buttons

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

All windows can be operated from the driver's seat. The window in the front passenger door and the windows in the rear doors are operated via the button in each door.

Electric window buttons » Fig. 42

- A Left front door
- B Right front door
- C Left rear door
- D Right rear door:
- E Deactivate/activate the buttons in the rear doors (the deactivation may be advantageous if, for example, children are transported on the rear seats)

Opening/closing window

› To **open**, lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** press the button to the stop, the window automatically opens fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.
› To **close**, pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** pull the button briefly to the stop, the window automatically closes fully. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Disable / enable buttons in the rear doors

› To **deactivate/activate** the buttons in the rear doors, press the E button. If the buttons are deactivated, the warning light illuminates in the E button.

Note

▪ After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes.
▪ After the driver or front passenger door is opened, the operation of the window is only possible with the button A » Fig. 42, in which case this is pressed or pulled for approx. 2 seconds.

Opening/closing the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors

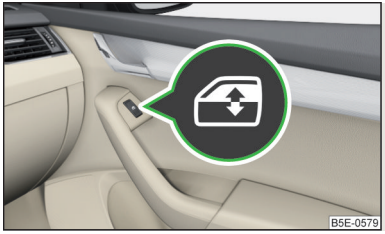


Fig. 43
Power window button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

› To **open**, lightly press the appropriate button **underneath** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** press the button **underneath** to the stop, the window automatically opens fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.
› To **close**, push the corresponding button **above** briefly and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** press the button **above** to the stop, the window automatically opens fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.

Force limiter

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

The electrical power windows are fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

The convenience operation for the window offers the option to open/close all the windows at once (or only the window in the driver's door). The convenience operation function can be adjusted individually in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Open and close**.

Opening

› Press and hold the button on the key.
› **or:** Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the open position » Fig. 42 *on page 60*.
› **or:** Keep the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the unlock position until all electrically operated windows are open.

Closing

› Press and hold the button on the key.
› **or:** Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and press and hold the button A until the window stops in the closed position » Fig. 42 *on page 60*.
› **or**Keep the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position until all the electrically operated windows are closed.
› In the KESSY system, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door » Fig. 34 *on page 53*.

The convenience operation will only function correctly if all the windows automatically open/close properly.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's door locking cylinder is only possible within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the respective button is released.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

Repeatedly opening and closing the window can cause the window mechanism to overheat and become temporarily blocked. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the operating mechanisms has cooled down.

After disconnecting the vehicle battery, automatic opening / closing of the window can be deactivated. In this case, the system must be **activated** as follows.

Window in the driver door

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

Windows in the other doors

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the respective key **above** and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button **above** and hold for 1 second.

Panoramic tilt / slide sunroof

Introduction

The panorama sliding/tilting roof (hereinafter referred to as sliding/tilting roof) can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is no lower than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. After opening the driver or front passenger door, it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

WARNING

When operating the sliding/tilting roof and the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.
- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operation

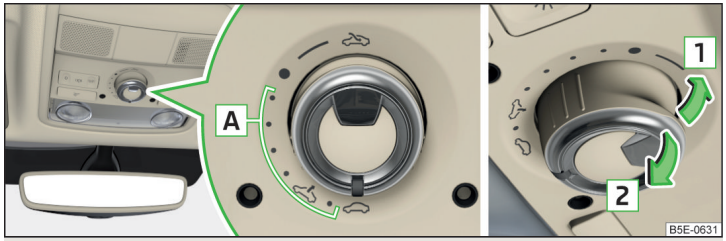


Fig. 44 **Operation of the sliding/tilting roof**

Read and observe and on page 62 first.

Operation of the sliding/tilting roof » Fig. 44

- Fully opening
- ● Open to the low-noise position
- A Open partially
- Complete closing
- 1 Opening (switch in position)
- 2 Resetting (switch in position)

After turning the switch one stop to position (spring-tensioned position), the tilt / slide sunroof stops in the position in which the intensity of the wind noise is low. After turning the switch further to position , the tilt / slide sunroof opens up to the stop.

Force limiter

Read and observe and on page 62 first.

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the glass pane retracts by several centimetres.

WARNING

If the tilting / sliding sunroof is closed, by pulling on the recess of the switch in the direction of arrow 2, » Fig. 44 *on page 62* and the closing process is hindered by an obstacle, then at the third attempt at closing, the force limitation will cease to function (if less than 5 s passes between the individual attempts to close). The sliding/tilting roof closes with full force - it may cause injury.

Convenience operation of the sliding / tilting roof

Read and observe and on page 62 first.

The convenience operation makes it possible to open or close the sliding/tilting roof using the key or the KESSY system via the sensor in the door handle of the front door.

› To **open out**, press and hold the button on the key.
› **Or:** Hold the key in the unlock position in the driver's door lock.
› To **close**, press and hold the button (with KESSY, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door).
› **Or** Hold the key in the lock position in the driver's door lock.

By interrupting the locking process, the closing operation is interrupted.

Activate operation of the sliding/tilting roof

Read and observe and on page 62 first.

If the operation of the sliding/tilting roof is deactivated (e.g. after disconnecting and connecting the battery), then operation will have to be activated.

› Turn on the ignition and set the switch to position » Fig. 44 *on page 62*.
› Press the switch on the recess E down and pull forwards.

The sliding/tilting roof opens/closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the lever.

Manually operated sunblind

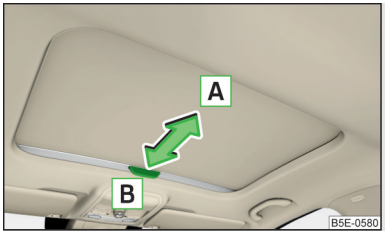


Fig. 45
Operation of the sunshade

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

› To **open**, pull the handle in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 45.
› To **close**, pull the handle in the direction of arrow B.

Electrically operated sunblind

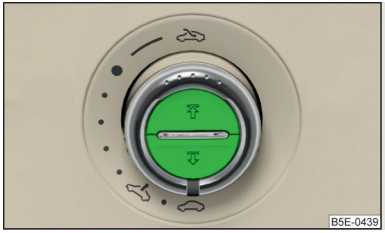


Fig. 46
Button for operating the sunshade

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

Operation of the sunshade » Fig. 46

Open - by pressing (press again - sunshade stops moving)

Close - by pressing (press again - sunshade stops moving)

The sunshade can also be operated by pressing and holding the appropriate button (starts movement of the sunshade) and releasing it when the sunshade reaches the desired position.

Activating operation of the sunshade

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

If the operation of sunshade is deactivated (e.g. after disconnecting and connecting the battery), then the operation will have to be activated.

› Turn on the ignition and set the switch to position » Fig. 46 *on page 63*.
› Press the button and hold down.

The sunshade opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the button.

Lights and visibility

Light

Introduction

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the lights and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the prevailing light conditions.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the light is switched on, the light-emitting surface demists after a short period of time.

Operating the lights

Fig. 47
Light switch

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

To **switch on/off** the lights, turn the A » Fig. 47 switch to one of the following positions (equipment-dependent).

0 Switch off lights (except daytime running lights)

AUTO Switching lights on/off automatically » page 66

Switching on the parking lights or parking lights on both sides » page 69

Switch on the low beam

Headlight range control of the Halogen headlights

› The headlight range can be set in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → **Light**.

The range of the halogen headlights can be set on the screen, in accordance with the vehicle load, to the following basic settings.

0 Front seats occupied, boot empty

2 All seats occupied, boot empty

4 All seats occupied, boot loaded

6 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

Depending on the load of the vehicle, the positions **1. 3. 5** can also be set.

The **Xenon headlights** feature no manual headlight range control. After switching on the ignition, adjust these **automatically** to the load and driving condition of the vehicle.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight range control to comply with the following conditions and prevent accidents.

- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- If, with a dipped beam, the ignition is turned off, then the dipped beam will automatically switch off [1] and the parking lights illuminate. The parking lights are switched off when the ignition key is removed (for vehicles with the KESSY system, after opening the driver's door).
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

[1] Does not apply to the **AUTO** position, as long as the conditions are met for the COMING HOME function » page 68.

Daytime running lights(DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of and to the rear of the vehicle (only applicable for some countries).

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or AUTO.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The function is activated.

Deactivating/activating
The function can be deactivated/activated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → ⚙ → **Light**.

! WARNING
Always switch on the low beam when visibility is poor.

i Note
The light can operate automatically under certain circumstances, even if the light switch is in position ≫D≪.

i Note
The setting (activation/deactivation) of the daytime running lights is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account for personalisation » page 50.

Turn signal and main beam

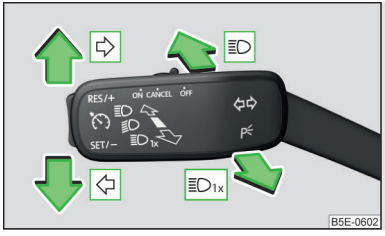


Fig. 48
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

Operating lever positions » Fig. 48
⇨ Switch on the right turn signal
⇦ Switch on the left turn signal
≡D Switch on main beam (spring-tensioned position)
≡D1x Switch on main beam or headlight flasher (spring-loaded position)

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The **headlight flasher** can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

The **turn signal** switches off automatically depending on the steering angle after turning.

Use the control stalk to switch on/off the **headlight assistant**» page 67.

Comfort flashing
When the control talk is pressed slightly up or down, the respective turn signal indicates three times.

If during comfort signalling the operating lever is pressed in the opposite direction, the indicating will stop.

Convenience signalling can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → ⚙ → **Light**.

! WARNING
Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

i Note
The setting (activation/deactivation) of the convenience turn signal is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Automatic driving light control

Fig. 49
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 49, then the lights are automatically switched on/off to suit current light or weather conditions (rain), depending on the equipment.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering AUTO illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol also illuminates next to the light switch.

Automatic driving light control in the rain (referred to as function in the following)
The dipped beam is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The function is activated.
✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 30 s.

The light turns off automatically about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

Setting, activation/deactivation
The following functions can be set or activated/deactivated in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → **Light**.

- Sensitivity adjustment of the sensor for determining the lighting conditions for automatic driving light control
- Automatic driving light control during rain

! CAUTION
Poorer visibility is evaluated by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the rear-view mirror. Do not cover the sensor - the system can be affected.

i Note
The setting (activate/deactivate) of the automatic driving light control during rain is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

LED headlights

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The LED headlights (hereinafter referred to as just system) use the journey data to automatically ensure the best possible light cone in front of the vehicle.

The system functions automatically in the following modes: urban, extra-urban, motorway and fog.

The static cornering light ensures illumination of the road in curves.

The system works as long as the light switch is in position **AUTO**.

! WARNING
If there is a system malfunction the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Light Assist

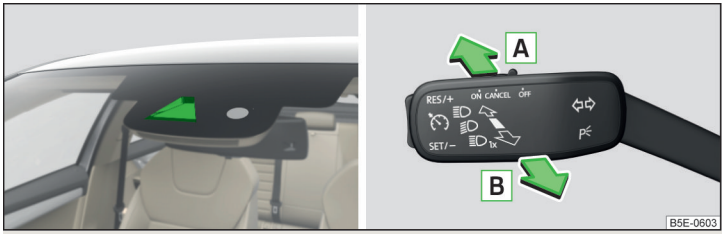


Fig. 50 **Sensor window for the high-beam assistant / system on / off**

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The system automatically switches the high beam on/off in accordance with the existing traffic (other vehicles) and environmental conditions (e.g. driving through a lit village).

The high beam on/off is controlled by a sensor or a camera » Fig. 50.

The system can be **activated/deactivated** in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → ⚙ → **Light** → **Light Assist**.

Conditions for the system function

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
✓ The vehicle speed is over 60 km/h or for some countries more than 40 km/h.
✓ The windscreen is clean in the sensor area.

Switching on and off

› To **turn on** the system, push the operating lever into the sprung position A » Fig. 50, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster display.
› To **turn off** the main beam, which has been switched on automatically, push the lever into the sprung position B » Fig. 50, the warning light goes out.
› To **manually switch on** the main beam, push the lever into the sprung position A » Fig. 50, the warning light goes out.

The headlight switches off automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h.

If there is a **fault**, the error message will appear in the instrument cluster display. Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

The system is used only for support, thus the driver is not released from his obligation to manually adjust the main or low beam according to the given ambient conditions (e.g. in unfavourable lighting and weather conditions, as when passing poorly lit road users, if necessary, when the visual range of the sensor is limited by an obstacle).

! CAUTION

Do not cover the sensor - the system can be affected.

i Note

The setting for the high-beam assistant in Infotainment is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account for personalisation » page 50.

Fog lights/rear fog light

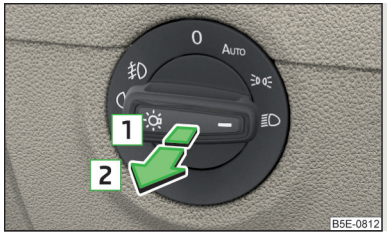


Fig. 51
Light switch – switch on front and rear fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

Switching on the fog lights/rear fog lights is possible under the following conditions.

✓ The lights switch is in position **AUTO**, or » Fig. 51.

› To **switch on** the **front fog lights**, pull the light switch to position 1; the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.
› To **switch on** the **rear fog lights**, pull the light switch to position 2; the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

If the vehicle is not equipped with **front fog lights**, the **rear fog lights** can be switched on by pulling the light switch to the only possible setting.

Switch off the fog lights/rear fog lights in reverse order.

Note

While driving with an accessory connected to the trailer socket (e.g. trailer, bike carrier) only the equipment is illuminated by the fog light. The towing device must be installed at the factory or from the ŠKODA original accessories.

Fog lights with CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The CORNER function automatically switches on the fog lights on the respective side of the vehicle (e.g. when cornering), if the following conditions are fulfilled.

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply [1].
- ✓ The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The function COMING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

The function LEAVING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control unit.

The function switches the light on only if there is poorer visibility and the light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

The two functions can be used in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → **Light activated/deactivated and set**.

CAUTION

- Really poor visibility is evaluated by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the rear-view mirror. Do not cover the sensor - the system can be affected.
- If this option is always enabled, then the battery is heavily loaded.

Note

The setting of the two functions is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Hazard warning light system

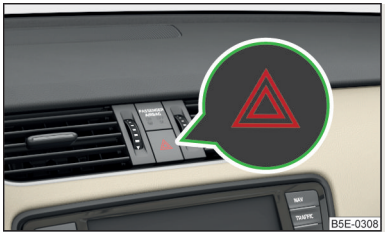


Fig. 52
Button for hazard warning light system

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

› To **switch on/off**, press the ⚠ button » Fig. 52.

When switching on, all the turn signal lights as well as the warning light ⚠ in the button flash simultaneously with the control lights ⬅ ➡ in the instrument cluster.

The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

The automatic activation of hazard warning lights can take place during a heavy braking. After starting or accelerating the hazard warning system is automatically switched off.

[1] If the two switch-on variants are conflicting (e.g. if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on), the turn signal light has the higher priority.

When the hazard warning system is on and the indicator light is switched on (e.g. when turning), the hazard warning lights are switched off temporarily and only the turn signal flashes on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking light

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The side light is provided for lighting of the parked vehicle.

Switching on the side light on one side
› Switch off the ignition.
› Press the control lever all the way into position ⇨or ⇦until it stops » Fig. 48 *on page 65*.

The parking lights on the respective side of the vehicle are turned on.

Switching on the side light on both sides
› Switch on the ignition and turn the light switch to position » page 64, the parking lights are turned on.
› Switch off the ignition and lock the car.

After removing the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds, or after closing the driver's door, the acoustic warning signal stops.

! CAUTION
- Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded.
- The parking lights may switch off automatically due to a low battery charge.

If the two-sided parking lights are switched on when the ignition is off, the parking lights will not switch on automatically.

Entry space lighting

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The lighting is positioned on the lower edge of the exterior mirror and illuminates the entry area of the front door.

The lighting **switches on** after unlocking or opening the vehicle door (depending on the lighting conditions).

The lighting **switches off** after around 30 seconds after closing the front door or switching on the ignition.

Driving abroad

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), your headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. Therefore, it is necessary to have the headlights adapted by a specialist garage.

The LED headlights can be adjusted by switching on **Travel mode** in Infotainment in the menu CAR → → **Light**. In this mode, there is no automatic adjustment of the light beam in front of the vehicle.

Interior lighting

Introduction

The inner lighting also works if the ignition is switched off. With the ignition switched off, the lights will automatically switch off after approximately after 10 minutes.

interior light, front

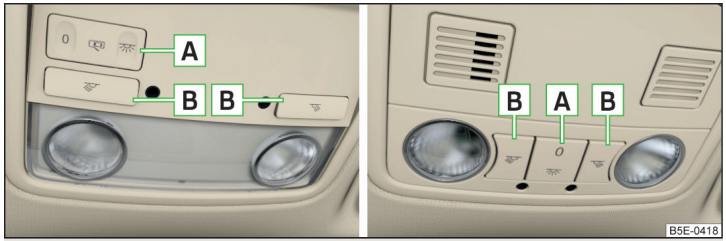


Fig. 53 **Operation of the front light: Variant 1/variant 2**

Positions of the rocker switch A » Fig. 53
- Switching on
- Automatic operation (centre position)
- 0 Switching off

There is no icon available for the centre position (automatic operation) in Version 2.

Switch on / off (by pressing the relevant switch B) » Fig. 53

Reading lamp left

Reading lamp right

Automatic operation - position

The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors is opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Interior light, rear

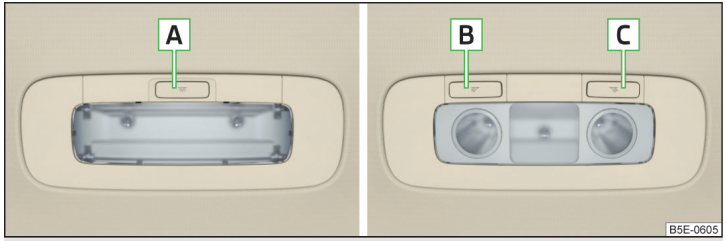


Fig. 54 **Interior light, rear: Variant 1 / Variant 2**

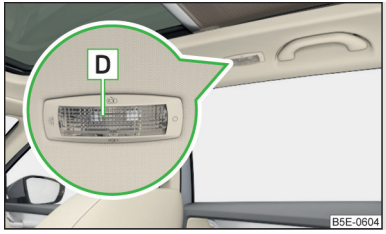


Fig. 55
Interior light, rear: Variant 3

The rear light (variant 1 and 2) is switched on/off automatically together with the front light. When the front interior lighting is switched off, the rear interior lighting can be turned on/off as required.

Variant 1 and 2 (by pressing the switch) » Fig. 54

A Switches the rear interior light on/off

B Switches the left rear reading lamp on/off

C Switches the right rear reading lamp on/off

Variant 3 - (by moving the light lens D) » Fig. 55

Switches the rear interior light on

Automatic operation[1)]

Switches the rear interior light off

Ambient lighting

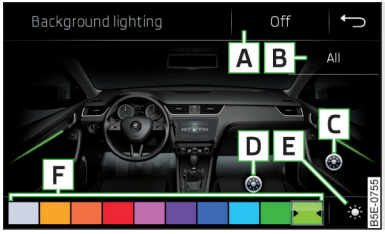


Fig. 56
Setting the ambient lighting

The ambient lighting illuminates the side door trim panels in colour, sand the footwell in white.

The **switching on** of the lighting takes place automatically after opening the door, **switching off** occurs automatically after the locking of the vehicle or 30 seconds after the closing of the door with the ignition switched off.

The ambient lighting can be set in Infotainment in the menu CAR → → → **Interior lighting.**

Description of the function surfaces » Fig. 56

A Enable / disable the background lighting

B Activating of the brightness setting for all areas at the same time

C Activating the brightness controls for the door area

1) In this position, the rear light is switched on/off automatically together with the front light.

D Activating the brightness setting for the footwell area
E Choice of colour options/brightness adjustment
F Function surfaces for selecting lighting colour / brightness adjustment

To display B, C, and D, tap the function surface ☀.

Note

The adjustment of the ambient lighting is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Visibility

Introduction

WARNING

No objects should be attached to the sun visors, which could limit the view or endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or should the vehicle collide.

Windscreen and rear window heater

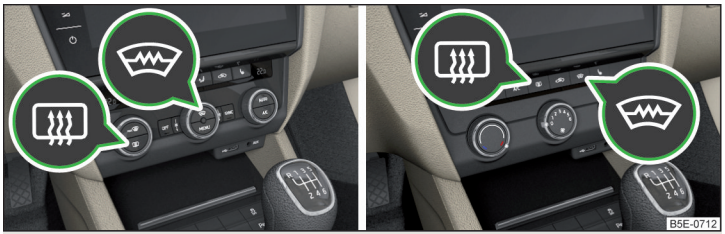


Fig. 57 **Buttons for the windscreen and rear window heating: Climatronic/manual air conditioning**

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

The heating aids defrosting and ventilation of the windscreen/rear window.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

Buttons for the heating (depending on vehicle equipment) » Fig. 57

Switch on/off the rear window heater
Switching the windscreen heater on/off

When the heating is switched on, a light illuminates inside or below the button.

The heating automatically switches off after ten minutes.

If the engine is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

Note

- If the on-board voltage decreases, the heating switches off automatically » page 278, *Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery*.
- If the lighting inside or below the button flashes, the heater will not work because of the low charge of the battery.
- If the Climatronic recognises that the windshield could fog up, the windshield heating is automatically switched on. This function can be activated/deactivated on the Climatronic control panel in the menu MENU → ⚙.

Front sun visors

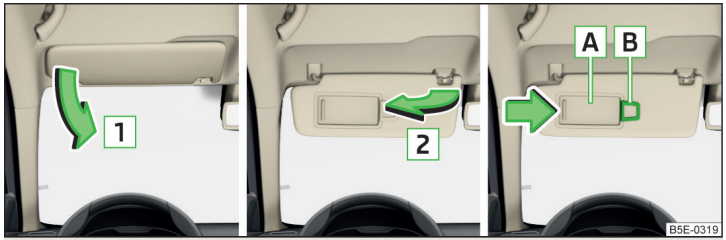


Fig. 58 **Fold down visor / flip up visor / make-up mirror and Park Memo Holder**

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

Operation and description of the sun visor » Fig. 58

1 Swivel the visor towards the windscreen
2 Swivel cover towards the door

A Make-up mirror with cover (the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow)

B Parking ticket holder

Sunshade

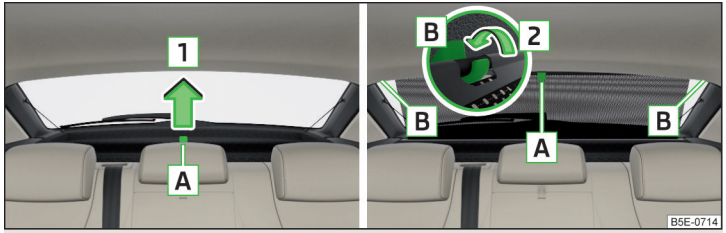


Fig. 59 **Sun screen**

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

The sun screen is located in a housing on the luggage compartment cover.

› To **roll down**, pull the sunshade by the handle A in direction of arrow 1 and suspend in the magnetic holder B in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 59.

› To **roll up**, pull the sunshade by the handle A out of the holder B against the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 59. Hold the sunshade so that this can slowly roll back in without damaging.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet and boot are closed.

! WARNING

Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

! CAUTION

- If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. The wipers must be set to the service position to raise them off the windscreen » page 298.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor.
- Carefully release the frozen-on windscreen wiper blades from the windscreen and remove snow and ice.
- Handle the windscreen wipers with care - there is the risk of damaging the windscreen with the windscreen wiper arms.
- Do not switch on the ignition when the front windscreen wiper arms are folded down - there is the danger of damaging the bonnet by the windscreen wiper arms.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wipers will try to push away the obstacle five times. Thereafter, the wipers will stop to prevent them becoming damaged. Turn on the wipers again only after the obstacle has been removed.

i Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper blades.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than +10 °C.

Front wipers and washers

Fig. 60
Operating the windscreen wipers and washing system at the front

Read and observe ! and ! on page 72 first.

The lever can be moved to the following positions » Fig. 60

HIGH Fast disk wiping

LOW Slow disk wiping

INT Depending on equipment fitted:
- Intermittent wipe of the windscreen
- Automatic windscreen wiping in the rain

OFF Wipers and washers off

1x Single windscreen wipe (sprung position)

A Setting of windscreen wiper interval for the position **INT** - by setting the switch in the direction of the arrow, the windscreen wipers will wipe more often

Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position)

Spraying and wiping the window
After releasing the operating lever, the wipers will make from 2 to 3 wiper strokes.

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Automatic windscreen wiping in the rain can be used in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → **Mirrors and wipers activated/deactivated**.

! WARNING

The automatic wiping in the rain function merely serves to help you. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

i Note

- If the wiping is carried out without interruption, the wiping speed varies depending on the vehicle speed.
- The setting (activation/deactivation) of the automatic windscreen wiping in the rain is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Rear wipers and washers / reversing camera cleaning system

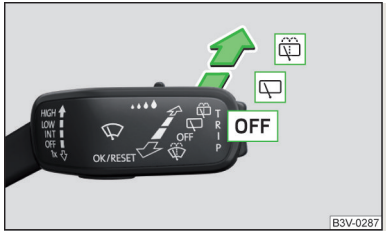


Fig. 61
Operating the windscreen wipers and washing system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 72 first.

The lever can be moved to the following positions » Fig. 61

Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position) - after releasing the control stalk, the wipers perform another 2 to 3 wiper strokes
Spraying the rear view camera (spring-tensioned position)

Windscreen wiping

OFF Wipers and washers off

Automatic rear wiper
If the windscreen wiping is performed without interruption, then the automatic regular intermittent wiping of the rear window takes place.

This function can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → **Mirrors and wipers**.

Note

▪ The rear window is wiped automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.
▪ The setting (activation/deactivation) of the automatic rear window wiping in the rain is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 72 first.

Headlights are cleaned under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The outside temperature is about -12° C to +39° C.

To clean the headlights, the headlamp is also sprayed after every ten squirts. The adjustment of the spray interval can be adjusted by a specialist garage (maximum after every twentieth spraying of the windscreen).

To ensure the correct functioning of the system, even in winter, this needs to be regularly cleared of snow and ice (e.g. using the de-icing spray).

Rear view mirror

Introduction

WARNING

Exterior mirrors increase the field of view, however, make objects appear smaller and further away. Therefore, use the rear-view mirror to determine the distances to the following vehicles.

WARNING

▪ The mirrors with automatic dimming contain electrolyte fluid which may leak if the mirror glass is broken - this can irritate skin, eyes and the respiratory system.
▪ If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Seek medical assistance if required.

Interior mirror dimming

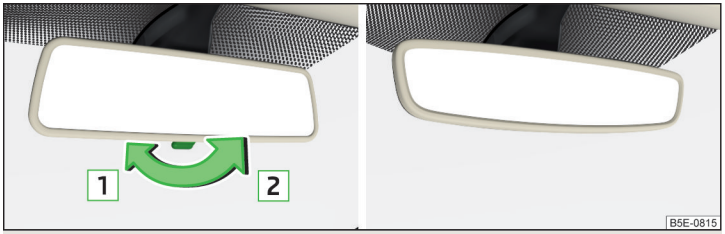


Fig. 62 **Interior mirror: manual dimming/auto-darkening**

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 62

1 Basic position of the mirror (not dimmed)
2 Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming

The mirror dimming » Fig. 62 is automatically controlled after the engine start.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

WARNING

▪ Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) not in the vicinity of the **mirror with automatic dimming**. The illuminated display of an external device can affect the function of the rear-view mirror - it could cause an accident.
▪ The automatic dimming mirror only functions smoothly if the light falling on the sensors is not compromised (e.g. by the sunshade at the back). The sensors are located on the front and back of the mirror.

Exterior mirrors

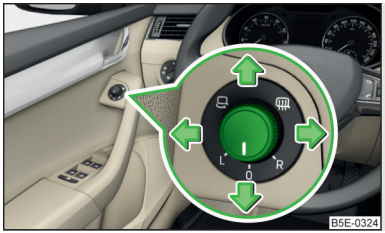


Fig. 63
Exterior mirror operation

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

The exterior mirrors can (depending on vehicle equipment) have a manual or electric fold-in function, automatic dimming and memory function.

The rotary knob can be moved into the following positions (depending on vehicle equipment)

L Adjusting the left-hand mirror area
0 Switch off mirror control
R Adjusting the right-hand mirror area
Mirror heating (only works when the engine is running)
Folding in the mirrors electrically (to fold back, move the rotary knob to another position) » !

Setting the mirror area

› Move the rotary knob in the direction of arrows » Fig. 63.

If the mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted manually by pressing on the edge of the mirror area.

Setting the mirror surfaces synchronously

This function allows the simultaneous adjustment of the two mirror areas. The function can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → **Mirrors and wipers**.

› Turn the knob for the mirror control to the position for the driver mirror adjustment.
› Adjust the mirror areas to the desired position.

Manual folding mirrors

The mirror can be manually folded towards the side windows. To put it back to its original position, it should be folded back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

Automatic folding in/back of both mirrors

The exterior mirrors are automatically collapsed after locking the vehicle in the park position. After unlocking the vehicle, the mirrors are folded back to the driving position » !.

This function can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → **Mirrors and wipers**.

Mirror with automatic dimming

The exterior mirror dimming is controlled together with the automatic rear-view mirror dimming » page 74.

Memory function for mirror (vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat)

It is possible to save the current setting of the exterior mirror when saving the driver's seat position with » page 77, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat*or » page 78, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

Tilting the mirror area of the front passenger mirror (vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat)

The front passenger mirror area can be tilted to the stored position to improve the view to the curb when reversing.

Operating conditions

✓ The function can be activated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → **Mirrors and wipers**.
✓ The setting for the mirror area has been previously stored » page 77, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat* or » page 78, *Memory function of the remote control key*.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The knob for the mirror control is in the position for the passenger mirror adjustment.

The mirror area returns to its initial position after the rotary knob is set to another position or if the speed is greater than 15 km/h.

WARNING

Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

CAUTION

- Never manually fold in/out the electrically folding exterior mirrors - there is a risk of damage to the mirror!
- When the mirror is swung by external influences (due to impact during manoeuvring, for example), then first **fold-in** the mirror by turning the knob and wait for a loud clapping noise.

Note

The setting of the mirror functions is stored in Infotainment (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Seats and head restraints

Front seats

Introduction

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.

Manual adjustment

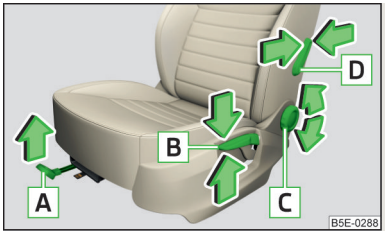


Fig. 64
Control elements on the seat

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pulled, pressed or turned in the direction of the arrows » Fig. 64.

- **A** Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction (after releasing the control lever must lock audibly)
- **B** Adjusting height of seat[1)]
- **C** Adjust the tilt of the backrest (do not lean on the backrest when adjusting)
- **D** Setting the extent of the curvature of the lumbar support

Note

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

Electrical adjustment

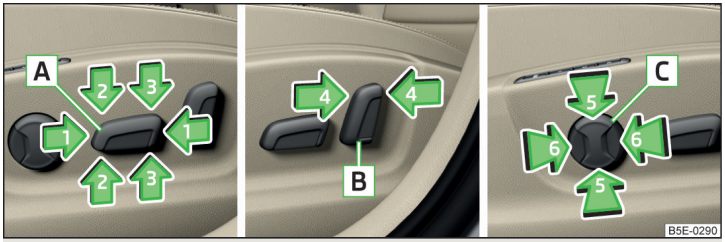


Fig. 65 **Control elements on the seat**

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pressed in the direction of area of the arrow » Fig. 65.

A Seat adjustment
- **1** - Move in the longitudinal direction
- **2** - Change in inclination
- **3** - Change in height

B Adjusting the seat backrest
- **4** - Change in inclination

C Adjusting lumbar support
- **5** - Change curvature
- **6** - The degree of curvature change

! WARNING

The electric front seat adjustment is functional even with the ignition off. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a danger of injury!

i Note

- If the inclination angle of the seat backrest relative to the seat surface is greater than approx. 110°, then it is not possible for safety reasons to save this setting in the memory of the electrically adjustable seats or the remote control key.
- On vehicles with personalisation, the driver's seat setting is stored in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat

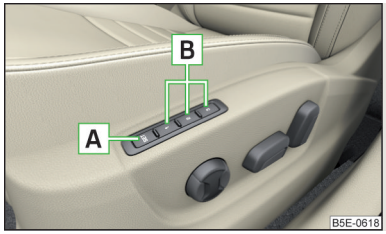


Fig. 66
SET button and memory buttons

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

Among the memory buttons B on the driver's seat, a setting for the driver´s seat and exterior mirror position can be saved » Fig. 66.

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror settings for the forwards drive

› Switch on the ignition, adjust the seat and the exterior mirrors, as required.
› Press the SET A » Fig. 66 button and then, within 10 seconds, press the desired memory button B. Storing is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror settings for reversing

The function for lowering the front passenger's mirror area during reversing can be activated in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → ⚙ → **Mirrors and wipers**.

› Turn on the ignition and press the desired memory button B » Fig. 66.
› Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control to the position for the front passenger mirror area » page 75.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear. The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open-press- the desired memory button **B**.
› In other cases (e.g. if the ignition is switched on or the driver's door closed), **hold** the button.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Note

Every time you save new seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forwards, you must also save the front passenger mirror setting for reversing again.

Memory function of the remote control key

Applies to vehicles that do not have the personalisation function.

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

Every time the vehicle is locked, the driver´s seat and exterior mirror settings are saved and assigned to the key with which the vehicle was locked.

After the following unlocking of the vehicle with the same key and opening the driver's door, the driver´s seat and exterior mirrors that are saved to this key will be adopted.

This function can be used in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Seats activated/deactivated**.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror settings for reversing

The function for lowering the front passenger's mirror area during reversing can be activated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Mirrors and wipers**.

› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key and switch on the ignition.
› Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control to the position for the front passenger mirror area » page 75.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear. The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Folding front passenger seat

Fig. 67
Folding the front passenger seat forward

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

The front passenger seat can, (depending on vehicle equipment fitted), be folded forward into a horizontal position.

› To **fold down**, pull the lever in direction of arrow 1, fold the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 67. The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.
› To **fold up**, pull the lever in direction of arrow 1, fold back the seat backrest against the direction of arrow 2. The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.
› Check this by pulling on the seat and on the seat backrest.

WARNING

- If the seat backrest is folded down, only the seat behind the driver´s seat can be used to transport passengers.
- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat which was folded forwards » page 22.
- Do not adjust the seat backrest while driving - it can cause injury and accidents!

WARNING (Continued)

- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs out of the area between the seat and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport the following items on the seat backrest when folded forwards.
  - Objects that could restrict the driver's view.
  - Objects which make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle, e.g. if they roll under the pedals, or could protrude into the driver's zone.
  - Objects which could lead to injury to passengers due to a change of direction or braking manoeuvre when accelerating sharply.

Armrest setting

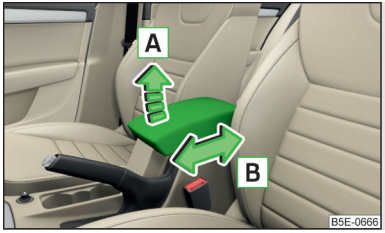


Fig. 68
Adjust armrest

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

› To **adjust the height**, lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow A into one of the locking positions » Fig. 68.
› To **close**, lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A past the stop and then fold down again.
› To **Set the armrest lengthways** in the direction of arrow B Move to the desired position.

Rear seats

Introduction

Seat backrests

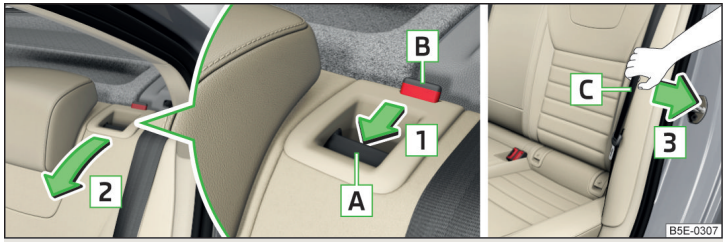


Fig. 69 **Fold the seat backrest forwards from the interior/pull the belt for the side trim**

Fig. 70 **Fold the seat backrest forwards from the luggage compartment: Variant 1/variant 2**

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the seat backrests. If necessary, remove the rear headrests » page 81.

Folding forwards from the passenger compartment

› Push the release lever A in the direction of arrow 1 and fold down the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 69.

In the **undivided** seat back, press the release handles A on both sides of the seat back at the same time.

Fold forward from the luggage compartment

On vehicles with a net partition, the left and then the right and middle rear seat backrest must first be unlocked. The net partition must be rolled up in the housing.

› Pull the corresponding lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 70. The respective seat backrest is unlocked or folded forward.

Folding backwards

› Pull the seat belt C for the side panel in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 69.
› Raise the seat backrest against the direction of arrow 2 until the release handle A audibly locks. Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Make sure that the red pin B is hidden.

In the **undivided** seat back, pull the two outer belts to the side panel. After folding back the backrest, the release handles A should audibly click into place on both sides of the backrest and the red mark B should not be visible on either side of the backrest.

WARNING

- The seat backrests in the occupied rear seats must be properly engaged.
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the backrest forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats.
- The seat backrests must be securely latched in position so that no objects from the luggage compartment can slip into the passenger compartment under sudden braking – risk of injury.

CAUTION

When operating the seat backrests, the seat belts must not be pinched - there is a risk of damage to the seat belts.

Fold down armrest

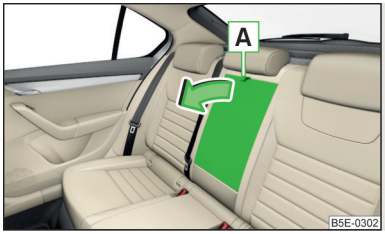


Fig. 71
Fold down armrest

The armrest can be **folded down** by pulling on the loop A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 71.

The folded-down armrest can be used as a side table.

Headrests

Introduction

Note

In sports seats, the headrests are integrated into the seat backrests and cannot be adjusted in height.

Adjust height of front head restraint

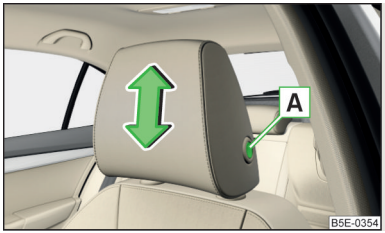


Fig. 72
Setting the height of the front headrest

› To **adjust the height**, hold the locking button A and move the rest in the desired direction » Fig. 72.

Adjusting the height of the rear headrests

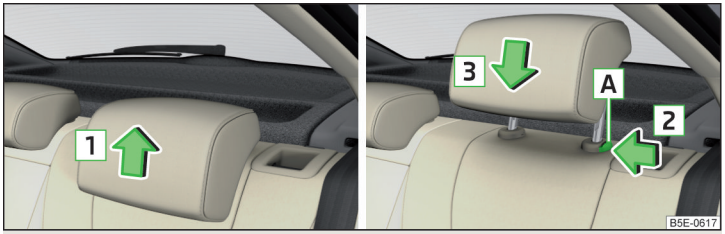


Fig. 73 **Setting the height of the back headrest**

› Grasp the headrest and move **upwards** in the direction of 1 » Fig. 73.
› To move the headrest **down**, press the securing button A in the direction of arrow 2 and hold it down while pressing the headrest in the direction of arrow 3.

Removing/inserting the rear headrests

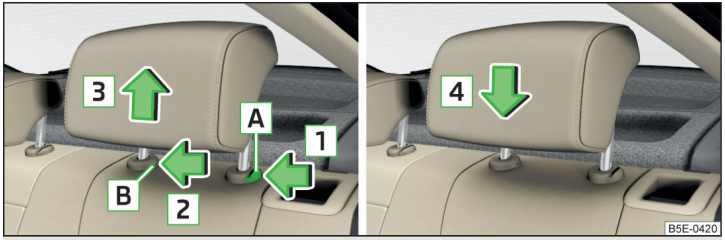


Fig. 74 **Removing/inserting the rear headrests**

Before removing/inserting the headrests, fold the corresponding seat backrest slightly forward » page 79.

› To **remove**, pull the rest out of the seat backrest up to the stop.
› Hold the locking button A in the direction of arrow 1, at the same time using a flat screwdriver with a max. width of 5 mm to press the locking button in the opening B in the direction of arrow 2 and pull out the rest in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 74.
› To **insert** the headrest, push the headrest into the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 4 until the locking button clicks into place.

Seat heaters

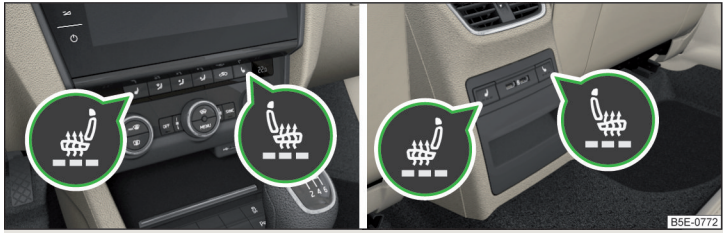


Fig. 75 **Buttons for heating the front seats/rear seats**

The seat backrests and surfaces of the front seats and the outer rear seats can be heated electrically.

Seat heating buttons » Fig. 75

Left seat heating
Right seat heating

› To **turn on** the heating to max, press the key or button.

With repeated pressing of the button, the level is down-regulated until it **switches off** . The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights underneath / in the button.

The seat heating only operates when the engine is running.

When the ignition is switched off, the seat heating / ventilation is also switched off. if the engine is started again within 10 minutes, then the driver's seat heating / ventilation is switched on again automatically according to the setting before switching off the ignition.

WARNING

If you have a limited pain and / or temperature sensitivity, e.g. due to medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend that you do not use the seat heating. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed to avoid damage to the seats.

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not heat seats that do not contain occupants.
- Do not heat seats in which objects are secured or resting (e.g. children´s seat, a bag etc.).
- Do not heat seats on which additional slipcovers or protective covers are fitted.

Note

If the on-board voltage decreases, the seat heating switches off automatically » page 278, *Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery*.

Heated steering wheel

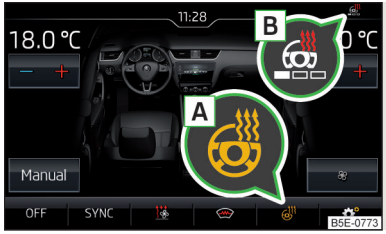


Fig. 76
Function surface for the steering wheel heating

Switching steering wheel heating on/off using Infotainment

› To **switch on / off** press the button MENU on the Climatronic → Tap on the function surface on the Infotainment screen. When the heating is switched on, the symbol in the function surface A is orange » Fig. 76.

Heated steering wheel, along with the driver's seat heating

› To **activate / deactivate** the heated steering wheel with the driver's seat heating, press the button MENU on the Climatronic, then tap the function surface → **Link seat/steering wheel heating** in the Infotainment screen.
› To **switch on / off** the heated steering wheel, press the button for the driver seat heating.

If the heated steering wheel is turned on together with the driver's seat heating, then the function surface is displayed on the Infotainment screen. This can be used to switch the heated steering wheel off/on.

Setting the heat output of the heated steering wheel

› Press the button MENU on the Climatronic, then tap the function surface → *Heated steering wheel* on the Infotainment screen.
› Select one of the three heating levels (this remains stored even after switching off the engine).

The selected heat output of the heated steering wheel is shown (number of segments) on the Infotainment screen B » Fig. 76.

Note

- The heated steering wheel only works when the engine is running.
- If the on-board voltage decreases, the heated steering wheel switches off automatically.

Practical features

Interior equipment

Introduction

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dashboard. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - cause an accident!
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) – risk of accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- For safety reasons, lockable storage compartments must be closed while driving - there is a risk of injury from the opened cover or from the items in the compartment.
- Make sure that no objects protrude from the compartments - there is danger of injury!
- Do not exceed the permissible load for the storage compartments and pockets - it may cause injury or there is the risk of damaging the compartments and pockets!
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like may only be placed in the ashtray - risk of fire!
- The storage compartments and the waste containers are not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

CAUTION

No not place large or sharp objects in the storage compartments and pockets - there is a risk of damage to the compartments and pockets.

Parking ticket holder

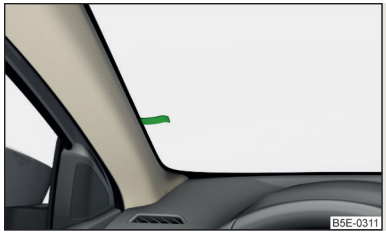


Fig. 77
Parking ticket holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

The parking ticket holder » Fig. 77 is provided for the attachment of e.g. parking tickets.

Storage compartment on the driver's side

Fig. 78
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

› To **open**, lift the handle and fold out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 78.
› To **close**, swing the lid against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

The maximum permissible load of the storage compartment is 0.5 kg.

stowage compartments in the doors

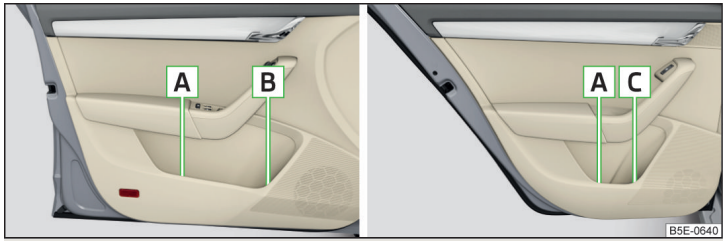


Fig. 79 **Storage compartments in the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 79

A Storage compartment
B Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
C Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 0.5 l

! WARNING

The storage compartment A » Fig. 79n the front door is to be used exclusively for storing objects which do not protrude - there is the danger of limiting the operating range of the side airbags.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

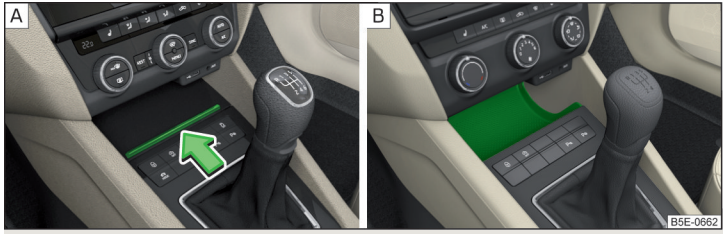


Fig. 80 **Opening storage compartment/ non-lockable storage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

› To **open**, press the ridge in the direction of arrow » Fig. 80 - A.
› To **close**, pull on the ridge against the direction of the arrow.

Certain models do not have a storage compartment lid» Fig. 80 - B.

Phonebox

Fig. 81
Phonebox

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

The storage compartment in the front centre console can be equipped with the Phonebox function.

If a phone is placed face down on the pad in the storage compartment » Fig. 81, the phone signal is amplified by the roof antenna.

Telephones that support the Qi standard for wireless charging can also be charged wirelessly in the storage compartment.

While wireless charging is taking place, **no** objects may be between the pad and the telephone being charged.

! WARNING

- The phone may become warm during wireless charging, so it should be removed carefully from the tray.
- Metal objects between the pad and the phone to be charged can become hot due to the action of the induction field - this is a risk of injury. If there is a metal object in the storage compartment that has become hot, then take out the telephone and let the object cook in the storage compartment!

CAUTION

- Metal objects between the pad and the phone to be charged can become hot due to the action of the induction field - this is a risk of damage to the telephone.
- With some phones, the charging process can be interrupted or the phone can switch off due to heating up.
- Do not insert any electronic or magnetic storage media (e.g. SD cards, USB sticks, cards with magnetic strips or chips) between the pad and the phone to be charged- there is a risk of data loss and damage to these data carriers.
- If a message appears in the Infotainment screen that the phone cannot be charged, then proceed as follows.
  - Check that there is no object between the support and the phone to be charged. If this is the case, then take out the object and the phone. Place the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad again.
  - Check if the position of the phone to be charged has not changed during the journey. If this is the case, then take out the phone and put it back centrally on the phone symbol on the pad.

Note

- At the start of the wireless charging, the appropriate message appears on the Infotainment screen.
- For the optimum phone signal strength and uninterrupted wireless charging, we recommend position the phone in the storage compartment without the protective sleeve, if possible.
- Insert a max. 160x84 mm into the storage compartment.

USB and AUX inputs

Fig. 82 **Front USB and AUX input/rear USB inputs**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

The USB input (marked with ⇠) and AUX input (marked with AUX) are located above the storage compartment in the front centre console » Fig. 82.

The USB inputs (marked with ⚡) are also located in the rear centre console, depending on the equipment.

The USB input in the front centre console can be used for charging and for data transmission. The USB inputs in the rear centre console can be used only for charging.

Information for use » page 146, *USB input* and » page 146, *AUX input*.

Cup holders

Fig. 83 **Cup holder at the front/rear**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

The cup holder is located in the front centre console A and in the rear armrest B » Fig. 83.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

In the front area of the holder A, a beverage container can be opened with one hand by pushing the container into the holder and turning the lid.

WARNING

- Do not use breakable cups or beakers (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!

CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Waste container

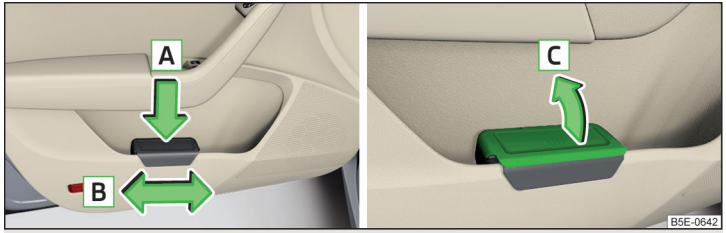


Fig. 84 **Waste container: Inserting and moving/opening**

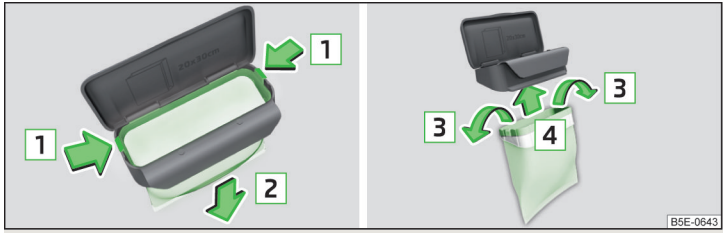


Fig. 85 **Replace bags**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slots in the doors.

Insert waste container

› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container in the rear area in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 84.
› If required, push the waste container in the direction of arrow B.

Remove the waste container

› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow A » Fig. 84.

Open/close waste container

› Lift the cover in the direction C » Fig. 84.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Press the two locking lugs on the frame in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 85.
› Pull the bag together with the frame downwards in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the bag from the frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the bag frame in the direction of arrow 3.
› Insert the bag containing the frame in the direction of arrow 4 into the container body, so that the two lugs engage audibly with the frame.

Note

We recommend that you use 20 x 30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder

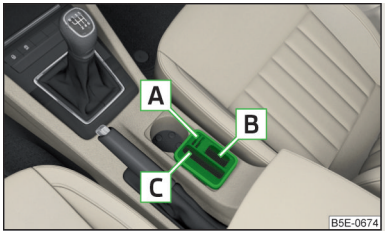


Fig. 86
Multimedia holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

Multimedia holder » Fig. 86

A Storage compartment for storing two coins
B Storage compartment for storing the vehicle key
C Storage compartment for storing a mobile phone

Storage compartment under the front arm rest

Fig. 87
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

› To **open**, pull the armrest by the handle A in the direction of the arrow to the stop » Fig. 87.
› To **close**, fold the armrest down again against the direction of the arrow.

Glasses compartment

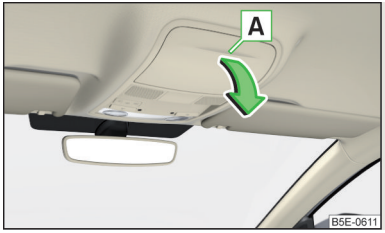


Fig. 88
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

› To **open**, press on the outer edge of the glasses compartment in area A. The compartment folds in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 88.
› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 250 g.

! CAUTION

- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - with high temperatures there is risk of damage.
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system.

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

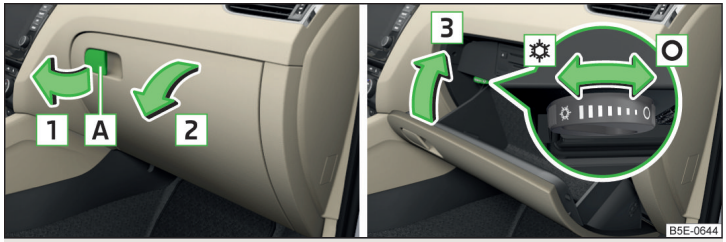


Fig. 89 **Open storage compartment / close storage compartment and open air supply**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light (this is illuminated when the parking lights / low beam are switched on), a pen/card holder and an air outlet.

Storage compartment

› To **open**, pull the handle A in the direction of arrow 1 and fold the cover in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 89.
› To **close**, swivel the cover in the direction of arrow 3 until it audibly clicks into place.

Air supply

› To **open**, turn the rotary switch until it stops in the position ☼ » Fig. 89.
› To **close**, turn the rotary switch until it stops in the position ○.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

The maximum permissible load of the storage compartment is 3 kg.

Storage compartment for umbrella

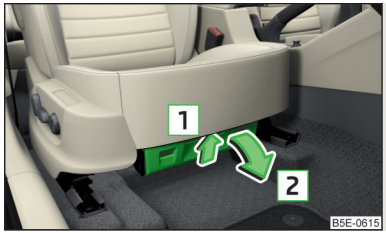


Fig. 90
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe and on page 83 first.

The storage compartment under the passenger seat is used for storing an umbrella.

› To **open**, pull the handle in direction of arrow 1 pull and open the compartment in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 90.
› To **close**, screw in the lid in the opposite direction of arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

CAUTION

Never store a wet umbrella in the storage compartment - there is a risk of damage to the umbrella.

Note

We recommend that you use the umbrella from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Clothes hook

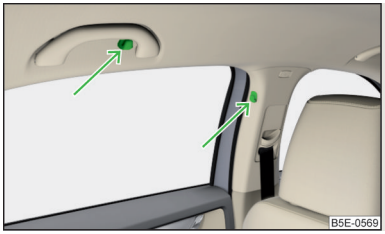


Fig. 91
Clothes hooks

Read and observe and on page 83 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors » Fig. 91.

The maximum permissible load of each of the hooks is 2 kg.

WARNING

- Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing hung up.
- To hang the clothes do not use hangers - there is a risk of limiting the effectiveness of head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the outside.

Storage pockets on the backs of the front seats

Fig. 92
Map pockets

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

The storage pockets » Fig. 92 are intended for the storage of maps, magazines, etc.

Folding table on the front seat rest

Fig. 93
Opening the folding table

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

› To **fold down**, raise the table in the horizontal position in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 93.
› **Fold** the table back into the vertical position by push the table away from the arrow.

The maximum permissible load for the table is 10 kg.

! WARNING

- During the trip to the table must be in folded-down - otherwise there is danger of injury.
- Do not use breakable cups or beakers (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!

Storage compartment in the rear centre console

Fig. 94
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

› To **open** Pull the handle on the upper section of the recess and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 94.
› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of the arrow.

There is a cushioned insert in the storage compartment. This can be removed if the storage compartment is opened to the stop.

Long cargo channel

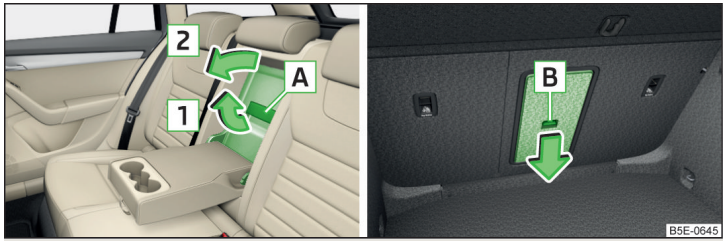


Fig. 95 **Open the cover: from the passenger compartment / from the luggage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

After folding-up the rear armrest and cover, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which the through-loading bag with skis can be pushed.

- To **open from the passenger compartment**, fold down the rear armrest slightly » page 80.
- Pull handle A in the direction of arrow 1 and fold down the cover in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 95.
- To **open from the luggage compartment**, push the securing tab B in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover with the armrest forwards.
- To **close**, fold the cover and the rear armrest upwards until the stop. This should audibly click into place.

The cover must be secured after the closing process. Ensure that the red field above the securing tab B is not visible.

! WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis that are placed in a properly secured, through-loading bag.

Removable through-loading bag

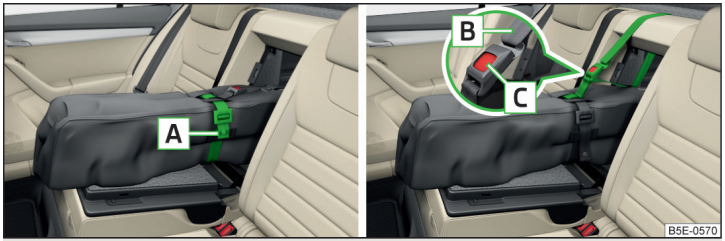


Fig. 96 **Tighten ribbon / secure through-loading bag**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

The removable through-loading bag (hereinafter referred to as through-loading bag) is used exclusively for transporting skis and poles (max. 4 pairs).

Stowing through-loading bag and skis

- Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards » Fig. 95 *on page 90*.
- Place the empty, through-loading bag in the opening in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
- Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear. into the through-loading bag and close the bag.

Securing through-loading bag and skis

- Tighten the strap A around the skis **in front of** the bindings » Fig. 96. The strap must hold the skis tight.
- Fold the seat backrest a little forward » page 79.
- Guide the securing strap B through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
- Then, fold the seat backrests back until the locking button clicks into place. Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.
- Insert the securing strap B into the lock C until it clicks into place.

WARNING

- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 24 kg.
- Always stow and secure the skis and the bag securely - otherwise there is a risk of injury or accident!

CAUTION

Never fold and stow the through-loading bag when it is wet - risk of damaging the through-loading bag.

Electrical sockets

Introduction

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dashboard. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - cause an accident!
- Safely stow all devices during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – risk of death!
- The devices may warm up during operation – risk of injury or fire!
- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- The 12-Volt sockets also work if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.

CAUTION

When using the 12 volt power outlets the following notes are to be observed.

- The sockets can only be used for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts, otherwise the electrical system of the vehicle may be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Before switching the ignition on / off or before starting the engine, switch off the devices which are connected to the sockets - there is a risk of damage to the equipment due to voltage fluctuations.

12-volt power outlet

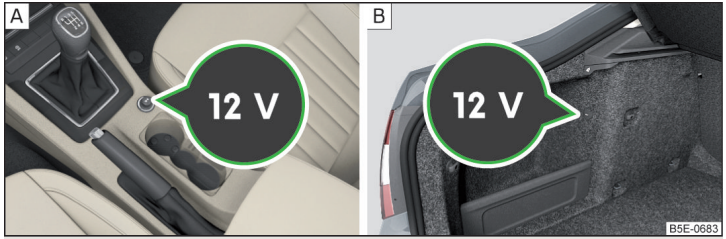


Fig. 97 **Cover for the 12-volt socket: In the front centre console/in the luggage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

› To **use**, remove the cover from the socket » Fig. 97 - A or open the cover of the socket » Fig. 97 - B.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

230-volt socket

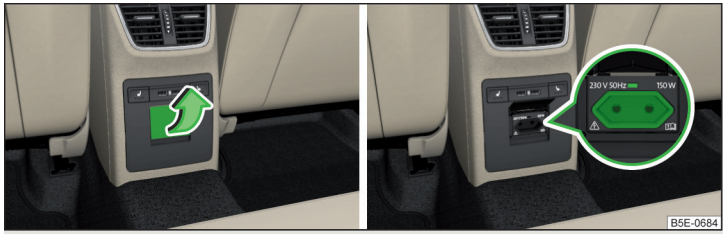


Fig. 98 **Open the cover of the 230 volt outlet / 230 volt outlet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

The 230-volt socket has a child safety lock. When inserting the plug, the fuse is released, the socket is activated and the warning light above the socket is illuminates green (if this flashes red, then the socket is deactivated).

The socket works with the engine running (in STOP mode in vehicles with the START-STOP system) and for about 10 minutes after the engine is switched off, provided an appliance was still connected prior to switching off the engine (the warning light flashes green)).

› To **use**, fold up the cover of the socket in the direction of arrow » Fig. 98 and plug the electrical appliance plug into the socket.
› Before removing the electrical appliance plug from the socket, fold open the cover of the socket part way in the direction of the arrow.

An automatic deactivation of the socket can take place, for example, for the following reasons.
▶ Excessive current.
▶ Low state of charge of the battery.
▶ High outlet temperature.

If disabling reasons no longer exist, the automatic activation of the socket can be done.

Should no automatic activation of the socket take place, the connected devices must be disconnected from the power outlet and reconnect after a short time.

! WARNING

- Make sure that no liquid or moisture enters into the socket - it can be fatal! If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- The child lock on the power socket is unlocked when using adapters and extension cables which carry volts – risk of injury!
- Do no insert any objects (e.g. knitting needles) into the contacts of the power socket – risk of death!

! CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230V plug, with a total power uptake of up to 150 watt.
- The plug of the electrical appliance must be plugged in up to the stop, otherwise the child safety lock can be unlocked and the socket may be activated but the electric appliance is still not receiving power.
- Do not connect bulbs with neon tubes in the socket - there is a risk of damaging the lamp.
- For appliances with an independent power source (e.g. such as notebooks), first connect the power source itself and only after that connect the appliance.

Ashtray and cigarette lighter

Introduction

The ashtray can be used for ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like

! WARNING

Never place hot or flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

Ashtray

Fig. 99 **Remove / open / disassemble ashtray**

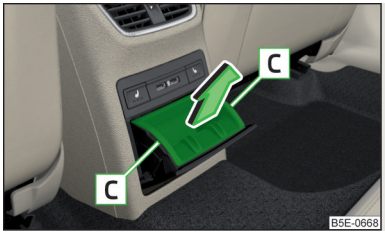


Fig. 100
Removing the rear ashtray insert

Read and observe ! on page 92 first.

Removable ashtray

› Remove the ashtray in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 99. **Insertion** takes place in reverse order.
› To **open** the ashtray, turn the cover in the direction of arrow B. **Closing** takes place in reverse order.
› To **disassemble** turn the entire cover in the direction 1 until it stops and remove in direction of arrow 2. **Assembling** takes place in reverse order.

Ashtray with removable insert

› To **remove** the insert, open the ashtray fully, hold the insert in area C and remove in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 100.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Cigarette lighter

Fig. 101
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! on page 92 first.

› To **use** the lighter, push it in as far as the stop and wait until the glowing lighter clicks out again » Fig. 101.
› Take out the glowing lighter instantly, use it and insert it back into the socket.

! WARNING

- The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a risk of burning, fire or damage to the vehicle interior.
- Be careful when using the cigarette lighter - it can cause burns.

Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12 volt socket.

Tablet holder

Introduction

External devices (e.g. tablet, smartphone etc.) measuring min. 122 mm and max. 195 mm can be secured in the holder.

The maximum permissible load of the compartment is 750 g.

! CAUTION

Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the holder - there is a risk of damage or functional impairment.

Attaching the rear headrests

Fig. 102 **Inserting: Adapter / holder**

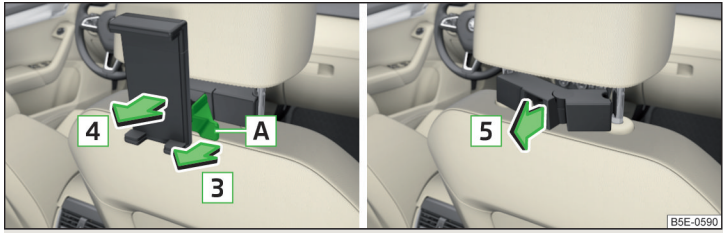


Fig. 103 **Removing: Holder / adapter**

Read and observe ! on page 93 first.

› To**insert**, attach the opened adapter to the guide rods of the front headrest and clip in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 102 » !.
› Clip in the holder in the direction of arrow 2 into the adapter.
› To **remove**, pull on the securing tab A in direction of arrow 3 and take the holder out of the adapter in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 103.
› Press the adapter and remove in the direction of the arrow 5 from the guide rods of the headrest.

! WARNING

Be careful with the adapter- otherwise there is a risk of finger injury.

Handling the holder

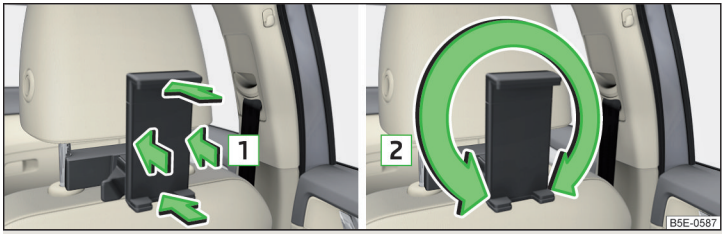


Fig. 104 **Tilting and rotating the holder**

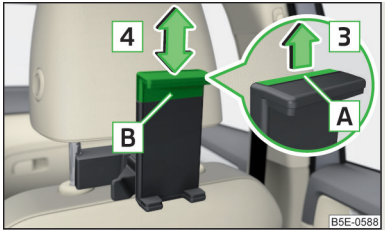


Fig. 105
Adjusting the holder size

Read and observe ! on page 93 first.

The holder may be by 30° in the direction of the arrow 1 **tipped** and by 360° in the direction of arrow 2 **turned** » Fig. 104.

› To **adjust the holder size**, pull out the securing tab A in the direction of arrow 3 and push the part B in the direction of arrow 4 to the desired position » Fig. 105.

i Note

If there is no external device in the holder, then we recommend that the part B is moved down fully. Otherwise, irritating noise may occur at certain speeds.

Transport of cargo

Luggage compartment

Introduction

When transporting heavy objects, the driving characteristics change due to the shift in centre-of-gravity. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.

When transporting cargo the following the instructions must be adhered to

- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it with suitable lashing straps to the lashing eyes or securing nets so that they cannot slip.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Tyre pressure is to match the load.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Luggage compartment light
The light switches on/off when the boot lid is opened or closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. Heavy objects were not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- An unfixed or improperly fixed load can slip during a sudden manoeuvre or an accident - danger of injury!
- Loose cargo could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- When transporting loads in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats .

CAUTION

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. - these could be damaged.
- Make sure that the heating elements of the rear window heater, the elements of the integrated aerial in the rear window or in the rear side windows are not damaged by abrasive items.
- Do not place sharp objects in the nets and storage compartments in the luggage compartment - there is a risk of damage to the net as well as the compartments.
- Put the items in the storage compartments carefully and not load these punctiform - there is a risk of damage to the compartments.

Fastening elements

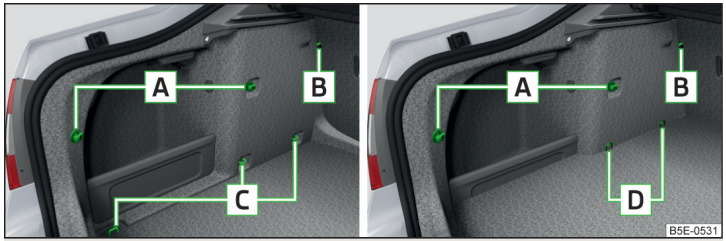


Fig. 106 **Fastening elements: Variant 1/variant 2 (G-TEC)**

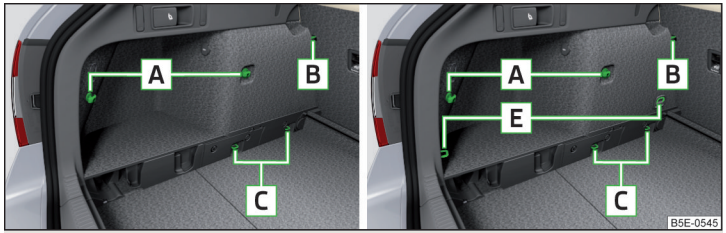


Fig. 107 **Fastening elements: Variant 3/variant 4**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

The fasteners are located on both sides of the luggage compartment.

Overview of the fastening elements » Fig. 106**and** » Fig. 107

- **A** Fasteners for securing fastening nets and multifunction pocket
- **B** Lashing eyes **only** for fastening fixing nets
- **C** Lashing eyes for fastening of cargo and fastening nets (in variant 1, the rear and centre eye is additionally provided for securing the multifunctional bag)
- **D** Lashing eyes for fastening cargo and fastening nets
- **E** Lashing eyes for fastening cargo and fastening nets

The lashing eyelet **B** is located behind the folding rear seat backrest .

The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes **C** and **E** is 350 kg.

The maximum permissible load of the individual lashing eyes is **D** is 150 kg.

Fixing nets

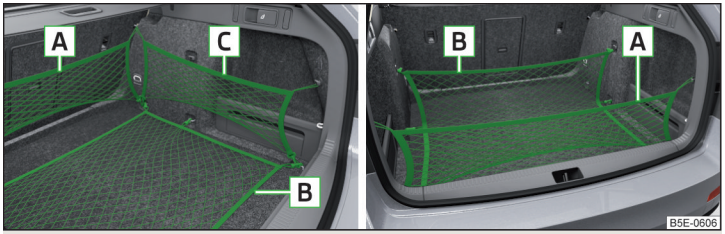


Fig. 108 **Fastening examples for nets**

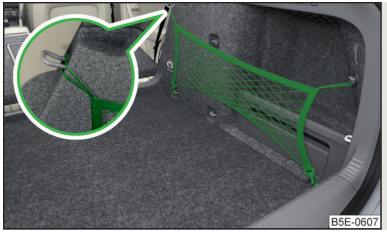


Fig. 109
Fastening vertical pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 108 **and** » Fig. 109

- **A** Horizontal pocket
- **B** Floor net
- **C** Vertical pocket

The maximum permissible load of each of the nets is 1.5 kg.

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor and this is in the upper position, then the lashing eyes **E** » Fig. 107 *on page 96* can be used for attaching the nets.

! CAUTION

On vehicles with lashing eyes **D** » Fig. 106 *on page 95* only the cross-bag are attached behind the seats and the floor net (the net can be attached to the rear fasteners **A** » Fig. 106 *on page 95* at the rear).

Multifunction pocket

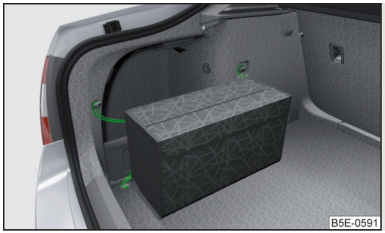


Fig. 110
Securing the multifunction pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

The pocket » Fig. 110 can be secured to the fastening elements A and the rear and centre lashing eyes C » Fig. 106 *on page 95*.

The maximum permissible load for the bag attached to the fastening element is 3 kg.

! CAUTION

In vehicles with a variable loading floor, it is not possible to attach the bag to the fastening elements.

Folding double hooks

Fig. 111
Folding double hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

Folding double hooks» Fig. 111 for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc. are provided on one or both sides of the luggage compartment depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle (e.g. Bags etc.).

An item of luggage with a maximum weight of 5 kg can be attached to each side of the double hook.

Foldable hook

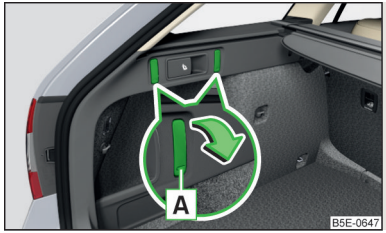


Fig. 112
Fold down hook

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

Foldable hooks for hanging small items of luggage, such as bags, etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment.

› To the **use** on the lower part A Press the hook and pull it down in direction of the arrow » Fig. 112.

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7 kg.

Fasten the flooring

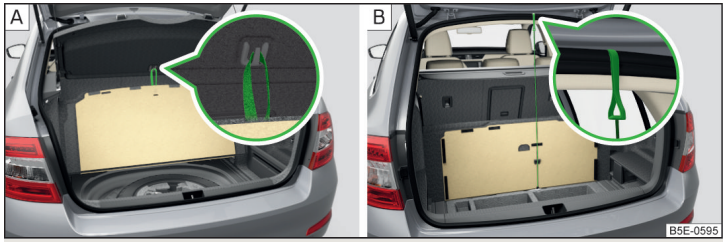


Fig. 113 **Fastening the flooring: Variant 1/variant 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

Fastening options for the flooring » Fig. 113

A With the loop on a hook on the luggage compartment cover

B With the hook on the frame of the luggage compartment lid

! CAUTION

For version 1, the following information applies.

- The hook on the luggage compartment cover is only provided for the fixing of the floor covering, do not hang objects on it - there is a risk of damage to hook.
- The flooring must be secured on the hook only with an open boot, therefore, before closing the lid, check to see if the flooring is attached to the hook - there is a risk of damage to hook.

! CAUTION

The floor covering can be fixed with Version 2 only if the variable loading floor is folded in the upper position » Fig. 127 *on page 104*.

Floor covering on both sides

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

A double-sided floor covering can be fitted in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable (suitable for transporting wet or dirty items).

! CAUTION

The double sided floor covering can only be used in vehicles without the variable loading floor» page 103 - There is a risk of damage to the variable loading floor.

Net on the luggage compartment cover

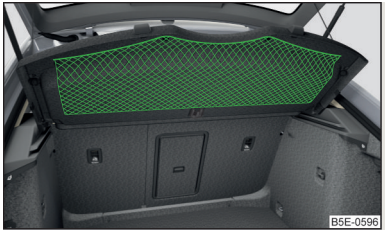


Fig. 114
Net on the luggage compartment cover

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

The net at the bottom of the luggage compartment cover » Fig. 114 is provided for transporting light and soft items.

The maximum permissible load of the net is 1.5 kg.

Luggage compartment cover

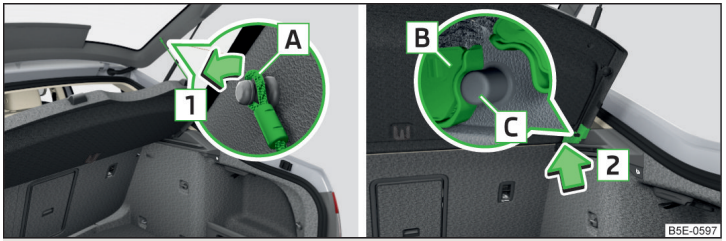


Fig. 115 **Remove the luggage compartment cover**

Fig. 116
Luggage compartment cover stowed behind the rear seats

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

If the retaining straps A » Fig. 115 are attached to the boot lid, then opening the lid will also raise the luggage compartment cover (hereafter only referred to as "cover").

The cover can be removed from the vehicle and stowed behind the rear seat backrests if required » Fig. 116. Before removing the cover, the sunshade at the back must be rolled up» page 72.

Removing

› On both sides of the boot lid, unhook the straps A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 115.
› Hold the raised cover and press on the two sides on the underside of the cover in the area of the recess C.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

Fitting

› Place the fixtures B on the cover above the brackets C on the side trim » Fig. 115.
› Press on the two sides to the upper side of the cover in the region of the mounts C. The fixtures B must lock into place of the recess C on both sides of the luggage compartment.
› On both sides of the boot lid, unhook the straps A.

! WARNING

Do not place any objects on the cover during the trip - There is a risk of injury if you brake or have a collision!

! CAUTION

- Observe the following instructions to avoid canting and the subsequent damage to the cover or the side trim.
  - The cover must be inserted properly and the load must not exceed the height of the cover.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the raised position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the cover in the raise position and the rear backrest.

Roll-up cover

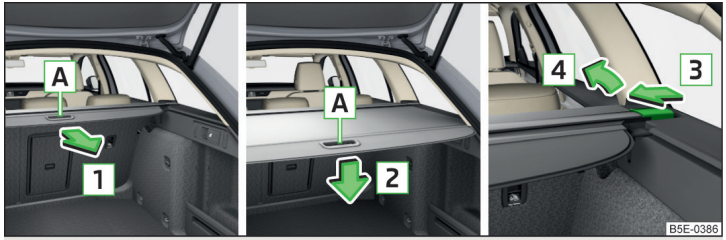


Fig. 117 **Roll-up cover: Pull out / roll up / remove**

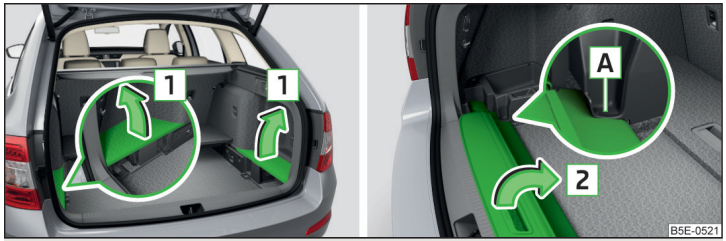


Fig. 118 **Removing side covers / stowing foldable luggage compartment cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

Extending

› Grasp the cover at grip-point A and pull it out in the direction of the arrow 1 until it audibly clicks into place» Fig. 117.

Retracting

› Push the cover in the handle area A in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 117. The cover rolls up automatically. The rolled-up cover can now be removed.

Removing/inserting

› Press on the side of the cross bar in the direction of arrow 3 and remove the cover in the arrow direction 4 » Fig. 117.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Stowage

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, then the removable roll-up luggage compartment cover can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

› Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 104.
› Remove the side covers in the direction of arrows 1 » Fig. 118.
› Insert the front part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover under a portion of the side trim D on the left.
› Fold the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the roll-up cover - there is a risk of damage to the cover and a risk of injury in the event of a sudden stop or a vehicle collision!

i Note

If you want to stow the roll-up luggage compartment cover and the roof rack **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment is **covering** the rear roof rack.

Storage compartment with cargo element

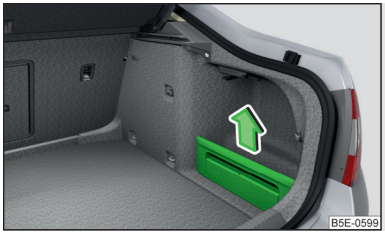


Fig. 119
Remove storage compartment

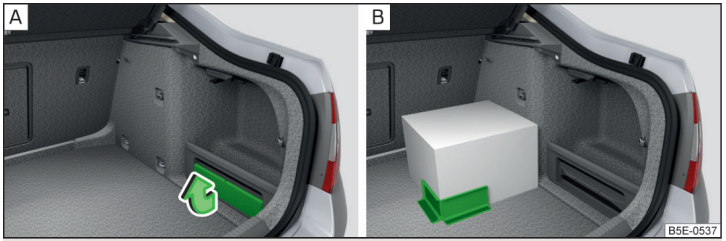


Fig. 120 **Remove cargo element / Load fastening example**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

The storage compartment with cargo element may be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, depending on the equipment variant.

The space behind the storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 2.5 kg.

The cargo element is designed for attaching and securing objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Storage compartment

› Remove the storage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow» Fig. 119. **Insertion** takes place in reverse order.

Cargoelement

› Before use, remove theCargoelement in the direction of arrow» Fig. 120 - A.
› Use thecargoelements to secure the load as close as possible to the rear seats» Fig. 120 B.
› After use, stow the cargoelements in their original position.

Storage compartments under the floor covering

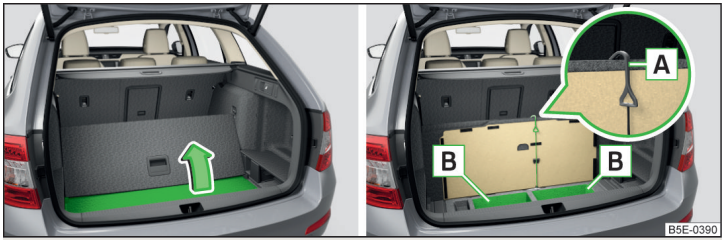


Fig. 121 **Lift floor covering/storage compartments under the floor covering**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

For vehicles that are not equipped with an emergency wheel located under the flooring of the luggage compartment B » Fig. 121.

Every storage compartment B is designed for storing small objects of up to 15 kg. in weight in total.

Use of the storage compartments

› Dividing the luggage compartment with variable loading floor » page 104.
› Lift the floor covering in the direction of arrow» Fig. 121 and hook into hook A on the upper edge of the variable loading floor.
› Stow the cargo in the storage compartments.
› Unhook hook A and fold back the flooring against the direction of the arrow (fold back the variable loading floor to the initial position if necessary).

When transporting tall objects in the compartments, the hook A must be hooked onto the upper edge of the variable loading floor.

! CAUTION

Before closing the boot lid, check that the cargo transported in the storage compartments does not strike against the luggage compartment cover - there is a risk of damage to the lid.

Multi-function pocket

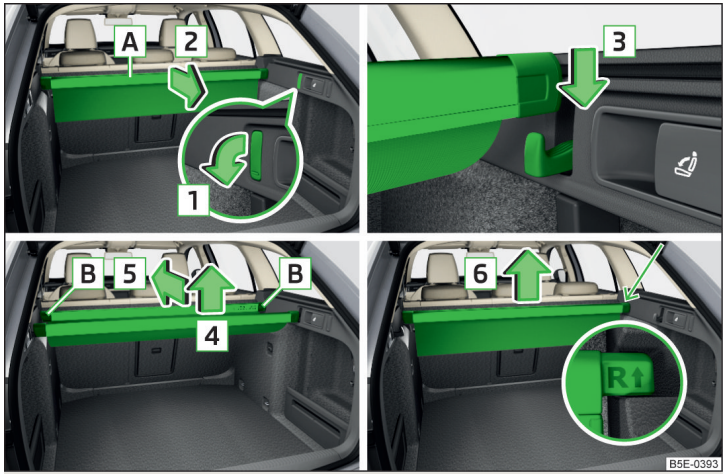


Fig. 122 **Multi-function pocket: Pull out / insert / push in / remove multi-function pocket**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

The multifunction pocket (hereinafter referred to as pocket) is provided for storing clothing and light objects with no sharp edges.

The maximum permissible load of the multifunction box is 3 kg.

Removal and fitting

› Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 122.
› Grasp the rear bar A with both hands and withdraw the pocket in arrow direction 2.
› Place the rear bar onto the two hooks that are folded forward in the direction of the arrow 3 all the way to the stop.

Pushing in

› Remove the rear bar from the hooks in the direction of arrow 4 and push in the pocket in the direction of arrow 5 » Fig. 122.
› Place the rear bar against the front bar and press them together at both ends B.
› The front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment fold back opposite to the direction of arrow 1.

Removing/inserting

› Remove the roll-up cover » page 99.
› Remove the pocket from the fittings in the direction of the arrow 6 » Fig. 122.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

› Insert the end of the bar marked with R ↑ into the right-hand mounting and the end of the bar marked with ↑ L into the left-hand mounting. The arrows should be pointing forward.

Removable light

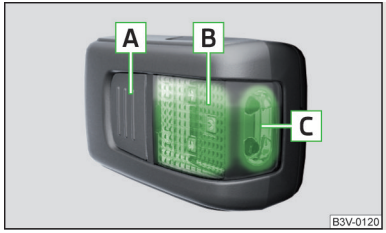


Fig. 123
Removable lamp

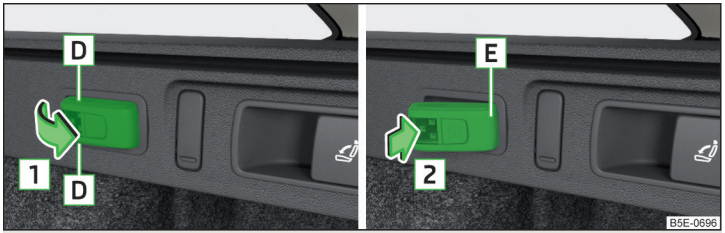


Fig. 124 **Removable light: Removing/inserting**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

The light is located on the right side of the luggage compartment and is used to light the luggage compartment or as a portable light.

The lamp is fitted with magnets. As a result, this can, for example, be fitted to the vehicle body.

Description of the light » Fig. 123

A Button to turn on / off the light
B Part that lights up when the lamp is in the mount
C Part that lights up when the lamp is not in the mount

If the light is in the **mount**, this will illuminate when the boot lid is opened.

› To **remove**, hold the light in the area D and swivel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 124.
› To **switch on** the removed light, press button A » Fig. 123. Pressing the light again will **switched it off**.
› To **insert**, first of all insert the light with the rear part E into the mount » Fig. 124 and then push the light in the direction of arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

If the light is not switched off and is correctly inserted in the mount, the LED diodes in the front part of the light C » Fig. 123 are automatically switched off.

If the lamp is not correctly inserted into the holder, this does not light up when the boot lid is opened and the rechargeable batteries are not charged.

Lamp charges
The lamp is supplied by three rechargeable type NiMH AAA batteries. The batteries are charged continuously with the engine running (to fully charge the battery takes approximately 3 hours).

Replace batteries » page 296.

CAUTION
The light is not waterproof, so it must be protected from humidity - otherwise there is risk of damage.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1-4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Introduction

Positions of the variable loading floor

Fig. 125 **Set variable loading floor to the upper position / variable loading floor in the upper position**

Fig. 126 **Set variable loading floor to the lower position / variable loading floor in the lower position**

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position.

Set to the upper position
› Lift the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 125 by about 20 cm and pull towards you.
› Lift the loading floor to the height of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow 1 until you hear the clicking sound and press forward.

The space below the variable loading floor can be used for stowing objects such as the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover » page 99, the roof cross bars» page 106 etc.

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position » Fig. 126.

Set into the lower position

› Check that the area below the variable loading floor is empty.
› Lift the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 126 above the loading edge in the direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the loading floor towards you in the direction of arrow 3 until it sinks to the bottom position, and push forward.

Fold together / fold out the variable loading floor

Fig. 127 **Fold up variable loading floor / folded variable cargo floor in the upper position**

› To **fold together**, hold the variable loading floor by the handle A and lift in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 127.
› Fold up the variable loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow 2.

Folding out takes place in reverse order.

The variable loading floor is folded together / out in the same way in the upper and lower position.

Dividing the luggage compartment

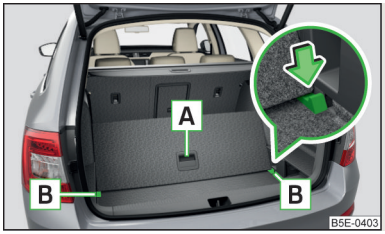


Fig. 128 **Dividing the boot with variable loading floor**

› To **divide**, lift the variable loading floor by the handle A and push in the rear edge of the variable loading floor in the grooves B in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 128.

The variable loading floor is secured against movements in the grooves B.

Folding out takes place in reverse order.

The variable loading floor is divided in the same way in the upper and lower position.

Net partition

Introduction

Using the net partition

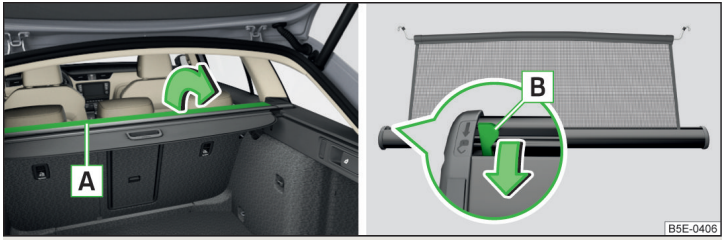


Fig. 129 **Open part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover / release lever**

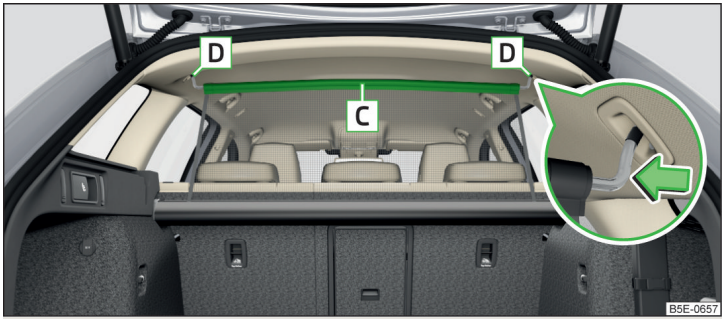


Fig. 130 **Correctly secure net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state**

The net partition can either be pulled out and secured from behind the rear seats or behind the front seats.

Pull out and secure the net partition behind the rear seats

› Fold out part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 129.
› Pull out the net partition at the crossbar C and hook into one of the receptacles D » Fig. 130.
› On the other side, press on the crossbar in the direction of the arrow and hook it into the appropriate receptacle D.
› Make sure that the crossbar is firmly seated in the two mountings D.
› Fold back part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 129.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats

› Fold out part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 129.
› Press on the crossbar and remove it from the receptacles D » Fig. 130, first on one side, then on the other side.
› The crossbar C **Hold** in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up without being damaged.
› Fold back part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 129.

Pull out and secure the net partition behind the front seats

The process is analogous to that for behind the rear seats. Before pulling out the net partition, the rear seat backs are to be folded forwards. After rolling up the net partition into the housing, the rear seat backs are folded back » page 79.

! CAUTION

If the net partition blocks when pulling it out, push the release lever B in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 129.

Removing and installing the net partition housing

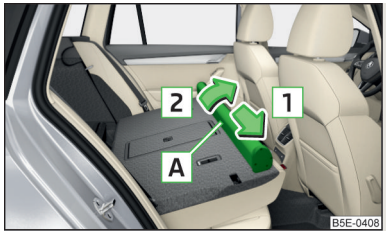


Fig. 131 **Removing the net partition housing**

› To **remove**, fold forwarded the rear seat backrests and open the rear right door.
› Push the housing A in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove it from the mountings in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 131.
› To **install**, insert the recesses on the housing A into the mountings on the rear seat backrests and push the housing against the arrow 1 up to the stop.
› Fold the rear seat backrests to their original position.

Transport on the roof rack

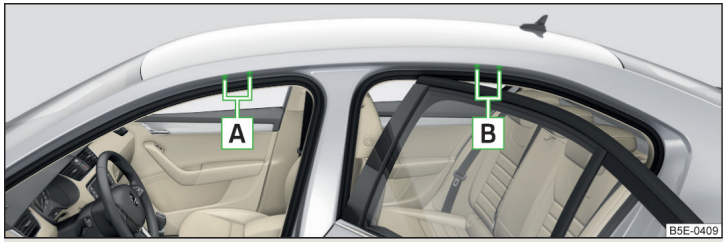


Fig. 132 **Attachment points**

Fig. 133 **Remove the side panels of the luggage compartment/stow the roof rack**

Depending on the equipment, the roof bars can be attached at the attachment points » Fig. 132 or to the roof rail.

The attachment points A and B are located on both sides of the vehicle » Fig. 132.

Mounting and dismounting of the roof bars is carried out according to the instructions provided.

Roof load
The maximum permitted weight of the load incl. carriers is 75 kg.

Stowing the roof racks
With vehicles have the variable loading floor, then the roof racks can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

› Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 104.
› Remove the side panels of the luggage compartment in the direction of arrows 1 » Fig. 133.
› Remove the key from the roof rack» ! and stow in the recess C.
› Insert the front roof rack A into the front recesses of the side panel and the rear roof rack B into the back recesses of the side trim.
› Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 1.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 103.

! WARNING

For road safety when transporting cargo on the roof rack, observe the following instructions.
- Always distribute the load on the roof rack evenly and secure properly using suitable lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- Before stowing the roof rack, the key must be removed from the carrier - otherwise there is a risk of key corruption.
- If you want to stow the roof rack and the roll-up luggage compartment cover **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment is **covering** the rear roof rack.

! CAUTION

- Make sure that the sliding / tilting roof or the boot lid does not collide with the roof load when opened.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the load being transported.

i Note

We recommend that you use a roof rack from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Heating and ventilation

Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic

Introduction

The heating heats and ventilates the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system works under the following conditions.

✓ The cooling system is switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is below 2 ° C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

Fogging is prevented when the cooling system is switched on.

To increase the efficiency of the cooling system, recirculation mode can be switched on briefly » page 110.

Health protection

To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.

- The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 ° C.
- The cooling system should be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
- Once a year, the air conditioning should be disinfected by a specialist garage.

! WARNING

- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting. Otherwise there could be an accident.
- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

Note

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Heating and manual air conditioning

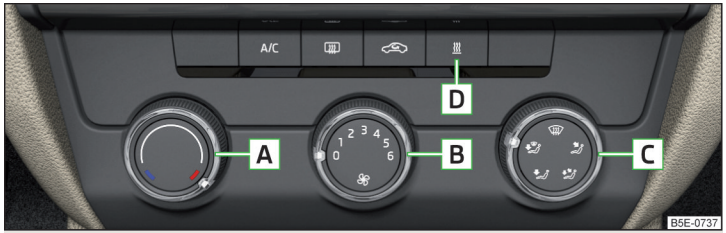


Fig. 134 **Controls of the heating / air conditioning**

Read and observe ! on page 107 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 134.

A Adjust temperature
- Reduce the temperature / increase the temperature

B Set the fan speed (stage 0: Fan off, level 6: highest speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 110

D Depending on equipment fitted:
- Auxiliary heating and ventilation on / switch off » page 112
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 71

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Switch on/off the rear window heater » page 71

Switch recirculation on/off » page 110

When this function is switched on, the warning light lights up below the button.

Information on the cooling system
After pressing the button **A/C**, the warning light underneath the button illuminates even if not all conditions for the cooling system are met. The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met » page 107.

When the air distribution control is turned to position the cooling system is activated.

Note
To ensure adequate thermal comfort, during operation of the manual air conditioning there could be an increase in the engine idle speed in some circumstances.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

Fig. 135 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! on page 107 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 135.

A Display the set temperature for the left side
B Display the set temperature for the right side
C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 110
D Adjust fan speed (the setting is indicated by the number of illuminated control lamps shown in the knob)
E Adjust the temperature for the left side (or for both sides)[1)]
▶ Reduce the temperature / increase the temperature
F Adjust the temperature for the right side (or for both sides)[2)]
▶ Reduce the temperature / increase the temperature
G Depending on equipment fitted:
▶ Auxiliary heating and ventilation on / switch off » page 112
▶ **OFF** Switch off Climatronic
H Interior temperature sensor
Switch recirculation on/off » page 110
MAX Intense air flow to the windscreen on / off (when switching on, the air flow to the windows and **A/C** is also switched on)
Switch on/off the rear window heater » page 71
Switch on/off the windscreen heating » page 71
MENU Setting Climatronic in Infotainment (also operate with some functions)
SYNC Synchronise the temperature inside the entire vehicle according to the temperature setting on the driver's side
AUTO Switching automatic mode on » page 109
A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

If the function is switched on, a warning light lights up within or below the button.

Adjust temperature
The temperature can be set on the Climatronic control unit or in Infotainment» page 109. In the range between 16 ° C to 29.5 ° C, an automatic temperature control takes place.

At a temperature setting below 16 °C, **LO** lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum cooling performance**.

At a temperature setting above 29.5 °C, **HI** lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum heating output**.

! CAUTION
Do not cover the interior temperature sensor H » Fig. 135 - the function of the Climatronic could be affected.

[1)] Applies to left-hand drive vehicles.
[2)] Applies to right-hand drive vehicles.

Note

- In order to ensure adequate thermal comfort, there may be an increase in engine idle speed during operation of the Climatronic in some circumstances.
- The setting of the Climatronic is stored in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Operate Climatronic in Infotainment

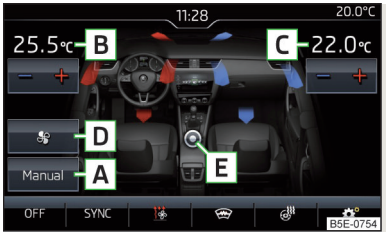


Fig. 136
Infotainment: Climatronic main menu

Read and observe ! on page 107 first.

› To display the **main menu**, press the button **MENU** on the Climatronic control unit.

Function surfaces and screen display » Fig. 136.

A	Displays the current operation mode (or set the operation mode) of the Climatronic
B	Set the desired temperature, front - left side
C	Set the desired temperature, front - right side
D	Setting the power in **AUTO** operation
E	Switching on/off and adjusting the fan speed, cooling system, air distribution and the air recirculation[a]
	Colour representation of the air flow from the air vents at the front (Blue colour - temperature reduction / red colour - temperature increase)
OFF/ON	Switching on/off the Climatronic
SYNC	Switch on / off the temperature synchronisation throughout the interior of the vehicle according to the temperature setting on the driver's side[a]
	Set the auxiliary heater and ventilation
	Switch on/off the windscreen heating[a]
	Turn on / off the steering wheel heater[a]
	Other Climatronic settings

[a] When function is switched on, the symbol in the function surface is green.

Other Climatronic settings

Press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic control panel → tap the function surface on the Infotainment screen.

- **Air-cond. profile** - Setting the operating performance in **AUTO** operation (applies to the Infotainment Swing)
- **Automatic air recirculation** - Automatic re-circulated air mode on/off
- **Automatic auxiliary heater** - Quick interior heating on/off
- **Automatic windscreen heating** - Activates/deactivates the automatic windscreen heating

Climatronic - automatic operation

Read and observe ! on page 107 first.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

› To **turn on**, press the **AUTO** » Fig. 135 *on page 108* .
› To **turn off**, press any button for the air distribution or change the blower speed. The temperature regulation is continued.

Holding the button **AUTO** will turn on **SYNC** automatically.

Operating modes

Automatic mode works in three modes - moderate, medium, and intensive. Setting the different modes is carried out via the function surface D » Fig. 136 *on page 109*.

After the automatic mode is switched on, Climatronic works in the last selected mode. The currently selected mode is displayed on the Infotainment screen.

Air distribution control

Read and observe ! on page 107 first.

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the Interior of the vehicle. In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

› To **switch on**, press the button. The warning light below the button lights up.
› To **switch off**, press the button again. The warning light below the button goes out.

Heating and manual air conditioning system
If the air distribution control is set to position when the recirculation modes is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is switched off. By pressing the button, the air recirculation also in this position can be switched on again.

When the cooling system (button **A/C**) is switched on and the temperature regulator is “turned” to the left, the recirculated-air mode is switched on.

Climatronic
The Climatronic can have a sensor that measures the air recirculation mode and automatically turns on if there is an increased concentration of pollutants in the incoming air.

When the pollutant concentration decreases to the normal level, the recirculated air mode is automatically switched off.

Automatically switch on / off the air recirculation function can be set in the Infotainment screen. by pressing the button **MENU** on the Climatronic and by subsequently pressing the function surfaces → **Automatic air recirculation**. Automatic power on / off function at a temperature above 2 ° C.

The air recirculation function is shut off by pressing the **AUTO** button; this may be carried out automatically depending on the moisture conditions in the vehicle interior.

! WARNING

The air recirculation should not be left switched on for a long period of time because then there is no supply of fresh air from the outside. “Stale air” may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up, turn the air recirculation mode off immediately - there is a risk of accident!

! CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from inside the vehicle is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Air outlet vents

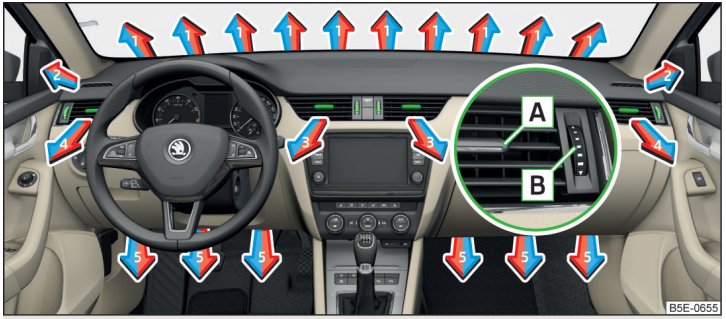


Fig. 137 **Air vents at the front**

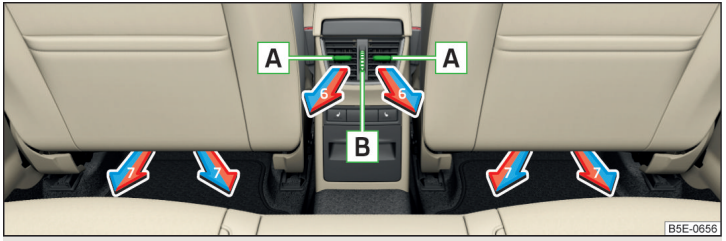


Fig. 138 **Air vents at the rear**

Read and observe ! on page 107 first.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 137 and **6** » Fig. 138, and the vents can be opened and closed individually.

The setting of the airflow direction is carried out by moving the adjustment element A » Fig. 137 or » Fig. 138 in the desired direction.

› To **open**, turn the controller B » Fig. 137 or » Fig. 138 upwards.
› To **close**, turn the controller B » Fig. 137 or » Fig. 138 downwards.

Depending on the setting of the air distribution, the air stream comes out of the following air vents.

Set the direction of the air outlet	Air vents » Fig. 137 and » Fig. 138
/	1. 2. 4
	1. 2. 4. 5. 7
	3. 4. 6
	4. 5. 7
	3. 4. 5. 6. 7

CAUTION

Do not cover the air vents - the air distribution could be compromised.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

The **auxiliary heating** heats the vehicle interior as well as the engine. For heating, fuel is consumed from the fuel tank.

The **auxiliary ventilation** enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior with the engine switched off, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) (referred to just as auxiliary heating in the following) ensures the heating / ventilation depending on the setting of the air conditioning and the air outlet vents before switching off the ignition.

WARNING

- The auxiliary heating must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. If you want to use the auxiliary heating, do not park the car in places where the exhaust fumes can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel etc. - risk of fire.

CAUTION

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.

Note

- The auxiliary heating only switches the blower on, if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- In the engine compartment, water vapour may form during the operation of the heater.

Power on / off

Fig. 139 **Button for switching on / off (Climatronic / manual air conditioning)**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 111 first.

Functional requirements of the auxiliary heating.

✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.

✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning light is not illuminated in the instrument cluster).

Manual on / off

▶ Using the button on the operating part of the air conditioning» Fig. 139.

▶ Using the (switch on) / OFF (switch off) button on the remote control operation.

Automatic on / off

▶ Via an automatically programmed and activated pre-set time in Infotainment.

▶ According to the environmental conditions.

Switching off the auxiliary heating takes place automatically when there is a lack of fuel (warning light in the instrument cluster lights up).

After switching off, the coolant pump and the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the heating.

Setting automatic on / off

Climatronic: On the Climatronic, press the MENU button → tap the function surface on the Infotainment screen. There will be a display of the last set operating mode with the option to change this.

Manual air conditioning: In Infotainment in the menu CAR / tap the function surface.

Then follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen.

When automatic switching on is activated, the warning light in the symbol button lights up for about 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off » Fig. 139.

Operation in Infotainment

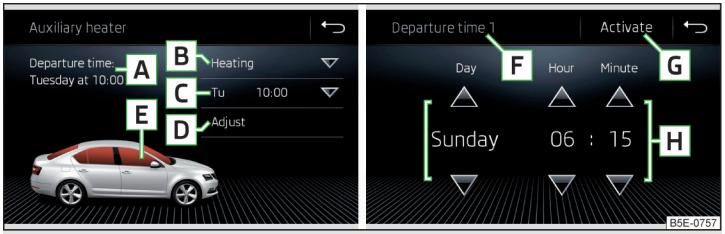


Fig. 140 **Aux. heating: Main menu/set preset time**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 111 first.

Call up the main menu

› On the Climatronic, press the MENU button → tap the function surface on the Infotainment screen.

Or vehicles with manual air conditioning:

› In Infotainment in the menu CAR / tap the function surface.

Function surfaces and display » Fig. 140

A Departure time - Day and time when the vehicle is to be ready for use

B Setting the operating mode (heating / ventilation)

C List of pre-selected times, activation / deactivation of the preset time

D Set the preset times 1-3 and the duration (10-60 minutes)

E When heating the windows are shown in red / with continuous aeration, the windows are shown in blue

F Currently displayed preset time

G Activation of the currently displayed preset time

H Setting the departure time: Day, hour, minute

Only one preset time can be active. The activated preset time will be deactivated again after it has started automatically. For the next start, activate one of the preset times.

Note

▪ In the selection of the day in the preset time, there is an option between Sunday and Monday without the specified day. If this setting is selected, the vehicle will be ready for use at the selected time, regardless of the current day.
▪ If a different time is set, the activated preset time is automatically deactivated. The preset time must be reactivated.

Radio remote control

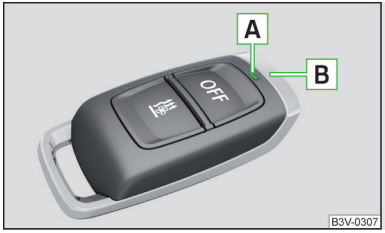


Fig. 141
Radio remote control

Read and observe ! and ! on page 111 first.

Description of the remote control » Fig. 141

A Warning light
B Aerial
Switch on the auxiliary heating
OFF Switch off the auxiliary heating

To switch the remote control on or off, hold the remote control vertically, with the aerial B » Fig. 141 pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the remote control if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

Display warning light A	Meaning
Lights up green for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off.
Slowly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e.g. because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 295.

CAUTION

▪ The remote control must be protected against moisture, severe shocks and direct sunlight - Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the remote control.
▪ The range of the remote control with a charged battery is a few hundred metres (depending on obstructions between the remote control and the vehicle, weather conditions, the battery condition etc.).

Online services ŠKODA Connect

Introductory information

Introduction to the subject

The online services ŠKODA Connect Already purchased factory. Retrofitting and the activation of the online services is not possible.

Fig. 142
Label in a vehicle with the Care Connect services

Fig. 143
Websites ŠKODA Connect

The online services ŠKODA Connect are an extension of the vehicle functions and infotainment and include the following services.

▶ Care Connect » page 115
▶ infotainment online » page 116

A vehicle with Care Connect services has a label on the windscreen on the driver's side » Fig. 142.

The label indicates that the **sends vehicle information regarding speed and vehicle position**, When vehicle sales or - hire the owner and the lender is obliged to the person who will sell or lend the vehicle to teach about it.

For the **Use of online services** it is necessary on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal to create a user profile and register the vehicle in this.

Current **Conditions for the use of online services** ŠKODA Connect incl. “Declaration on the protection of personal data” are the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal refer to.

Access to the ŠKODA Connect Portal, Information on the online services and applications available u. Ä., Are the ŠKODArefer Internet pages. This is carried out by reading the QR code » Fig. 143 **or** after entering the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity

CAUTION

- Some countries may not all ŠKODA Connecthis functions available. For additional information, see the following ŠKODA Internet pages.
- In some countries, some Infotainment functions ŠKODA Connect can no longer be selected when the vehicle is running faster than a certain speed. This is not a malfunction, but corresponds to the requirements of generally binding country-specific regulations.

Note

- Personal customer data are part ŠKODA AUTO collected in accordance with the requirements of the generally binding legal regulations on the protection of personal data, stored and processed.
- Some ŠKODA ConnectServices may contain links to websites or information from third parties (e.g.. Map display, information on fuel prices). ŠKODA AUTO is not a holder of such information and accepts the shown content and the accuracy of this information no responsibility.

Activation of online services

activation conditions

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ A mobile network is available (applies to vehicles with the Care Connect service).
✓ The Infotainment is connected to the Internet via a data connection » page 167 (not applicable to vehicles with the Care Connect service).
✓ The GPS signal is available.

For the **Activation of online services** is in infotainment entering a in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal generated Activation PIN code required.

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

▶ The **entry of the activation PIN code** takes place in Infotainment in the menu MENU → ⚙ → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Registration**.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

▶ The **entry of the activation PIN code** takes place in Infotainment in the menu SETUP → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Registration**.

▶ After entering the activation PIN code, complete activation in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal.

Care Connect-Services

Introduction to the subject

The Care ConnectServices enable information / breakdown / emergency, the transmission of information concerning the vehicle condition to the selected service partner or to control some vehicle functions by means of installed in the mobile phone ŠKODA Connect-Application.

To the Care ConnectTo use services, the following conditions must be met.

✓ The registration in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal has taken place.

✓ Entering the Activation PIN code for online services in infotainment is done.

✓ A wireless network is available.

Information / breakdown / emergency

Only valid for some countries.

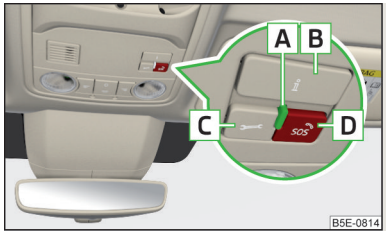


Fig. 144
Warning light and information / breakdown / emergency keys

The information / breakdown / emergency call system (hereinafter only system) is used to connect to a information / breakdown or emergency number.

After connection, communication is made with the associated control centre via the loudspeaker and microphone built into the vehicle.

The information / breakdown / emergency is free of charge.

Warning light and system keys » Fig. 144

A Warning light

B ℹ - Connection to the info number

C 🔧 C - establishment of connection to breakdown call in case of a breakdown

D SOS D - establishment of connection to emergency number » page 15

initiate connection to information / Breakdown call

› Press the button B or C » Fig. 144 (the connection can be **terminated** by pressing the button again).

information call

The information call may problems with the online services or for information regarding the products and services of the brand ŠKODA be used.

breakdown call

The breakdown call is used for quick connection to the breakdown number in the event of a breakdown.

During breakdown the vehicle transmits information related to the vehicle and the vehicle position to the road service. The solution to your problem occurs faster.

The **function of the system** is indicated once the ignition is switched on by the warning light A lighting up » Fig. 144.
▶ In functional system, the indicator will light green.
▶ If a fault, the warning light illuminates red.

infotainment online-Services

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

The infotainment onlineServices are an extension of the functions of the Internet-connected infotainment shows (e.g. To the weather forecast, the petrol station search with information regarding fuel prices u. Ä.).

To the infotainment onlineTo use services, the following conditions must be met.

✓ The registration in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal has taken place.
✓ Entering the Activation PIN code for online services in infotainment is done.
✓ The infotainment is connected via a data connection to the Internet » page 167,

main menu

Fig. 145
Main menu

To **display** the main menu, press the button MENU, then tap the function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 145

- News from the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal set RSS[1] channels
- Online search of stations with information on fuel prices » page 179
- Online search of Parklplätzen with information on free parking spaces » page 179
- Weather near the vehicle position or the route destination
- Online destination search » page 177
- Import of the destinations created in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal » page 183
- Import of the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal -generated routes » page 191
- Online updating of the navigation data (valid for the infotainment Columbus) and import of POI Categories » page 174
- Conditions for the use of online services
- Settings of online services » page 131

[1] RSS (Really Simple Syndication) - format for simple, structured and frequently changing web page content.

Infotainment

Introductory information

Important information

Introduction to the subject

WARNING

- Only use Infotainment in such a way that you have control of the vehicle in every traffic situation (e.g. Do not write text messages while driving, do not link or connect the telephone, do not work with the contact list, do not enter any destinations, do not connect WLAN or SmartLink etc.)- Otherwise there is a risk of an accident!
- Always route the connection cable of the external device such that is does not restrict you when driving.

WARNING

- Adjust the volume to ensure that acoustic signals from outside the vehicle, e.g. sirens from emergency vehicles, can be heard at all times.
- High volumes can cause hearing damage!

CAUTION

In some countries, some Infotainment functions can no longer be selected when the vehicle is running faster than a certain speed. This is not a malfunction, but complies with the national legal regulations.

Mobile phones and applications

Fig. 146
QR code with reference to web pages for checking the compatibility of devices

The availability of some of the functions described in this Owner's Manual depends on the type of device to be connected and the applications installed in it.

Mobile phones

On the ŠKODA pages, check to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile phones. This verification is carried out by reading the QR code » Fig. 146 **or** after typing the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

Due to the multitude of mobile phones as well as the ongoing development of these devices, ŠKODA AUTO cannot always ensure compatibility with Infotainment unconditionally. It is always recommended to physically check the function on the associated vehicle, including the ŠKODA Partners, beforehand.

Only those versions of the selected phones will be tested and supported which originate from the official distribution network. The same also applies to their firmware and software.

The functions of the mobile phone to be tested may differ from the same type of mobile phone depending on the specification for the respective country or the specific service.

Mobile phones with the operating system and in the version available at the time of these tests will be tested. In this regard, it could be the case that the functions of a mobile phone may differ with a different operating system version compared to the one used with the tested phone.

ŠKODA AUTO can accept no responsibility for the continuous changes made by the mobile phone manufacturers and application vendors.

ŠKODA AUTO does not accept any liability for any damage to Infotainment or vehicle due to the use of incorrect or illegal applications or the improper or unauthorised use of mobile phones.

Applications

Applications can be installed in external devices (e.g. Mobile, tablet) making it possible to display additional information on the Infotainment screen or to operate Infotainment.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work in all external devices. ŠKODA AUTO can accept no liability for their proper function.

Applications, their use and the required data connection may be chargeable. ▸

The range of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the Infotainment model, vehicle and region.

The function of mobile applications can be influenced by the quality of the Internet connection.

Some applications are dependent on the availability of services that are provided by third parties.

Infotainment Overview

Description - Infotainment Columbus

Fig. 147 **Infotainment Columbus**

- Switches Infotainment on/off
- 1 MENU - Overview of Infotainment menus » page 123
- 2 HOME - Display of the main screen “HOME” » page 124
- Volume up
- Volume down
- 3 Touchscreen » page 120

Description - Infotainment Amundsen

Fig. 148 **Infotainment Amundsen**

- Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
- Control dial for calls and confirmations
- 1 RADIO -*Radio* menu » page 139
- 2 MEDIA -*Media* menu » page 142
- 3 PHONE -*Telephone* menu » page 154
- 4 VOICE - Voice control » page 125
- 5 NAV - *Navigation* menu » page 173
- 6 APP - SmartLink menu » page 168
- 7 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 196
- 8 MENU - Overview of Infotainment menus » page 123
- 9 Touchscreen » page 120

Description - Infotainment Bolero

Fig. 149 **Infotainment Bolero**

- Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
- Control dial for calls and confirmations

1 RADIO -*Radio* menu » page 139
2 MEDIA -*Media* menu » page 142
3 PHONE -*Telephone* menu » page 154
4 VOICE - Voice control » page 125
5 SETUP - Infotainment settings » page 128
6 APP - SmartLink menu » page 168
7 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 196
8 MENU - Overview of Infotainment menus » page 123
9 Touchscreen » page 120

Description - Infotainment Swing

Fig. 150 **Infotainment Swing**

- Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
- Control dial for calls and confirmations

1 RADIO -*Radio* menu » page 139
2 MEDIA -*Media* menu » page 142
3 Depending on equipment fitted:
  - PHONE -*Telephone* menu » page 154
  - MUTE - Muting
4 SETUP - Infotainment settings » page 136
5 Depending on equipment fitted:
  - APP/ - menu SmartLink (Press) / turn on / off the voice control function SmartLink (hold) » page 168
  - SOUND - Sound settings » page 136
6 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 196
7 Touchscreen » page 120
8 SD card slot » page 146

External module

Does not apply to Infotainment Swing.

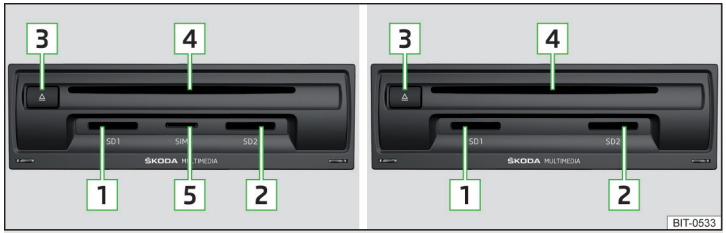


Fig. 151 **External Module: Infotainment Columbus with SIM card slot / Infotainment Columbus without a SIM card slot**

Fig. 152 **External Module: Infotainment Bolero / Infotainment Amundsen**

The external module is located in the storage compartment on the front passenger side.

1 SD1 card slot
2 SD2 card slot
3 ⏏ - CD / DVD eject button
4 CD / DVD slot
5 SIM card slot

Touch screen

Infotainment is equipped with a touch screen which can be operated with a **light touch** or swipe of a finger.

The brightness level of the screen can be set » page 129.

CAUTION

- It is not possible to operate the screen with your fingernails or while wearing gloves.
- To protect the screen, you can use a suitable screen protector for touch pads that does not affect its functionality.
- Dirt can be removed from the screen by using a soft cloth and, if necessary, methylated spirits.

Infotainment operation

Infotainment operation

Operation principles and screen areas

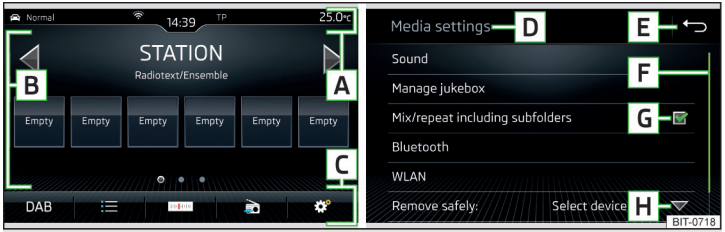


Fig. 153 **Screen area / screen display**

Description of the display » Fig. 153

A Status line with time and outdoor temperature data and other information
B Information and the operation of the current menu
C Function surfaces of the current menu
D Identification of the current menu
E Return to the higher-level menu
F Sliding regulator
G Menu item with “Checkbox”
- ☑ - Function is switched on
- ☐ - Function is switched off

H ▼ Open a sub menu of the menu item with the “pop-up window”

Functional surfaces
The screen areas which confirm a function or a menu are called “**function surfaces**”.
- **White text** - the surface is active and thus selectable
- **Grey text** - the surface is inactive and therefore not selectable
- **Green frame** - currently selected surface

Selecting menu/menu item/function
- Drag your finger over the screen in the required direction.
- By moving your finger over the slider
- Turning the knob ⊙ (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus).

Confirming menu/menu item/function
- By tapping on the function surface.
- By pressing the knob ⊙ (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus).

Returning to the higher-level menu
- By tapping on the function surface ⮌.
- By tapping on the screen outside of the “pop-up window”.
- By pressing the corresponding button next to the screen (e.g. in the *Media* menu, by pressing the MEDIA button) (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus).

Selecting the menu item/function value
- ⦿ - Selected menu item / function value
- ○ - Deselected menu item / function value

Set value
- By tapping on the function surface ◁ or ▷ the bottom of the screen.
- By touching or moving your finger over the scale.
- Turning the knob ⊙ (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus).

Note
Depending on the equipment fitted, Infotainment can be operated using the buttons on the right-hand operating lever or on the multifunction steering wheel. Further information » page 44.

Operating the menus

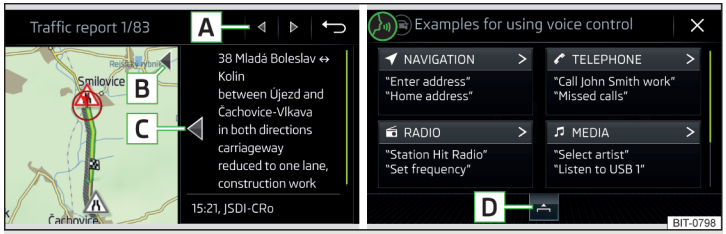


Fig. 154 **Operating the menus**

Operating the menus » Fig. 154

- A Browse the menu- List entries
- B Enlargement/reduction of the menu window (applies to the infotainment Columbus)
- C Enlargement/reduction of the menu window (applies to the infotainment Amundsen, Bolero, Swing)
- D Open / close the menu window
- ✕ Close the menu window

Alphanumeric keyboard

Fig. 155
Example of the keyboard display

The alphanumeric keypad is used to enter for letters, numbers and characters.

Description of the alphanumeric keyboard » Fig. 155

- A Input line
- B Context-dependent:
  - ⇧/⇧ - Toggle upper case to lower case and vice versa
  - §&# - Switch to special characters
  - 123 - Switch to numbers
- C Context-dependent:
  - 123 - Switch to numbers
  - ABC - Switch to Latin letters
  - АБВ - Switch to Cyrillic letters
- ⋮≡ - Display of visited entries (the number of visited entries is displayed in the function surface)
- ⌫ Erase the entered characters
- ◿ By holding the variants of each type are displayed.
- 🌐 / 🌍 Switch between keyboards with specific characters of the selected languages » page 129 or » page 137
- ⎵ Enters a blank
- < Move the cursor within the input line to the left
- > Move the cursor within the input line to the right
- OK Confirmation of the entered number

Search
While entering characters, a search is made for corresponding entries.

The entry such as a telephone contact to be searched for must be entered along with the special characters (diacritics).

By tapping on the function surface ⋮≡ a list of matching entries opens.

Switching Infotainment on/off

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.
› To **switch on** Infotainment, press ⏻.
› To **switch off** Infotainment, hold ⏻.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero, Swing
› To **switch on/off** Infotainment, press ⏻.

Automatic switch-on of Infotainment
If Infotainment was not turned off with ⏻ before the ignition was turned off, it will automatically switch on when the ignition is switched on.

Automatic switch-off of Infotainment
If the vehicle key is pulled out of the ignition lock while Infotainment is switched on, Infotainment will switch off automatically.

If the vehicle is fitted with the starter button, Infotainment will switch off automatically after the engine is switched off and the door is opened.

With the ignition off, Infotainment will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

Infotainment turns off automatically under certain circumstances. Infotainment informs of this via a text message on the Infotainment display.

Restart of Infotainment
If Infotainment stops responding (if it "freezes"), it can be restarted by pressing and holding ⏻ for longer than 10 s.

Show time and date in standby mode

With the ignition off and infotainment (standbyMode), it is possible to display the time and date in the Infotainment screen.

The display mode can be changed by finger motion across the screen sideways.

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero
▶ To switch the time and date display on/off, press the MENU button, then tap the function surface ⚙ → **Screen** → **Show clock in standby mode**.

Applies to Infotainment Swing
▶ To switch the time and date display on/off, press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Screen** → **Show clock in standby mode**.

Adjusting the volume

Every change in volume is displayed on the screen.

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.
› To **increase the volume**, tap the function surface 🔊.
› To **decrease the volume**, tap the function surface 🔉.
› To **mute**, hold the function surface 🔉 and set the audio volume to 0.
› **or:** Press ⏻.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero, Swing
› To **increase the volume**, turn the controller ⏻ clockwise.
› To **decrease the volume**, turn the controller ⏻ anticlockwise.
› To **mute**, turn the controller ⏻ anticlockwise to 0.
› **or:** Press the MUTE button (applies to Infotainment Swing).

The following symbol appears on the screen when the sound is muted 🔇.

If, at the time of muting, sound is played from the source in the *Media* menu, then the playback is interrupted (pause)[1].

CAUTION
- High volumes can cause sound resonance in the vehicle.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.

Infotainment menus

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

Fig. 156
Infotainment Columbus: Overview of Infotainment menus

[1] Does not apply for AUX.

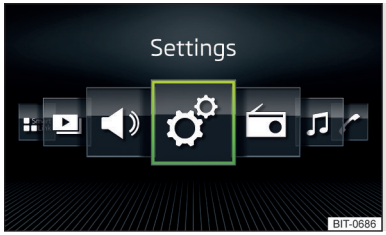


Fig. 157
Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero: Overview of Infotainment menus

› To **display the overview of Infotainment menus**, press the MENU button.

Overview of Infotainment menus » Fig. 156 or » Fig. 157

- *Radio* menu » page 139
- *Media* menu » page 142
- Online services » page 114
- *SmartLink* menu » page 168
  With an established connection to an external device, the actual connection is shown instead of a symbol
  - **-Android Auto** » page 169
  - **- Apple CarPlay** » page 170
  - MirrorLink - **MirrorLink®** » page 171
- *Telephone* menu » page 154
- Vehicle system settings » page 196
- *Navigation* menu » page 173 (Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- List of traffic reports (TMC) » page 194 (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- *Media Command* menu » page 152 (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- *Images* menu » page 149
- Sound settings » page 128
- Infotainment settings » page 128

Main screen “HOME”

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

Fig. 158
HOME main screen

› To display, press the HOME button.

The “HOME” main screen contains three windows.

In the left window » Fig. 158 the navigation map is always displayed. By tapping the screen within this window, the *Navigation* main menu is displayed.

The contents of the window to the right can be changed. By holding the function surface A, the list of selectable menus is displayed.

By tapping the function surface A or by double-finger tapping on the screen within each window, the appropriate main menu is displayed.

If there are other pages in the window, then the associated symbols are displayed in area B. By moving your finger across the screen within each window, it is possible to display these pages.

Configuration wizard

Fig. 159
Configuration wizard: Display example

The configuration wizard is **automatically displayed** if there are at least two non-selected menu items after turning on Infotainment, or if a new personalisation user account has been selected.

Deactivate the automatic display of the Configuration wizard by tapping the function surface **Don´t show again**.

› For **manual display** in Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero, press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **Configuration wizard**.
› For **manual display** in Infotainment Swing, press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Configuration wizard**.

The Configuration wizard allows you to set the following menu items in sequence.

- Identification of personalisation user account » page 50
- Time and date format
- Storing the radio stations with the currently strongest reception signal in the first memory group of each individual broadcast area
- Pairing and connecting a phone to Infotainment
- Home address (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- Setting the online services ŠKODA Connect

The selected menu item is marked with the ✓ symbol.

Menu items which can be set by tapping on the respective function surface in the A » Fig. 159 area.

Operating using an application in the external device

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

Some Infotainment functions can be operated using an application in the supported external device.

› Activate data transfer in Infotainment. To do this, press MENU and then Tap → **Mobile device data transfer** → **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA Apps**.
› Release Infotainment operation using the application. To do this, press MENU and then Tap → **Mobile device data transfer** → **Operation via apps:** → **Confirm/Allow**.
› Connect Infotainment to an external device via WLAN» page 166.
› In the external device, install an application for Infotainment operation (e.g. Start ŠKODA Media Command).

Note

The description of Infotainment operation ŠKODA Media Command is part of the application.

Voice control

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

The navigation, telephone, radio and media menu can be operated by voice commands.

The voice control system can be used either by the driver or by the front passenger.

Function requirements for voice control

✓ Infotainment is switched on.
✓ There will be no telephone call using a phone connected to Infotainment.
✓ The parking aid is not active.

Requirements for optimum voice command recognition

▶ The voice commands must only be issued when the symbol is displayed on the Infotainment screen and the input tone has completely faded.
▶ Speak at your normal volume without intonation and long pauses.
▶ Avoid bad pronunciation.
▶ Close the doors and windows in order to avoid disturbing environmental influences on the function of the voice commands.
▶ You are recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the sound of your voice is not drowned out by the increased ambient noise.
▶ During voice control, limit additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.

WARNING

The emergency number should be dialled manually. Your voice commands may not be recognised in such situations. The telephone connection may not be established or the connection may take too much time to complete.

CAUTION

- The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.
- For some Infotainment languages, there is no voice control available. Infotainment indicates this fact through a text message that is displayed on the screen after setting the Infotainment language.

Note

During voice control, no nav. announcements and traffic announcements are played.

Voice control on / off

Fig. 160
Voice control: Main menu

Switching on

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel **or** the VOICE button on the Infotainment (does not apply to Infotainment Columbus).

The **main menu** is displayed » Fig. 160.

Switching off

› Press the button twice on the multifunction steering wheel **or** press the VOICE button twice on the Infotainment (does not apply to Infotainment Columbus).

› **or** Issue the voice command **"End voice control"**.

Operation principle

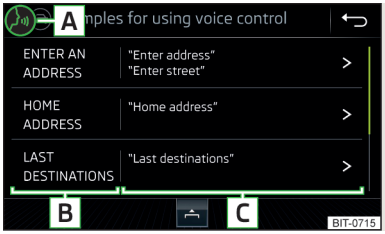


Fig. 161
Example of screen display

In the voice control main menu » Fig. 160 *on page 126* There are basic voice commands for the individual menus.

Other voice commands are displayed by tapping the respective function surface, if required, by issuing the name of respective command (e.g. navigation). The display shows the following » Fig. 161.

A Context-dependent:

- The system is waiting for a voice command
- The system is recognises a voice command
- The system plays a message
- Voice command entry was stopped

B Available list entries

C Possible voice commands

> Display other possible voice commands

Voice commands that can be issued, are indicated in "quotation marks".

Note

The display of the voice control symbols A » Fig. 161 are dependent of the equipment fitted also on the display of the instrument cluster.

Voice commands

Enter

The voice commands must only be issued when the symbol is displayed on the Infotainment screen and the input tone has completely faded. The input tone can be switched on / off. To do this, press MENU and then Tap → **Voice control**.

It is not necessary to wait for the end of message playback when Infotainment is playing a message. The Infotainment message can be acknowledged by pressing the VOICE button (does not apply to Infotainment Columbus) or the button on the multifunction steering wheel. Then a voice command can be issued. The voice control is hereby much faster.

Stop

This allows for more time for input of the voice command (e.g. in the list of visited contacts).

The process for the voice command input can be stopped by moving a finger up/down across the screen or by turning the controller (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus).

When stopping, the symbol changes from to .

Restore

The procedure for voice command input can be restarted in one of the following ways.

- By tapping on the function surface .
- By pressing the VOICE button on the Infotainment (does not apply to Infotainment Columbus).
- By pressing the key on the multifunction steering wheel.

Not recognising a voice command

If a voice command is not detected three times in succession from Infotainment, then the voice control is stopped.

Correction of a voice command input

A voice command can be corrected, modified or re-entered by pressing the VOICE button (does not apply to Infotainment Columbus) or the button on the multifunction steering wheel. However, this is only possible as long as the symbol appears on the screen.

You do not have to wait until the voice command is recognised by Infotainment.

Voice commands can be used anytime during voice control

Voice command	Operation
“Back”	Return to the previous menu
“Help”	reproducing and displaying possible voice commands

Voice commands that can be used while browsing the list entries

Voice command	Operation
“Next page”	Browse menu / list / directory
“Previous page”	
“First page”	
“Last page”	

Additional Information

Navigation - applies to Infotainment Columbus

If the set Infotainment language matches with the language of the currently selected country when entering the destination, then the destination address is entered **in one step**.

The voice command **“Navigate”** and immediately the city, street and street number (if it is included in the navigation data) Interest (POI) or a contact with the previously stored address, can be issued.

Navigation - applies to Infotainment Amundsen

To the destination, you are first required to issue the command**“enter address”** and then follow Infotainment instructions.

You can say the house number and a further additional address in the form of a number where necessary. Infotainment will then offer the number combination it has found if the house number and the further address supplement, where appropriate, exists in the street entered.

It is not necessary to spell city and street names if the entered destination is located in a country that has no voice control available for the language.

Navigation - activated online services

When the ŠKODA Connect » page 114 online services are activated, it is also possible to run a POI search online by giving the voice command **“Search online POI”**.

Radio
In order for a radio station can be selected using voice command, the station must be stored in the list of available stations » page 140 or in the preset list » page 141.

Updating the Infotainment software

Fig. 162
Available software updates on the ŠKODA websites

The software update ensures optimum operation of Infotainment (e.g. Compatibility with new phones).

Current information on Infotainment compatibility can be found on the following ŠKODA Internet pages. This is carried out by reading the QR code » Fig. 162 **or** after entering the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero
- To **determine the software version**, press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **System information**.
- To **start the software update**, press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **System information** → **Update software**.

Applies to Infotainment Swing
- To **determine the software version**, press the SETUP button, then tap on the **System information** function surface.
- To **start the software update**, press the SETUP button, then tap on the **System information** → **Update software** function surface.

Infotainment settings - Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Infotainment system settings

sound settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface .

- **Volume** - Volume settings
  - **Traffic reports** - Volume setting for traffic reports (TP)
  - **Navigation announcements** - Volume setting for navigation announcements
  - **Voice control** - volume setting for voice output
  - **Maximum switch-on volume** - Setting the maximum volume when switching on Infotainment
  - **Speed-dependent volume adjustment** - increases the volume as speed increases
  - **AUX volume**- Sets the volume for the device connected through AUX
    - **Quiet** - Low volume
    - **Medium** - Medium volume
    - **Loud** - High volume
  - **Bluetooth audio:**- Volume setting of the device connected via Bluetooth ® audio profile
  - **Entertainment fading while parking** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) with activated parking aid
  - **Entertainment fading (nav. announce.)** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) in the event of a nav. announcements
- **Bass - Mid - Treble** - Setting the equalizer
- **Balance - Fader** - Sets the balance between left and right, front and rear
- **CANTON Equaliser** - Setting the equaliser
  - **Individual**- Adjustment of treble, mid and bass
  - **Profile** - Setting of the profile (e.g. **Rock**, **Classical** and so on.)
- **CANTON optimisation** -Setting the optimum room sound perception
  - **All** - Setting optimised for the whole vehicle interior
  - **Front** - Setting optimised for the front seats
  - **Driver** - Setting optimised for the driver
- **CANTON surround** - Setting the surround sound level (“-9 ”Stereo / “+9”full surround)
- **Subwoofer** - Subwoofer volume settings
- **Sound focus** -Setting the optimum room sound perception
  - **All** - Setting optimised for the whole vehicle interior
  - **Driver** - Setting optimised for the driver

- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen
- **No navigation sound during call** - Switching on / off the nav. announcements during a telephone call (not applicable to Infotainment Bolero)

Display settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **Screen**.

- **Switch off screen (in 10 seconds)** - Enable / disable the automatic power off function
- **Brightness:** - Adjusts the brightness of the screen
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen
- **Menu button tone** - Turn on / off the acoustic signal by pressing a button next to the screen
- **Animation when finger near screen** - Turn the proximity sensors on/off (When the function is on, e.g.*Navigation* will be shown in the main menu when moving a finger towards the bottom bar with the function surfaces on the screen)
- **Show clock in standby mode** - Time and date displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched on and Infotainment is switched off

Time and date settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **Time and date**.

- **Clock time source:** - Setting the time source: Manual / GPS (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- **Time:** - Time settings
- **Summer time** - Switches the summer time on/off
- **Automatic summertime** - Turn on / off the automatic switch to daylight saving time
- **Time zone:** - Choice of time zone
- **Time format:** - Specify the time format
- **Date:** - Date settings
- **Date format:** - Setting the date format

Setting the Infotainment language

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **Language**.
› Select the Infotainment language.

In some languages, after selecting the function surface**Female** and **Male** are displayed for the choice of voice prompts for Infotainment.

Note

- When a language is selected which does not support voice control, Infotainment will indicate this with a message on the screen.
- The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

Additional keypad language settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **Additional keypad languages**.

In this menu, a keyboard language set can be added to allow the entering of characters other than those in the currently selected language (function surface or).

Unit settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **Units**.

- **Distance:** - Distance units
- **Speed:** - Speed units
- **Temperature:** - Temperature units
- **Volume:** - Volume units
- **Consumption:** - Consumption units
- **CNG consump.:** - CNG consumption units
- **Pressure:** - Pressure units for tire pressure

Setting data transfer

An active data transfer allows data transfer between Infotainment and the external device (e.g. ŠKODA One App application) or the operation of some Infotainment functions using the application of the external device (e.g. ŠKODA Media Command).

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **Mobile device data transfer**.

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**- Turning data transfer on and off
- **Use apps to operate::** - Setting Infotainment operation via the applications of the external device (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
  - **Deactivate** - Deactivation of Infotainment operation via an external device
  - **Confirm** - Infotainment operation with required confirmation
  - **Allow** - Infotainment operation without required confirmation

Voice control settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Voice control**.

- **Example commands (infotainment system)** - Turn on/off display of the menu containing basic voice commands when voice control is activated
- **Voice control session start tone** - Switch on/off the audible signal when turning on the voice control
- **Voice control session end tone** - Switch on/off the audible signal when voice control ends
- **Input tone in voice dialogue** - Switch on/off the audible signal for the voice input
- **End tone in voice dialogue** - Switch on/off the audible signal for the voice input

Safe removal of the external device

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Remove safely** and select the external device to be removed.

Reset to factory settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Factory settings**.

In this menu, all or only chosen settings can be restored.

Bluetooth® Settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Bluetooth**.

- **Bluetooth** - Switch on/off Bluetooth® function
- **Visibility:** - Switch on/off the visibility of the Bluetooth® device for Bluetooth® devices
- **Name:** - Changing the name of the Bluetooth® unit
- **Paired devices** - Display the list of coupled Bluetooth ® devices
- **Find devices** - Searches for available Bluetooth® devices
- **Bluetooth audio (A2DP/AVRCP)** - Turn on/off the ability to connect a Bluetooth® audio device (e.g. MP3 player, tablet etc...)

Wireless settings

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **WLAN**.

- **WLAN** - List of available hotspots of external devices
  - **WLAN** - Turn on / off Infotainment wireless
  - **WPS quick connection (WPS button)** - Establishing a secure connection to the hotspot of the external device using WPS (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
  - **Manual settings** - Setting the parameters for search and connection to the hotspot of the external device
    - **Network name** - Enter the Hotspot name
    - **Network key** - Setting the access password
    - **Security level:** - Sets the security
      - **WPA2** - WPA2 security
      - **No security level** - No security (without required entry of the access password)
    - **Connect** - Connection establishment
  - **Search** - Search / Restore the list of available hotspots
- **Mobile hotspot** - Setting Infotainment hotspot (in the function surface the symbol ⚙ displayed with the number of connected external devices)
  - **Mobile hotspot** - Switching on / off Infotainment hotspot
  - **WPS quick connection (WPS button)** - Establishing a secure connection to the Infotainment hotspot via WPS (applies to Amundsen)
  - **Hotspot (WLAN) settings** - Setting the parameters for the connection to Infotainment hotspot
    - **Security level:** - Setting the connection security
      - **WPA2** - WPA2 security
      - **No security level** - No security (without required entry of the access password)
    - **Network key** - Entering the access password
    - **SSID: ...** - Name of the Infotainment hotspot
    - **Do not send network name (SSID)** -Turn Infotainment hotspot visibility on/off
    - **Store** - Storage of Infotainment hotspot parameters

Settings

Applies to the infotainment Columbus with seated in the external module SIM card as well as for the Infotainment Amundsen with the connected Carstick-Device.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Network**.

- **Network settings** - Setting of the data connection from the associated telephone service provider (APN settings)
  - **Access point name: ...** - Setting of the access point name
  - **User name: ...** - Setting of user name
  - **Password: ...** - Password setting
  - **Authentication** - Setting for the type of verification
    - **Normal** - Without verification
    - **Safe** - Verification required
  - **Reset Access Point (APN)** - Delete the parameters for the network setting
  - **Store** - Storage of the parameters for the network setting
- **Network provider: ...** - Selection of network provider (the menu item is visible when the SIM card is inserted in the external module)
- **Data roaming** - Enable / disable the use of data roaming connection
- **Current connection details** - Display of information on data downloaded (by tapping the function button **Reset** the data information is deleted)
- **Data connection:** - Usage settings for the data connection (Internet connection) of the SIM card inserted in the external module
  - **Off** - Use of the data connection is not possible
  - **Ask** - Use of the data connection is only possible after it has been confirmed
  - **On** - Use of the data connection is possible at any time

Settings of online services ŠKODA Connect

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** or press the MENU button, then the function surface → .

- **network** - Settings of the data connection of the telephone service provider (not applicable to the infotainment Bolero) » page 130, *Settings*
- **WIRELESS INTERNET ACCESS** - WLAN settings of the Infotainment system (does not apply to the infotainment Bolero) » page 130, *Wireless settings*
- **Services Management** - Information on licensing of the respective online services and the option to switch them on / off
- **registration** - Enter the activation PIN code for online services (in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal receive)

System information

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **System information**.

The information available will be displayed, for example regarding the Infotainment hardware and software, navigation database version, Bluetooth® software version, etc.

› For a **software update**, tap the **Update software** function surface.

The information on available software updates is obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Radio menu settings

Settings for all broadcasting areas

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu .

- **Sound** - sound settings
- **Scan** - Automatic play short portions of all available stations in the current frequency range
- **Arrow buttons:** - Setting the function of the function surfaces ◁ ▷
  - **Preset list** - Change between stations stored under the preset buttons
  - **Station list** - Change between all available stations of the selected broadcasting range
- **Traffic programme (TP)** - Switches TP traffic programme on/off
- **Delete presets** - Deletes the preset buttons
- **Station logos** - Manual management of station logos
- **Radio text** - Switching the text display radio (FM and DAB) on and off
- **Advanced settings** - Other settings that are different depending on the selected broadcasting range (FM and DAB)

Advanced settings (FM)

› Select the FM band in the *Radio* main menu and tap on the function surface → **Advanced settings**.

- **Auto-save station logos**- Automatic storage of the station logos
- **Region for station logo:** - Setting the region for station logos
- **Automatic frequency control (AF)** - Search for alternative frequencies of the station currently being played to on/off
- **Radio Data System (RDS)** - enable/disable RDS function (receiving additional information from the station)

- **RDS Regional:** - Switch on/off the automatic tracking of related regional stations
  - **Fixed** - Maintains the selected regional station continuously. When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
  - **Automatic** - Auto-selects the station with the best reception at the moment. If you lose reception in the given the region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Advanced Settings (DAB)

› In the *Radio* main menu, select the DAB range and tap on the function surface → **Advanced settings**.

- **Auto-save station logos**- Automatic storage of the station logos
- **DAB traffic messages** - Switch on/off DAB traffic messages
- **Other DAB messages** - Switch on/off other announcements (e.g., warnings, regional weather, sports reports, financial news)
- **DAB - DAB station tracking** - Switch on/off automatic DAB station tracking on another frequency or in other station groups
- **Automatic DAB - FM switching** - Switch on/off auto-switching from DAB to the FM broadcasting range if the DAB signal is lost
- **Switch to a similar station** - Activate/deactivate automatic switching to another station with similar content in the event of signal loss (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **L-band** - Activate/deactivate the availability of the L-band

Automatic change from DAB to FM
In the event of bad DAB reception, the device tries to find an FM station.

The station name is followed by (**FM**) while the station is being received on the FM band. When the corresponding DAB station is received again, the system automatically switches from FM to DAB.

If a DAB station is also not available in the FM band due to poor reception, Infotainment will be switched to mute.

L-band
For the DAB radio reception in different countries, different broadcasting ranges are used. In some countries the DAB radio reception is only possible in the what is known as the L-band.

If no L-band DAB radio reception is possible in the country then we recommend turning off the L-band. The channel scan is therefore faster.

Media menu settings

› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu .

- **Sound** - sound settings
- **Manage jukebox** - Managing (record / delete) supported files (audio / video) in the internal Infotainment memory (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **Mix/repeat including subfolders** - Switching the title display including subfolders
- **Bluetooth** - Settings for the Bluetooth® function
- **WLAN** - Wi-Fi settings (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- **Video (DVD) settings** - Setting the parameters of the DVD video (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **Remove safely:** - Safe removal of the external device
- **Traffic programme (TP)** - Switches traffic programme on/off

Image menu settings

› In the *Images* main menu, tap on the function surface .

- **Image view:** - Setting the image display
  - **Full** - Display the maximum image size while retaining the aspect ratio
  - **Automatic** - Full screen display
- **Display time:**- Set the display time for the slideshow
- **Repeat slideshow** - Switching on/off the slideshow repeat

Video DVD menu settings

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

› In the *Video DVD* main menu, tap on the function surface .

Depending on the DVD, some of the following menu items are displayed.

- **Format**- Set the screen width/height ratio
- **Audio channel:** - Audio channel selection
- **Subtitles:** - Selecting subtitles
- **Enter/change PIN for parental settings** - Management of the PIN code for parental control
- **Parental settings:** - Parental settings selection

Settings

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface .

- **Hands-free telephone** - Switching a call to the phone/back to Infotainment (the menu item is displayed during a call)
- **Select telephone** - Search for available telephones/list of paired telephones/select telephone
- **Bluetooth** - Bluetooth® settings
- **User profile** - user profile settings
  - **Manage favourites** - set the function surfaces for your favourite contacts
  - **Mailbox number:** - Enter the phone number of the mailbox
  - **Network selection:** - Select the service provider of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Priority:** - Select the phone service priority of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
    - **Automatic** - Depending on the telephone service provider
    - **Telephone call** - Telephone calls are preferred
    - **Data transfer** - A data connection is preferred
  - **Sort by:** - Arrangement of the phone contact list
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
    - **Name** - sort by contact first name
  - **Profile Name:** - Rename the profile of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Import contacts:** - Import phone contacts
  - **Select device contacts** - Open the paired phones menu (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module - if the SIM card is inserted in the external module)
  - **Select ring tone** - Select the ring tone (depending on the connected phone)
  - **Reminder: remember your mobile phone** -Turn on/off the warning about leaving the phone in the vehicle (as long as the phone was connected to the Infotainment)
  - **Show pictures for contacts** - Switch on/off the display of the image assigned to the contact
- **Conference call** - Activates/deactivates conference calls
- **Call settings:** - Setting the phone functions of the SIM card inserted in the external module during a call (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Hold call:**- Switch on/off the display of the option for answering an incoming call during a call, determining the current divert setting
    - **On** - Turn on the display
    - **Off** - Turn off the display
    - **Request status** - Check the settings of the SIM card function
  - **Send own number:** - Setting the phone number display for the call recipient
    - **On** - Turn on the display
    - **Off** - Turn off the display
    - **Network dependent** - Display depending the telephone service provider
    - **Request status** - Check the settings of the SIM card function
- **Delete calls:** - Delete the chosen call type that took place using the SIM card inserted in the external module during a call (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **All** - Delete all calls
  - **Missed calls** - Delete list of missed calls
  - **Dialled numbers** - Delete the outgoing calls
  - **Received calls** - Delete list of received calls
- **Text message settings:** - Setting the text messages of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Standard account** - Setting for the use of text messages on the SIM card or the connected telephone
    - **No standard account** - Without priority (selection of the SIM card or the connected telephone required)
    - **SIM** - A list of text messages on the SIM card
    - **MAP** - A list of text messages of the connected telephone
  - **Service centre number:** - Setting the number of SMS services of the telephone service provider
  - **Store sent text messages** - Enable / disable the storage of the text message on the SIM card
  - **Period of validity:** - Adjustment of the period in which the telephone service provider will try to send the text message (for example, when the recipient is not available or Infotainment is switched off.)
  - **Delete text message** - Delete the data stored on the SIM card text messages
    - **All** - Delete all text messages
    - **Inbox** - Delete the text messages received

- **Outbox** - Delete draft text messages
- **Sent** - Delete sent text messages

- **Telephone interface "Business"** - Turn on / off the phone function of the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
- **Use SIM card only for data connection** - **Switch on** - Activating only the data services / **Switch off** - Activating the data and telephone services of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
- **Network:** - Setting the phone network provider of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module) » page 130
- **PIN settings:** - Setting the PIN code of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Automatic PIN entry** - Activate/deactivate storage of the SIM card PIN code
  - **Change PIN** - Change the PIN code of the SIM card
  - **Add PIN 2** - Enter the second PIN code of the SIM card (when the function **Automatic PIN entry** is on or when the SIM card supports another telephone service provider)
- **Forward calls** - Setting forwarding of incoming calls (valid for Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **All calls** - Forward all incoming calls
  - **If engaged** - Forwarding incoming calls during a telephone call
  - **Unavailable** - Forwarding the incoming calls when the vehicle is outside the range of the telephone service provider signal
  - **If no answer** - Redirecting incoming calls when the incoming call is not answered

SmartLink menu settings

› In the *SmartLink* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙.

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**- Turning data transfer on and off for ŠKODA applications
- *MirrorLink®* - Settings of the system MirrorLink®
  - **Screen orientation:** - Setting the screen orientation
    - **Landscape** - Width display
    - **Portrait** - Height display
  - **Rotated 180 degrees** - Turn on / off the 180 ° inversion
  - **Allow MirrorLink® notification to be shown** - Turn on / off the display of messages of Mirror link® applications on the Infotainment screen

Navigation menu settings

Route options

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface ⚙ Tap on→ **route options** .

- **Suggest 3 alternative routes** - Switch on/off the menu for alternative routes (economical, fast, short)
- **Route:**- Setting the preferred route
- **Freq. Routes** - Show/hide the menu of the most frequent routes in the additional window
- **Dynamic route** - Switch on/off dynamic route recalculation due to TMC traffic reports
- **Avoid motorways** - Switch on/off the non-use of motorways in the route calculation
- **Avoid ferries and motorail trains** - Switch on/off the non-use of ferries and motorail trains in the route calculation
- **Avoid toll roads** - Switch on/off use of toll roads for route calculation
- **Avoid tunnels** - Switch on/off use of tunnels for route calculation
- **Avoid routes requiring toll stickers** - Switch use of routes requiring toll stickers on/off for route calculation
- **Show available toll stickers** - Selection of countries for which a valid toll sticker is required (routes requiring toll stickers are used for route calculation)
- **Include trailer** - Turn on / off the setting to take a trailer into account for route calculation » page 188

Map

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface ⚙ Tap on→ **Map** .

- **Show road signs** - Switch on/off the display of traffic signs
- **Lane guidance** - Display of lane guidance on/off

- **Google Earth™ settings** - Enable / disable the display of special destinations in the map Google Earth™
  - **Information on POIs** - Enable / disable the display of information on POIs
  - **Information on businesses** - Enable / disable the display of information on businesses
  - **Wikipedia information** - Turn on / off the display of the Wikipedia information
- **Show favourites** - Switch on/off the display of favourites
- **Show POIs** - Switch on/off the display of POIs
  - **Select categories for POIs** - Selection of the displayed category POIs
  - **Show brand logos for POIs** - Switch on/off the company logos available for the POIs shown
- **Traffic flow settings** - Setting the display of a traffic obstruction received from online traffic
  - **Display free-moving traffic** - Enable / disable the display of routes with free-moving transport
  - **See jam** - Enable / disable the display of routes with heavy traffic
  - **Display traffic disruptions** - Enable / disable the display of routes with a traffic incident

Manage memory

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface ⚙ → **Manage memory**.

- **Sort Contacts:** - Setting the arrangement of the phonebook
  - **By surname** - Sorting by the contact surname
  - **By first name** - Sorting by the contact first name
- **Define home address** - Enter the home address
- **Delete My POIs** - Deleting own POI categories (Personal POI)
- **Update "My POIs" (SD/USB)** - Import / update your own POI categories (Personal POI)
- **Retrieve "My POIs" (online)** - Online import / update of the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal started own POI categories
- **Import destinations (SD/USB)** - Import destinations in vCard format
- **Delete user data** - Delete user data (by pressing the function surface**Delete** and confirm the deletion)
  - **Last destinations** - Delete the last destinations
  - **Dest. memory** - Delete the stored destinations
  - **Online dests** - Delete the stored online dests
  - **Routes** - Delete saved routes
  - **My points of interest (Personal POI)** - Delete the custom POIs
  - **Entered cities** - Delete the history of places already entered via the address
  - **Home address** - Delete the stored home address
  - **Flagged destination** - Delete the flagged destination
  - **Waypoints** - Delete item in the **Waypoint mode** menu (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
  - **Freq. Routes** - Delete the most travelled routes

Navigation announcements

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface ⚙ → **Nav. announcements** .

- **Volume** - Volume control of the nav. announcements
- **Entertainment fading (nav. announce.)** - Setting the fading of the audio volume (e.g. radio volume.) with nav. announcements
- **Nav. announcements:** - Setting the playback method of nav. announcements
  - **Comprehensive** - All nav. announcements
  - **Brief** - Short nav. announcements
  - **Congestion only** - Only nav. announcements when a route is changed
- **No navigation sound during call** - Activate/ deactivate non-playback of nav. announcements during a telephone call
- **Note: "My POIs"** - Turn on/off an audible indication when approaching a custom POI (if supported by the imported custom POI) (applies to Infotainment Columbus)

Top speeds

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface ⚙ → **Maximum speeds**.

The maximum speed limits for the current country are displayed.

With the function switched on **Note: national border crossed**» page 136, *Advanced settings* display the country-specific speed limits when crossing international borders.

Fuel options

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface ⚙ → **Fuel options** .

- **Select preferred fuel station** - Select your preferred fuel station brand (the selected station brand will be displayed in the first three positions of the list)
- **Fuel warning** -Turn on- / Off the display of a warning message with the option to visit the nearest petrol station when the fuel level reaches the reserve area

Version information

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface Tap→ **Version information** .

A list of countries is displayed that exist for the navigation data, together with the date of the last update.

An update of the navigation data can be carried out by tapping the function surface **Update (SD/USB)** or **Update (online)**.

The information on updating the navigation data is to be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or on the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Advanced settings

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Advanced settings**.

- **Time display:**- Select the time display in the status line
  - - Estimated arrival time at destination
  - - Estimated travelling time to the destination
- **Status line:**- Selection of the target type, for which the status line, the route and travel time are displayed (Here it is also determined which destination type after selecting → is displayed on the map)
  - - Route destination
  - - Next waypoint
- **Note: national border crossed** - Switching on/off the display for information on national speed limits when crossing the national border
- **Demo mode** - Switch on/off guidance in demo mode
- **Define demo mode starting point** - Specifying the start point of the route guidance in the demo mode by entering the address or the current vehicle position

Infotainment settings - Swing

Infotainment system settings

Sound settings

› Press the SOUND or SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Sound**.

- **Volume** - Volume settings
  - **Maximum switch-on volume** - Setting the maximum volume when switching on Infotainment
  - **Traffic reports** - Volume setting for traffic reports (TP)
  - **Speed-dependent volume adjustment** - Volume increases as speed increases
  - **Entertainment fading (parking)** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) with activated parking aid
  - **Entertainment fading (nav. announce.)** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) in the event of a nav. announcements
  - **AUX volume**- Sets the volume for the device connected through AUX
  - **Bluetooth audio:**- Volume setting of the device connected via Bluetooth ® audio profile
- **Balance - Fader** - Sets the balance between left and right, front and rear
- **Bass - Mid - Treble** - Setting the equalizer
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen

Display settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Screen**.

- **Switch off screen (in 10 seconds)** - Enable / disable the automatic power off function[1)]
- **Brightness:** - Adjusts the brightness of the screen
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen
- **Show clock in standby mode** - Time and date displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched on and Infotainment is switched off

Time and date settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Time and date**.

1) Infotainment turns the screen off when no touch screen is performed or none of the keys are pressed / rotated for more than 10 seconds.

- **Time:** - Time settings
- **Time format:** - Specify the time format
- **Summer time** - Switches the summer time on/off
- **Automatic summertime** - Turn on / off the automatic switch to daylight saving time
- **Date:** - Date settings
- **Date format:** - Setting the date format

Setting the Infotainment language

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Language**.
› Select the Infotainment language.

Additional keypad language settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Additional keypad languages**.

In this menu, a keyboard language set can be added to allow the entering of characters other than those in the currently selected language (function surface 🌐).

Unit settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Units**.

- **Distance:** - Distance units
- **Speed:** - Speed units
- **Temperature:** - Temperature units
- **Volume:** - Volume units
- **Consumption:** - Fuel units
- **CNG consump.:** - CNG consumption units
- **Pressure:** - Pressure units for tire pressure

Setting data transfer

The switched data transmission enables data transfer between the infotainment and an external device (e.g.. For applications ŠKODA One App).

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Mobile device data transfer**.

Safe removal of the data source

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Remove safely** and select the external device to be removed.

Restore factory settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Factory settings**.

In this menu, individual settings or all settings can be restored at the same time.

Bluetooth® settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Bluetooth**.

- **Bluetooth** - Switch on/off Bluetooth® function
- **Visibility:** - Switch on/off the visibility of the Bluetooth® device for Bluetooth® devices
- **Name:** - Changing the name of the Bluetooth®unit
- **Paired devices** - Display the list of coupled Bluetooth ® devices
- **Find devices** - Searches for available Bluetooth® devices
- **Bluetooth audio (A2DP/AVRCP)** - Turn on/off the ability to connect a Bluetooth® audio device (e.g. MP3 player, tablet etc...)

Settings of online services ŠKODA Connect

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **ŠKODA Connect (online services)**.

- **Services Management** - Information on licensing of the respective online services and the option to switch them on/off
- **registration** - Enter the activation PIN code for online services (in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal receive)

System information

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **System information**.

The information available will be displayed, for example regarding the Infotainment hardware and software, Bluetooth® software version, etc.

› For a **software update**, tap the **Update software** function surface.

The information on available software updates is obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/infotainment

Radio menu settings

Settings for all broadcasting areas

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ⚙.

- **Scan** - Automatic play short portions of all available stations in the current frequency range
- **Arrow buttons:** - Setting the function of the function surfaces ◁ ▷
  - **Presets**- Switch between stations stored under the preset buttons
  - **Stations** - Switch between all available stations of the selected broadcasting range
- **Traffic programme (TP)** - Switches traffic programme on/off
- **Radio text** - Switching the text display radio (FM and DAB) on and off
- **Station list:**- Sorting methods for radio stations in the station list (FM)
  - **Group** - Sort by transmitted program type
  - **Alphabet** - Alphabetically order according to station name
- **Station logos** - Manual management of station logos
- **Delete presets** - Delete the stations stored under preset buttons
- **Advanced settings** - Other settings that are different depending on the selected broadcasting range (FM and DAB)

Advanced settings (FM)

› Select the FM band in the *Radio* main menu and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **RDS Regional:** - Switch on/off the automatic tracking of related regional stations
  - **Automatic** - Auto-selects the station with the best reception at the moment. If you lose reception in the given the region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.
  - **Fixed** - Maintains the selected regional station continuously. When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
- **Automatic frequency control (AF)** - Search for alternative frequencies of the station currently being played to on/off
- **Radio Data System (RDS)** - enable/disable RDS function (receiving additional information from the station)[1)]
- **Station list:**- Sorting methods for radio stations in the station list (FM)
  - **Group** - Sort by transmitted program type
  - **Alphabet** - Alphabetically order according to station name

Advanced Settings (DAB)

› In the *Radio* main menu, select the DAB range and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **DAB traffic announcements** - Switch on/off DAB announcements
- **Other DAB messages** - Switch on/off other announcements (e.g., warnings, regional weather, sports reports, financial news)
- **DAB station tracking** - Switch on/off automatic DAB station tracking on another frequency or in other station groups
- **Aut. DAB - FM switching** - Switch on/off auto-switching from DAB to the FM frequency band if the DAB signal is lost

Automatic change from DAB to FM
In the event of bad DAB reception, the device tries to find an FM station.

The station name is followed by (**FM**) while the station is being received on the FM band. When the corresponding DAB station is received again, the system automatically switches from FM to DAB.

If a DAB station is also not available in the FM band due to poor reception, Infotainment will be switched to mute.

Media menu settings

› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu ⚙.

- **Sound** - sound settings
- **Mix/repeat including subfolders** - Switching the title display including subfolders
- **Bluetooth** - Settings for the Bluetooth® function
- **Traffic programme (TP)** - Switches traffic programme on/off
- **Activate AUX** - Enables / disables the AUX input
- **Remove safely:** - Safe removal of the external device

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

Import contactsTelephone menu settings

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙.

- **Hands-free telephone** - Switching a call to the phone/back to Infotainment (the menu item is displayed during a call)
- **Select telephone** - Search for available telephones/list of paired telephones/select telephone
  - **Find** - search for available phones
- **Bluetooth** - Bluetooth® settings
- **User profile** - user profile settings
  - **Manage favourites** - set the function surfaces for your favourite contacts
  - **Sort by:** - Arrangement of the phone contact list
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
    - **Name** - sort by contact first name
  - **Import contacts** - Import phone contacts
  - **Select ring tone** - Select the ring tone (depending on the connected phone)
- **Reminder: remember your mobile phone** -Turn on/off the warning about leaving the phone in the vehicle (as long as the phone was connected to the Infotainment)
- **Simultan. calls** Simultaneous calls - enable/disable the option to hold two concurrent calls

SmartLink menu settings

› In the *SmartLink* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙.

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**- Turning data transfer on and off for ŠKODA applications
- *MirrorLink®* - Settings of the system MirrorLink®
  - **Allow Bluetooth automatic pairing** - Turn on / off option, which is to be connected external device via Bluetooth® to pair and connect to
  - **Allow MirrorLink® notification to be shown** - Turn on / off the display of messages of Mirror link®applications on the Infotainment screen

Radio

service

Introduction to the subject

Infotainment allows analogue radio reception of FM and AM frequency ranges as well as DAB digital radio reception.

! CAUTION

- For vehicles with window antennas do not stick foil or metal coated stickers to the window - Radio signal reception could be affected.
- Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can interfere with the radio signal even causing it to fail completely.

main menu

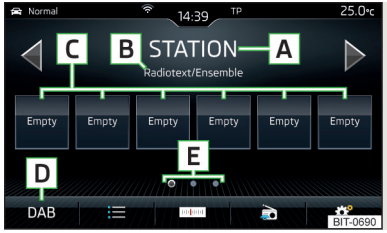


Fig. 163
Radio: Main menu (DAB)

› To **display** the main menu, press the RADIO button.
› **or:**: Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙.

Main menu » Fig. 163

A The selected radio station (description or frequency)
B Radio Text (FM) / Description of the group (DAB)
C Preset station buttons for favourite channels
D Choice of radio range (FM / AM / DAB)
E Choice of storage group for the preferred station
◁ ▷ Changing the station
List of available stations
Manual / semi-automatic station search

Radio text display / image presentation (DAB) (does not apply to Infotainment Swing)

Menu Settings *Radio*

Information symbol in the status line

Symbol	Meaning
TP	Traffic signal is available
no TP	Traffic signal is not available
RDS OFF	RDS function is switched off (FM)
AF OFF	AF Alternative frequency is switched off (FM)
	Signal is not available (DAB)

If the displayed station name continuously changes (dynamic text), then it is possible to fix the current text by holding your finger on the device screen in the station name area. By holding your finger in the area of the station name again, the station name is displayed in its entirety again.

Display DAB main menu (does not apply to Infotainment Swing)
In DAB broadcasting, the display of additional information and images (Slideshow) is possible as long as the currently tuned station is broadcasting this information.

The display variant can be selected from the menu that appears as follows.

▶ In the *Radio* main menu, press the function surface in the **DAB** area .

Search stations and select frequency

Find stations
› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ◁ or ▷ .

Depending on the setting **Arrow buttons:** will set an available station from the **Stations list** or a station of the current broadcast range on the **Station buttons**.

Select frequency
› To **display the value** of the currently chosen frequency, tap the function surface in the *Radio* main menu .
› To **Set the desired frequency value** in Infotainment Swing, use the slider or the function surfaces ◁ ▷ Use the bottom of the screen, if necessary, turn the controller (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus).

Scan through the stations one after the other (scan)
The function scans through all the available stations in the current frequency range in succession, for a few seconds each.

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero
▶ To **start/finish** the automatic play of the available stations in Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero press the function surface in the *Radio* main menu Tap→ **scan** .
▶ To **end** autoplay, tap the function surface SCAN .

Applies to Infotainment Swing
▶ To **start/finish** the automatic play of the available stations in Infotainment Swing, press the controller in the *Radio* main menu .

List of available stations

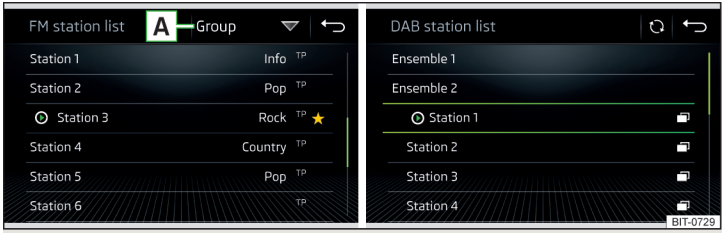


Fig. 164 **Example, the list of available FM/DAB stations**

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero
› To **display** the list of available stations of the currently selected broadcasting area, tap the function surface in the *Radio* main menu .
› To **play**, tap on the function surface of the desired station.
› To **Sort** (FM) the stations in alphabetical order, by group or genre, tap on the function surface A » Fig. 164 » .

Applies to Infotainment Swing
› To **display** the list of available stations of the currently selected broadcasting area, tap the function surface in the *Radio* main menu .
› To **play**, tap on the function surface of the desired station.

› To **filter** the stations according to programme type (e.g. culture, music, sport etc.) in the FM [1] and DAB[2] station list, tap on the function surface -- » Fig. 164 - .

Information symbols

Symbol	Meaning
★	Radio station, which is stored on a preset button
▶	Currently played stations
TP	Traffic information station
(e.g.) Pop	Type of program being broadcast (FM) (does not apply to Infotainment Swing)
(e.g.) R2	Type the regional broadcast (FM)
♪ (e.g.)	Type of program being broadcast (FM, DAB) (applies to the infotainment Swing)
	Signal reception is not available (DAB)
	The transmitter reception is not secure (DAB) (applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero, Swing)
	Stations with image broadcasting (DAB) (does not apply to infotainment Swing)

Refresh list

Depending on Infotainment, the station list update takes place as follows:

Frequency	Columbus	Amundsen, Bolero	Swing
FM	automatically	automatically	automatically
AM	automatically	manually	manually
DAB	automatically	manually	manually

▶ To **manually** update, tap on the function surface ↻ » Fig. 164 .

! CAUTION

To sort the stations according to genre, the RDS and AF functions must be switched on. These functions can be set in the *radio* main menu in the FM band by tapping the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings** switched on / off.

Preset buttons for your favourite channels

In every broadcasting range, there are station buttons available to store preferred stations C That are split into groups E » Fig. 163 *on page 139* or .

› To **save a station on the main menu** *Radio*, hold down the desired function surface C until an acoustic signal sounds.
› To **save a station in the station list**, keep the function surface of the desired station held down, select the memory group, and then tap the desired station button.

If a station is saved on an already assigned station button, this station button will be overwritten.

Station logos - Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Station logos are stored in the Infotainment memory which are assigned automatically by the device when storing the stations under preset buttons.

Assign station logo automatically

› to **Disable / Enable** in the *radio* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙ Tap on→ **Advanced settings** → **Auto-save station logos** .

Assign station logo manually

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ⚙ → **Station logos**.
› Tap on an occupied station button and select the data carrier (SD card, USB).
› Search for and select the desired station logo on the respective data carrier.

Remove channel logo manually

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ⚙ → **Station logos**.
› Tap on the station button from which you want to remove a logo.

i Note

- The following image formats are supported: jpg, gif, png, bmp.
- We recommend a resolution of up to 500x500 pixels.

Station logos - Swing

The station button of a preferred station can contain the name and the station logo.

[1] Applies when the RDS function is switched on.
[2] Applies during selected global sorting of the station list.

Assign a station logo

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ⚙ → **Station logos**.
› Tap on an occupied station button and select the data carrier (SD card, USB).
› Search for and select the desired station logo on the respective data carrier.

Remove station logo

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ⚙ → **Station logos**.
› Tap on the station button from which you want to remove a logo.
› **or**The function surface 🗑 **All** to delete the logos of all the station buttons simultaneously.
› Confirm / cancel the removal.

Note

▪ The following image formats are supported: jpg, gif, png, bmp (we recommend using the png format).
▪ Maximum resolution 400x240 pixels.

TP Traffic program

› To **switch on/off** traffic monitoring in the main menu *Radio*, tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Traffic programme (TP)**.

During a traffic announcement, it is possible to cancel the current announcement if necessary by deactivating traffic monitoring.

Note

▪ If the station that is currently set does not transmit traffic reports or the signal is not available, then Infotainment automatically searches in the background for another TP station.
▪ During playback in the *Media* menu or a station in the AM radio range, traffic news is received from the previously selected FM radio range.

Media

service

Main menu

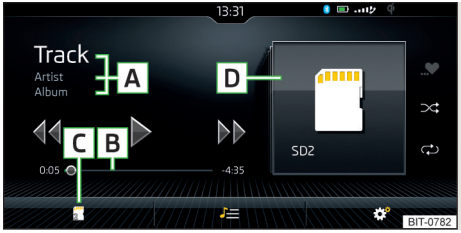


Fig. 165
Media: Main menu

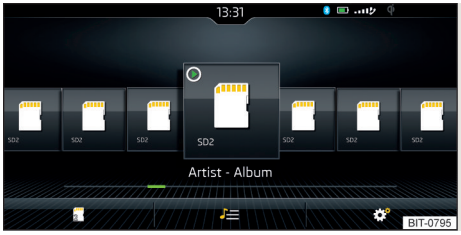


Fig. 166
Album overview (valid for Infotainment Columbus)

› To **display** the main menu, press the MEDIA button.
› **or:**: Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ♫.

Main menu » Fig. 165

A Information on playing track
B Playback timeline with a slider
C Select the audio source
D Selected audio source and selected album image / display the Album overview (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
♪≡ Depending on the audio source type:
  ▶ Folder/Title list
  ▶ Multimedia database
⚙ Settings for the *Media* » page 132 menu or » page 138

Album overview (valid for Infotainment Columbus)
By touching with your finger in the area D » Fig. 166 a list of albums is displayed. Movement within the album list can be performed by moving a finger right/left across the screen. After 10 seconds since the last operation, the main menu is displayed.

Note

▪ Information concerning the given title appears on the screen, if they are stored as what are called ID3 Tags on the audio source. If no ID3 tag is available, only the title name is displayed.
▪ The remaining playback time indicated does not correspond to the actual remaining playback time for titles with variable bitrates.

Select audio source

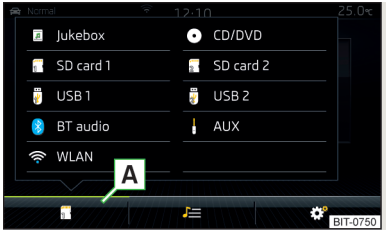


Fig. 167
Display examples of audio source selection

› In the *Media* main menu, tap on the function surface A » Fig. 167 and select the desired audio source.

By selecting an audio source, playback of titles available starts (not for AUX).

Playback operation - Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Operation	Action
Play / Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ◁◁ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
	Finger movement to the right in screen area A » Fig. 165 *on page 142* after 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
Fast-reverse within the title	Press and hold ◁◁
Fast-forward within the title	Press and hold ▷▷
Play the previous title	Tap ◁◁ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
	Finger movement to the right of the screen area A » Fig. 165 *on page 142* (Within 3 s after the start of the track playback)
Play back the next title	Tap ▷▷
	Moving your finger to the left of the screen area A » Fig. 165 *on page 142*
Switch on/off the random playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⤮
Switch on/off the repeat playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⟲
Switch on/off repeat playback of specific track	Tap ⟲
Search (applies to sources with displayable multimedia database) (applies to Infotainment Columbus)	Tap 🔍
Turn on / off playback of similar tracks according to information from what is called the ID3-Tag (applies to Infotainment Columbus)	Tap ♡

The movement within the track is possible by finger touching the timeline B » Fig. 165 *on page 142*.

Playback operation - Swing

Operation	Action
Play / Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Play the previous title	Tap ◁◁ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ◁◁ after 3 s from the start of the track playback

Operation	Action
Fast-reverse within the title	Press and hold ◁◁
Fast-forward within the title	Press and hold ▷▷
Play back the next title	Tap ▷▷
Switch on/off the random playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⤮
Switch on/off the repeat playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⟲
Switch on/off repeat playback of specific track	Tap ⟲

The movement within the track is possible by finger touching the timeline B » Fig. 165 *on page 142*.

Folder / track list

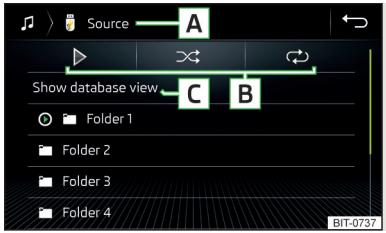


Fig. 168
Folder/Title list

› To **display** the folder / track list on the *Media* main menu, tap on the function surface ♪≡ (if this display is supported by the currently selected source).
› To **playback** select a title.

Folder/Title list » Fig. 168

A Selected audio source / audio source folder (movement within the folder takes place by pressing the function surface for the folder)
B Options folder/track playback
C Display of multimedia database (only available in the bibliography)
♫ Select the audio source
📁 Folder
♫ Playlist
▶ / ⏸ Currently playing title / track playback stopped
♫ The title cannot be played (tapping on the function surface shows the cause).

Note

- In the list, the first 1000 entries (titles, directories etc.) are displayed with the oldest creation date.
- The scanning speed of the folder / track list depends on the connection speed and volume of data.

Multimedia database

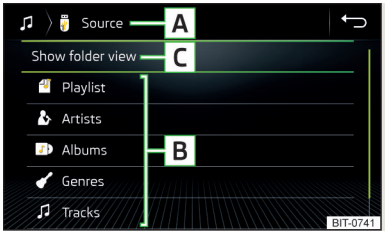


Fig. 169
Multimedia database

› To **display** the multimedia database, in the *Media* main menu tap on the function surface ♪≡ (if this display is supported by the currently selected source).

The audio files are sorted by their properties into individual categories B.

› To **playback**, select the category and then the title.

Multimedia database » Fig. 169

A Selected audio source / Selected category / folder of the audio source
B Sorting categories
C Display of files/track list (only available in the bibliography)
♫ Select the audio source

Audio sources

Introduction to the subject

› To **playback**, connect or insert the desired audio source. Starts playback automatically, then select the audio source » page 143.

If AUX is selected as the audio source, the playback must be started on the connected device.

CAUTION

- Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an external audio source, the external source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and if necessary confirmed (e.g. enabling data transfer etc).

Note

The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

CD / DVD

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

Fig. 170 **CD / DVD slot**

The CD/DVD» Fig. 170 slot is located in an external module in the glove box on the front passenger side.

› To **insert** a CD/DVD, with the labelled side facing up, press into the CD slot until it is automatically drawn in.
› To **eject**, press the button ⏏ The CD/DVD is moved to the starting position.

If the ejected CD/DVD is not removed within 10 seconds, it is retracted again for safety reasons. However, the unit will not change to the CD/DVD source.

WARNING

- The CD/DVD player is a laser product.
- This laser product is classified as Class 1 laser product for the date of manufacture in accordance with national / international standards DIN EN 60825-1: 2008-05 and DHHS Rules 21 CFR. Subchapter J. The laser used in this class 1 laser product is so weak that there is no risk of danger when operated correctly.
- This product is designed such that the laser is restricted to the inside of Infotainment. However, the installed laser could be classified in a higher class were the housing to be removed. For this reason, never remove the Infotainment housing.

CAUTION

- Be sure to remove the CD/DVD before you try to insert a new CD/DVD. Otherwise you can damage the drive inside Infotainment.
- Only insert in the CD/DVD drive original Audio CDs/video DVDs or standard CD-R/RWs or DVD±R/RWs.
- Do not affix anything to the CD/DVDs!
- If the ambient temperature is too high or too low, the CD / DVD playback may not work.
- Damp (condensation) may affect Infotainment in cold weather or high humidity. This can cause the CD to jump or impair the play function. Once the moisture has dissipated, playback is fully functional again.

Note

- After pressing the button ⏏ it takes a few seconds for the CD / DVD to be ejected.
- On uneven or unpaved roads, playback jumps may occur.
- If the CD/DVD is damaged, is not readable or is inserted incorrectly, the following message is displayed: **Error: CD/DVD**.
- Copy-protected CD/DVDs cannot be played back at all or only in certain circumstances.

SD card

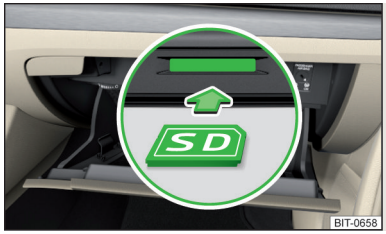


Fig. 171
Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: Insert SD card

Fig. 172
Infotainment Swing: Insert SD card

› **Insert** the SD card in the slot in the direction of arrow (with the cut end facing right), until it "locks" » Fig. 171 or » Fig. 172.
› To **remove** the SD card, tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu → **Remove safely**.
› Press on the inserted SD memory card. The SD card "jumps" into the eject position.

CAUTION

■ Do not use an SD card with a broken write protection slide - there is a risk of damage to the SD card reader!
■ When using an SD card with an adapter, vehicle vibrations might cause the card to fall out of the adapter.

USB input

Installation location of the USB input and information regarding its use » page 85.

The USB input audio source can be connected directly or via a connecting cable.

› To **connect**, insert the USB audio source into the appropriate input.
› To **disconnect** the USB, tap on the *Media* main menu function surface → **Remove safely**.
› Disconnect the audio source from the corresponding USB input.

Load USB audio source

With Infotainment on after connecting the USB audio source, the charging process is automatically started (applies for audio sources where charging via the USB connector is possible).

The charging efficiency can differ compared to charging from the usual mains power supply.

Depending on the type of the connected external device and the frequency of use, the charging current may not be sufficient to charge the battery of the connected device.

Some connected audio sources may not be recognised and cannot be charged.

CAUTION

USB extension cords, or reducers may impair the function of the connected audio source.

Note

We recommend that you use extension cords from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

AUX input

Installation location of the AUX input » page 85.

› To **connect**, insert the plug of the AUX audio source into the appropriate connector.
› To **disconnect**, pull the plug out of the AUX audio source.

CAUTION

■ The AUX input must only be used for audio devices!
■ If an external audio source is connected to the AUX input, which is equipped with an adapter for external power supply, the sound may be impaired.

Note

- The 3.5 mm stereo jack plug is used for the AUX input.
- We recommend that you use extension cords from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Bluetooth® player

Infotainment allows audio files of a connected Bluetooth® player to play using the A2DP and AVRCP audio profile.

With Infotainment, multiple devices can be paired using Bluetooth® , but only one of them can be used as a Bluetooth® player.

Connect / disconnect

› To **connect** the Bluetooth® player with Infotainment- follow the same instructions as for pairing Infotainment with a telephone» page 158.
› To **disconnect** the Bluetooth® player, end the connection in the list of paired external devices » page 158.

Replace Bluetooth® player (applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero)

If you would like to replace a Bluetooth®-Player which is connected to Infotainment as a phone at the same time, , then a relevant information message appears on the Infotainment screen.

› End the connection to the currently connected Bluetooth® player and repeat the pairing procedure » page 158, *Managing paired external devices*.

CAUTION

If an external device is connected to Infotainment using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, then it cannot be connected using Bluetooth®.

Jukebox

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

In the Jukebox (in the Infotainment internal memory), supported audio / video files can be imported from connected external devices.

Import files

› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu → **Manage jukebox** → **Import**.
› Select the desired source.
› Select the desired folders or files.
› Tap the function surface .

Delete files

› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu → **Manage jukebox** → **Delete**.
› Select the desired folder or files in the selected category.
› Tap the function surface → **Delete**.

Show level of Infotainment memory

› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu → **Manage jukebox**.

information about the occupied and free space of the Infotainment memory and the number of files that cannot be imported is displayed.

Note

- Files that have already been copied are recognised and cannot be copied again (shown in grey).
- It is not possible to copy files while simultaneously playing back audio/video files in the CD/DVD drive.

WLAN

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

Infotainment allows you to play audio files from one of the external devices connected to the Infotainment WLAN.

› Connect an external device that supports the DLNA (Digital Living Network Alliance), with Infotainment WLAN» page 166.
› If necessary use the UPnP application (Universal Plug and Play) in the connected device, which allows playback to start.
› Select the audio source Select**WLAN** .

Supported audio sources and file formats - Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Supported audio sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); The USB devices supporting MSC operation	
		MTP	Devices with the Android operating system or Windows mobile (mobile phone, tablet)	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system (iPhone, iPod, iPad)	
CD/DVD Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.	CD/DVD Drive	Audio CD (Up to 80 min); CD-R / RW (Up to 700 MB); DVD±R/RW; DVD-Audio, DVD-Video	ISO9660; Joliet (Level 1,2,3) ; UDF 1.x; UDF 2.x	-

Supported audio file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max bit rate	Maximum sampling rate	Multi channels[a]	Playlists
Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	wma	384 kbit / s	96 kHz	no	m3u pls wpl m3u8 asx
WAV	wav	Defined by the format (approx. 1.5 Mbit/s)			
MPEG-1; 2 and 2.5 Layer 3	mp3	320 kbit / s	48 kHz		
MPEG-2 and 4	aac; mp4; m4a			yes	
FLAC; Vorbis	flac; ogg	Defined by the format (approx. 5.5 Mbit/s)			

[a] Applies to the CANTON sound system.

The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured audio sources are not supported by Infotainment.

Files that are protected by Digital Rights Management **(DRM)** technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported audio sources and file formats - Swing

Supported audio sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32 exFAT
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); The USB devices supporting MSC operation	
		MTP	Devices with the Android operating system or Windows mobile (mobile phone, tablet)	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system (iPhone, iPod, iPad)	
Bluetooth® Player	-	-	Bluetooth protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.4)	-

Supported audio file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max bit rate	Maximum sampling rate	Playlists
Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	wma	384 kbit / s	96 kHz	m3u pls wpl asx
MPEG-1; 2 and 2.5 (Layer-3)	mp3	320 kbit / s	48 kHz	

The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured audio sources are not supported by Infotainment.

Files that are protected by Digital Rights Management **(DRM)** technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Images

Image viewer

main menu

Does not apply to Infotainment Swing.

Fig. 173
Images: Main menu

› To **display** the main menu, press MENU, then tap the function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 173

A Select the image source
Folder / Image List
Display the previous image
Switching on the slideshow
Switching off the slideshow
Display of the next image
Images menu settings
Rotate the image 90° anticlockwise
Rotate the image 90° clockwise
Display the initial image size while retaining the aspect ratio
Guidance to GPS coordinates (Amundsen; the display only occurs if the image contains GPS coordinates) (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen) » page 183

Control viewed images

Operation	Action
Display of the next image	Moving your finger across the screen to the left (with initial representation)
	Tap ▷▷
Display the previous image	Moving your finger across the screen to the right (with initial representation)
	Tap ◁◁
Increase the image size	Touch screen using two fingers and pull apart
	Turning the knob ⊙ to the right (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus)
Reduce the image size	Touch screen using two fingers and close together
	Turning the knob ⊙ to the left (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus)
Moving the image with an enlarged display	Drag your finger over the screen in the required direction
Rotate by 90 °	Touch screen using two fingers and move clockwise or counter clockwise (only available with start representation)
	Tap ↻ or ↺
Maximum magnification of representation	Double finger tap on the screen
Display the initial image size while retaining the aspect ratio	Double tap on the screen again
	Pressing the knob ⊙ (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus)

CAUTION

Viewing images on the Infotainment screen is not supported by connected Apple devices.

Supported image file formats and sources

Supported image sources

Source	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB devices	USB stick; HDD (without any special software)	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	
CD / DVD (Applies to Infotainment Columbus)	CD-R / RW (Up to 700 MB); DVD±R/RW	ISO9660; Joliet (Level 1,2,3) ; UDF 1.x; UDF 2.x	-

Supported file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. resolution (Megapixels)
BMP	bmp	4
JP (E) G	jpg; jpeg	4; 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

Note

- The max. supported image size is 20 MB.
- The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured images sources are not supported by Infotainment.

Video DVD

video player

Main menu

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

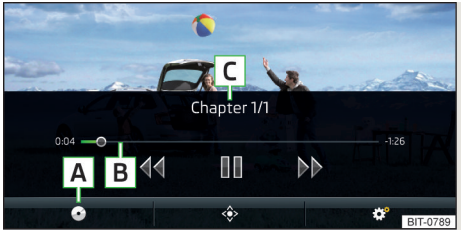


Fig. 174
DVD: Main menu

› to **display** the main menu, insert a CD / DVD in the corresponding slot in the external module.
› **or:** In the main menu *Media*, select the video source, display the folder / track list and start the video file.

Main menu » Fig. 174

A Select a video source
B Playback timeline
C Information for the selected video file (e.g., video title, chapter)
Display the Video DVD menu
Menu settings *Video DVD*

Note

For safety reasons, the image display is switched off at speeds over 5 km/h. Only the sound continues. The respective message appears on the screen.

Control playback

Operation	Action
Play / Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Play the previous video	Tap ◁◁ within 3 s from the start of the track playback
Play the current video from the start	Tap ◁◁ after 3 s after the start of the playback
Fast rewind	Press and hold ◁◁[a]
Play the next video	Tap ▷▷
Fast forward	Press and hold ▷▷[a]
Forward / rewind the video at the desired time	Tapping the reproduction timeline B » Fig. 174 *on page 151*

[a] The longer the function surface is held, the faster the fast forward/reverse.

DVD menu

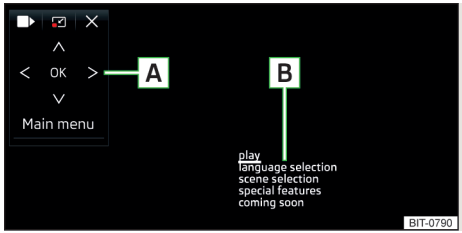


Fig. 175
DVD menu

› To **display** the DVD menu, in the main menu *Video DVD*, tap the function surface » Fig. 174 *on page 151* .

Description of the DVD menu » Fig. 175

A Operating surface
B Example of the displayed menu

Function surfaces on the operating surface

Symbol	Operation
◀■ / ■▶	Move the operating surface left / right
⊡ / ⊡	Show / hide full screen display of the operating surface
✕	Close the operating surface
< > ∨ ∧	Movement in the EPG/teletext

Symbol	Operation
OK	Confirmation
Main menu	Return to *video DVD* main menu

Supported video sources and file formats

Supported video sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); The USB devices supporting MSC operation	
CD/DVD	CD/DVD Drive	CD-R / RW (Up to 700 MB); DVD±R/RW; default DVD; DVD-Video;	ISO9660; Joliet (Level 1,2,3); UDF 1.x; UDF 2.x	-

Supported video file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. frames per second	Max. resolution
MPEG-1	.mpeg	30	352 x 288
MPEG-2		25	720 x 576
MPEG-4	.mp4		
QuickTime	.mov		
Matroska	.mkv		
DivX; XviD	.avi		
MJPEG			

Media Command

Operation

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

The Media Commandfunction allows playback of audio files or videos in up to two **Tablets**That are connected to Infotainment via WLAN, **to control Infotainment**.

The function Media Command enables operation of tablets with the Android operating system or iOS.

Connect tablet with Infotainment

› Turn on the Infotainment hotspot (WLAN) (press the MENU button then tap the function surface → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Mobile hotspot**).
› Switch on Wi-Fi in the tablet.
› Establishing a Wi-Fi connection in the tablet » page 166, *Hotspot (WLAN)*.
› In the tablet, start the application ŠKODA Media Command.

CAUTION

If several devices are connected to Infotainment via WLAN, there is a risk that the quality of the WLAN connection, and therefore the function of Media Command may be affected.

Main menu

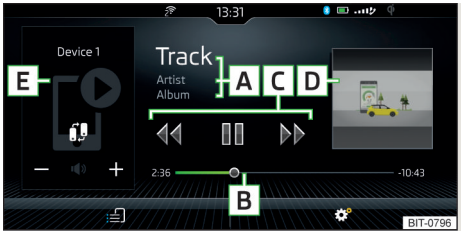


Fig. 176
Main menu: one tablet

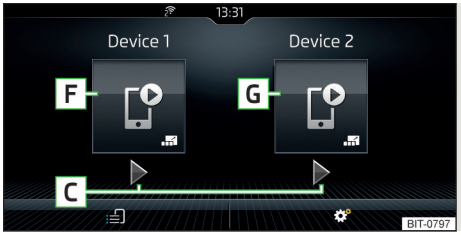


Fig. 177
Main menu: two tablets

› To **display** the main menu *Media Command*, press the MENU button, then tap the function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 176 or » Fig. 177

A Information on playing track
B Playback timeline with a slider
C Playback control
D Image from the played back video (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
E Name of the tablet used/Switch to main menu of two tablets » Fig. 177 (when icon displayed)
– / + Reduce/increase tablet volume (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
/ Reduce/increase tablet volume (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
F Display of main menu and operation of first tablet
G Display of main menu and operation of second tablet
Selection of the playback source
WLAN settings » page 130

Select source and control playback

› To **select the playback source** tap the function surface in the main menu and select the source tablet.
› To **playback**, select the category and then the title.

If two tablets are connected, the title playback starts in the two tablets at the same time.

Playback can be controlled via Infotainment or on each tablet, and are independent from each other. This means there is an option to playback different titles on the tablets at the same time.

Playback control

Operation	Action
Play / Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ◁◁ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
Play the previous title	Tap ◁◁ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
Play back the next title	Tap ▷▷

The movement within the track is possible by finger touching the timeline B » Fig. 176 *on page 152*.

Note
Some tablet types allow playback of audio files or videos by an inserted SD card in the tablet. Playback of these tracks may be limited.

Supported file formats

Type	Format	Operating system Android	Operating system iOS
Video	MPEG-4 Part 2	✓	✓
	MPEG-4 Part 10 (H264)	✓	✓
	XVID	✓	✕
Audio	MPEG-1;2 and 2.5 Layer 3 (mp3)	✓	✓
	AAC	✓ (4,1+)	✓
	M4A	✓ (4,1+)	✓
	OGG	✓	✕
	FLAC	✓	✕
	WAV	✓ (4,1+)	✓

Telephone

Introductory information

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero
This chapter deals with the operation of Infotainment with the telephone connected via Bluetooth® as well as the use of the SIM-card in the external module.

The SIM card in the external module can be used for data and telephone services (applies to Infotainment Columbus).

If telephones are connected to Infotainment with multiple SIM cards, then calls can be accepted by all SIM cards of the connected telephones.

For outgoing calls, it depends on the type of connected telephone, either only the primary SIM card or one of the other SIM cards can be selected.

The Infotainment allows you to choose if you want to text messages of the main phone (if this is supported by the phone), or work with text messages from the SIM card inserted in the external module.

If Infotainment is connected to an external device via Apple CarPlay then the use of the Bluetooth® connection is not possible and the *Telephone* menu is not available. A possible data connection via the SIM card remains operational » page 167.

Applies to Infotainment Swing
This chapter covers the operation of a Bluetooth® device connected to Infotainment.

If a telephone is connected to Infotainment with multiple SIM cards, then calls can be accepted by all SIM cards of the connected phone.

For outgoing calls, it depends on the type of connected telephone, either only the primary SIM card or one of the other SIM cards can be selected.

WARNING
The general binding country-specific regulations for operating mobile phones in the vehicle must be observed.

Possible connection types

Depending on the number of connected Bluetooth® devices, connection type, as well as the use of the SIM card in the external module, the following functions are available.

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

Connection variant	The first device (main phone)		The second device (additional phone)		Third device	Fourth device
	Telephone	SIM card (In the external module)	Telephone	SIM card (In the external module)		
1.	**rSAP** incoming / outgoing Calls, text messages, Phone contacts, Data connection, Bluetooth® player[a]	-	**HFP** (incoming calls), Bluetooth® player[a]	-	Bluetooth® player[a]	-
2.	**HFP** (Incoming / outgoing Calls), text messages, Phone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a]	-	**HFP** (incoming calls), Bluetooth® player[a]	Data connection	Bluetooth® player[a]	-
3.	**HFP** (Incoming / outgoing Calls), text messages, Phone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a]	-	-	Incoming calls, Text messages, Data connection	Bluetooth® player[a]	-
4.	-	incoming / outgoing Calls, text messages, Phone contacts[b], Data connection	**HFP** (incoming calls), Text messages, Bluetooth® player[a]	-	Phone contacts[b], Bluetooth® player[a]	Bluetooth® player[a]

[a] In every connection variant, there is an option to only connect an external device as a Bluetooth connection® player with Infotainment.

[b] If phone contacts from the third device are imported into infotainment, the telephone contacts of the SIM card inserted in the external module cannot be used.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero

The first device (main phone)	The second device (additional phone)
HFP (Incoming / outgoing calls), SMS, Phone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a]	**HFP** (incoming calls), Bluetooth® player[a]

[a] Only an external device can be connected to Infotainment as a Bluetooth® player.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

The first device (main phone)	The second device (additional phone)
HFP (Incoming / outgoing calls), Phone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a]	Bluetooth® player[a]

[a] Only an external device can be connected to Infotainment as a Bluetooth® player.

Telephone

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

Fig. 178
Telephone: Main menu

The *Telephone* main menu is displayed if a phone or a SIM card with activated phone service on the external module is connected to Infotainment.

› To **display**, press the PHONE button.
› **or**: Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface .

Main menu - Information and function surfaces » Fig. 178

A Name of the connected phone (by tapping the list of paired phones displayed)

B Functional surfaces of preferred contacts

C Choice of storage group for the preferred contacts

D Name of the telephone service provider (with active roaming, the symbol appears before the name ▶)

E Main telephone icon
- ▶ - a telephone connected via Bluetooth®
- ▶ - a SIM card with activated telephone services, inserted in the external module

F Display of the list of connected telephones, which are available as the source of telephone contacts
- ▶ - no telephone is connected for telephone contacts
- ▶ - a telephone is connected for telephone contacts

SOS Emergency number dialling [1)2)] or function surface of the preferred contact » page 162

Change the main phone to the extension telephone

Enter the telephone number

Display the phone contact list, depending on the connection type » page 162

Displays a menu with text messages (SMS) / option to use a SIM card or a telephone for calling up the menu with text messages (SMS) (with new text messages, the number of messages appears in the function surface)

Display the call list (missed calls, in addition to the function surface, the number of calls when missed is displayed)

Settings for the *Telephone* menu » page 132

Symbols in the status bar

G Signal strength of the phone service network with existing SIM card in the external module or rSAP connection and connection type and data transfer

H Signal strength of the data service network (applies to infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)

A telephone connected via Bluetooth® (applies to Infotainment Columbus)

Charge status of the telephone battery

Missed call

Current call

Incoming SMS

Ongoing data transfer

ID of the telephone's wireless charging function » page 84 (applies to Infotainment Columbus)

PIN The PIN code of the SIM card inserted in the external module has not been entered

Connected hotspot (WLAN) of the Infotainment system (with number of connected external devices)

[1)] In some countries, the function may not be available.

[2)] For active online services Care Connect carried out the connection to the emergency number using this service.

Telephone

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

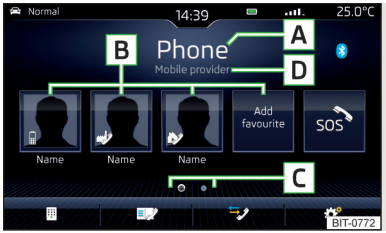


Fig. 179
Telephone: Main menu

The *Telephone* main menu appears when a telephone is connected to Infotainment.

› To **display**, press the PHONE button.

To display the *Telephone* main menu if a different menu is displayed, which was open last, press the PHONE button again.

Main menu - Information and function surfaces » Fig. 179

- A Name of the connected phone (by tapping the list of paired phones displayed)
- B Functional surfaces of preferred contacts
- C Choice of storage group for the preferred contacts
- D Name of the telephone service provider (with active roaming, the symbol appears before the name ▶)
- SOS Emergency number dialling [1)2)] or function surface of the preferred contact » page 162
- Enter the telephone number
- Display the telephone contact list » page 162
- Display the call list (missed calls, in addition to the function surface, the number of calls when missed is displayed)
- Settings for the *Telephone* menu » page 139

Symbols in the status bar

- Signal strength of the telephone service network
- Charge status of the telephone battery
- Missed call
- Current call

Pairing and connecting

Introduction to the subject

The range of the connection to Infotainment is limited to the passenger compartment.

To connect a telephone with Infotainment, the two devices must be paired via Bluetooth®.

The pairing process is dependent on the number of phones that are already connected or on the use of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus) » page 159.

Depending on the Infotainment model, up to 20 external devices can be paired with the device. After reaching the maximum number, the pairing of the next external device will replace that of the device that has not been used for the longest period of time.

A connection with a telephone that is already paired does not require pairing. It is enough to find the telephone that has been paired in the list of paired phones and make the connection.

! WARNING

Pair and connect a telephone to Infotainment only when the vehicle is at a standstill - there is risk of an accident!

1) In some countries, the function may not be available.
2) For active online services Care Connect carried out the connection to the emergency number using this service.

conditions for pairing

Fig. 180
QR code with reference to the ŠKODA websites

The telephone can be paired with Infotainment under the following conditions.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The Bluetooth® function of the infotainment and the telephone is switched on.
- ✓ The visibility of the infotainment and the telephone is switched on.
- ✓ The telephone is within range of the Bluetooth® signal of Infotainment.
- ✓ The telephone is compatible with the infotainment.
- ✓ There is no external device connected to Infotainment using Apple CarPlay.

The pairing can be initiated from Infotainment or from the telephone.

During the pairing and connection process, information messages are displayed on the Infotainment screen and the telephone screen. These messages must be observed and if necessary confirmed (e.g. enabling the contact import, connecting the Bluetooth® player among others).

Compatibility and update
By reading the QR code » Fig. 180 **or** after typing the following address into the web browser, information about the compatibility of phones and updates are available for Infotainment Bluetooth ®can be displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

Pairing and connection process

Pair the telephone with Infotainment
› Search available Bluetooth® devices in your telephone.
› Select the Infotainment system (the name of the Infotainment system can be checked in the *Telephone* main menu if you tap on the function surface → **Bluetooth** → **Name:**).
› Confirm or enter the PIN code to confirm the pairing.

The phone is connected to the infotainment or merely coupled, depending on the number of already connected external devices and on the use of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus).

Pair Infotainment with the telephone
› If **no** telephone is connected to the infotainment system, press the PHONE button, then tap the **Find mobile phone** function surface or press the MENU button, then tap the → **Find mobile phone** function surface.
› If **one** telephone is connected to the infotainment system, then, in the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the → **Find mobile phone** function surface.
› If **a SIM card** with activated telephone services is inserted in the external module of infotainment Columbus, then, in the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the → **Find mobile phone** function surface.
› Select the desired telephone from the list of visited external Bluetooth® devices.
› Confirm the PIN code (enter and confirm if necessary to confirm the pairing.

If external Bluetooth® devices are already connected to Infotainment, then during the Infotainment pairing and connection process, messages and options for the possible connection type (e.g. replacement of the connected external Bluetooth® device) are displayed.

Possible connection types for telephones for the SIM card in the external module » page 154.

Managing paired external devices

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface Tap→ **Bluetooth** → **Paired devices**.

In the list of paired external devices, the following Bluetooth ® profile icons may appear for the individual external devices.

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Symbol	Symbol colour	Operation
	Grey	External device can be connected as telephone
	Green	External device is connected as telephone
	Grey	External device can be connected as Bluetooth® player
	White	External device is connected as Bluetooth® player

Applies to Infotainment Columbus with SIM card inserted in external module

Symbol	Symbol colour	Operation
	Grey	External device can be connected to use telephone contacts and the text message function from this external device
	blue	External device is connected and telephone contacts and the text message function from this external device can be used

Applies to Infotainment Swing

Symbol	Symbol colour	Operation
	White	External device can be connected as telephone
	Green	External device is connected as telephone
	White	External device can be connected as Bluetooth® player
	Green	External device is connected as Bluetooth® player

Connection set-up

▶ Select the desired external device from the list of paired external devices.
▶ Select the desired profile from the list of available Bluetooth® profiles - .

If external Bluetooth® devices are already connected to Infotainment, then during the Infotainment connection process, messages and options for the possible connection type (e.g. replacement of the connected external Bluetooth® device) are displayed.

Disconnection

▶ Select the desired external device from the list of paired external devices.
▶ Select the desired profile from the list of available Bluetooth® profiles - .

Delete the paired external device

▶ To delete, tap on one of the following function surfaces.

Delete all or **All** - Delete all external devices
- Delete the desired external device

▶ Confirm the deletion by tapping on the function surface **Delete**.

Use the SIM card in the external module

Applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module.

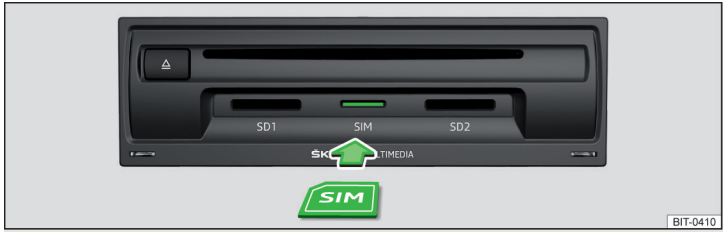


Fig. 181 **Insert SIM card in the external module**

The SIM card inserted in the external module can be used for telephone and data services.

The use of the SIM card requires the telephone function of the external module to be switched on.

Switching on and off

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Phone interface "Business"**.

Insert SIM card

The SIM card slot is located in an external module in the glove box on the front passenger side.

A SIM card size **mini** (standard size 25x15 mm) must be used.

› Push the SIM card into the available slot with the cut-off edge to the left until it “locks into place” » Fig. 181.

If a phone / phones was/were connected before inserting the SIM card with the infotainment and telephone services on the SIM card are also selected, then the connection is terminated to previously connected phones.

Use the SIM card for the first time
The first time you insert the SIM card in the external module, the following menu appears.

› **Calls too** - Data and telephone services are activated (the main menu *phone* is displayed).
› **Data connections only** - only the data services of the inserted SIM card are activated.

If you wish to change the activated services at a later time, go to the *Telephone* main menu and tap on the ⚙ → **Use SIM card only for data connection** function surface.

Enter the PIN code and save
› If the SIM card is protected by a PIN code, then the PIN code of the SIM card must be entered.
› Confirm the entered PIN code.

or

› If you would like to save the entered PIN code in the device memory, then press the function key 🖫 Tap the PIN-code is stored and simultaneously confirmed.

Establish a data connection using the SIM-card
After selecting the services and entering the PIN code, if required, a data connection menu is displayed.

› Tap the function surface **Connect**.

If the network is not sufficiently set up, Infotainment prompts for network settings.

› Tap the function surface **Network settings**.
› Select the data provider.

If your data provider is not available in the list, ask your provider whether one of the displayed providers can be used.

› To check the network settings and adapt them in accordance with your data provider's instructions, if relevant, tap on the **Network settings** function surface.

The usage settings for data connection via SIM card can be configured in the MENU → ⚙ → **Network** → **Data connection:** menu option.

Manual configuration of the data connection network (APN access point)
If the data connection is not established automatically or if you wish to configure the network (APN access point) manually, proceed as follows.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ⚙ → **Network** → **Network settings**.
› Carry out manual configuration in accordance with your data provider's instructions.
› To save the configured values, tap the **Store** function surface.

Change PIN code
› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on function surface ⚙ → **PIN settings** → **Change PIN**.
› Enter the new PIN code and confirm.

Remove SIM card
› Press on the inserted SIM card.

The SIM card “jumps” into the eject position.

› Remove the SIM card from the slot.

! CAUTION
■ When inserting an incorrectly sized SIM card, there is a risk of damage to Infotainment.
■ Avoid using a an adapter for the SIM card as the SIM card may fall out while driving due to vehicle vibrations - There is the risk of damage to the external module.
■ If you let the SIM card protrude out from the slot, then it may fall out of the slot while driving due to vehicle vibrations.

i Note
If a SIM card is inserted in the external module and the option to use the SIM card telephone services is selected, the currently connected telephones will be disconnected. You can then only connect the additional telephone to the infotainment system.

rSAP

Applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module.

The Bluetooth® profile RSAP (remote transmission of data SIM) also allows, in contrast to Bluetooth® profile HFP, **the use** of data services from the connected phone (if this profile is supported by the phone and data services are enabled in this phone) » page 167.

The use of Bluetooth® profile RSAP requires the telephone function of the external module to be switched on.

Switching on and off

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on function surface → **Phone interface "Business"**.

The pairing and connection process takes place in the same way to the Bluetooth® profile HFP » page 157.

If the rSAP profile is supported by the telephone to be connected, then the infotainment system tries to connect using this profile with priority. Depending on the phone, the connection can be blocked or released using an rSAP profile in the phone.

Note

- If a SIM card is inserted in the external module, the phone cannot be connected to Infotainment by the rSAP profile.
- If an external device is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, then the data connection using rSAP cannot be carried out.

Telephone functions

Enter telephone number and select

Enter a telephone number and dial

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface .
› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad.
› Select the number entered by tapping on the function surface.

Function surfaces of the numerical keyboard

/ Enter the last dialled number / dial the telephone number entered
/ SOS Emergency call (Only applies to some countries)
Breakdown call in case of breakdown
/ Information call (for information regarding the products and services of the brand ŠKODA)
Choosing the mailbox number (the function is not supported for Infotainment Swing)
Delete the last number entered
/ Display of function surfaces < > for the movement of the cursor in the input line

Emergency services and information call

If no breakdown or info calls can be made then a ŠKODA service partner should be consulted.

For active online services Care Connect carried out the connection to the emergency services or info call using this service » page 115,

Search for a contact using the numeric keypad

The numeric keypad can also be used for a contact search.

For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

Voicemail box (does not apply to Infotainment Swing)

If not import the voicemail number or was not imported or entered, then this can be entered or changed as follows.

▶ In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on function surface → **User profile** → **Mailbox number:**.

▶ To select the voice mailbox number, tap the function surface Or on the numeric keypad, tap on the function surface 1 .

Note

The numeric keyboard can also be displayed during a telephone call.

List of telephone contacts

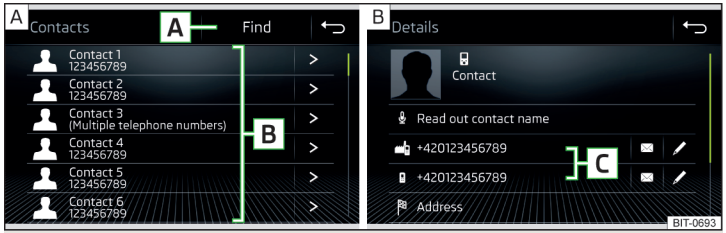


Fig. 182 **List of telephone contacts / contact details**

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface and a list of telephone contacts will be displayed » Fig. 182- A.

The main telephone is connected to Infotainment, the telephone contacts from the telephone are used.

If there is a SIM card with activated telephone services in the external module of Infotainment Columbus, phone contacts are available on the SIM card. If necessary, you can choose another external device to import the telephone contacts by tapping on the A » Fig. 178 *on page 156* function surface.

Functional surfaces

A Contact search

B Select a number in the telephone contact list - if a telephone contact contains several telephone numbers, the system displays a menu containing the telephone numbers for this contact after selecting the contact)

> Display the contact details

C Select the number in the contact details

Edit the telephone number of the contact before dialling

Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero:

The contact name can be read out by Infotainment's generated voice

Open the menu for sending a text message (SMS)

Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen:

Start the route guidance to the contact address

Import list

After the primary telephone and/or the SIM card (applies to Infotainment Columbus) connects to the infotainment system for the first time, the import of the telephone contacts to the infotainment memory starts. The import can take several minutes.

In the infotainment phonebook, there are 4000 (applies to Infotainment Columbus) and 2000 (applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero, Swing) free storage locations for imported telephone contacts. Each contact can contain up to 5 telephone numbers.

The number of imported contacts can be determined in the menu item → **User profile** → **Import contacts:** or **Import contacts**.

If an error occurs during the import, an appropriate message appears on the screen.

Refresh list

When the telephone reconnects with Infotainment, the list is automatically updated.

The update can be carried out manually as follows.

▶ In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on function surface → **User profile** → **Import contacts:** or **Import contacts**.

Management of preferred contacts (favourites)

Fig. 183
Favourite contacts

Assigning favourites

› In the main menu *Telephone*, tap on the desired function surface A » Fig. 183.

› Select the desired contact (if required, one of the contact numbers).

Connecting to a favourite

The function surfaces of preferred contacts allow the contact telephone numbers to be dialled immediately.

The favourites are available in two storage groups.

› To the **change Storage Group** tap on the functional surface B » Fig. 183.
› To **choose** tap on the assigned function area A » Fig. 183.

Change allocated favourites

› In the *Telephone* main menu, hold the desired function surface A » Fig. 183.
› Select the desired contact (if required, one of the contact numbers).

Delete a favourite

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on function surface → **User profile** → **Manage favourites**.
› Press the desired function surface of the preferred contact and confirm the deletion.

You can delete all contacts by tapping on the function surface **Delete all / All** and confirm the deletion process.

Call list

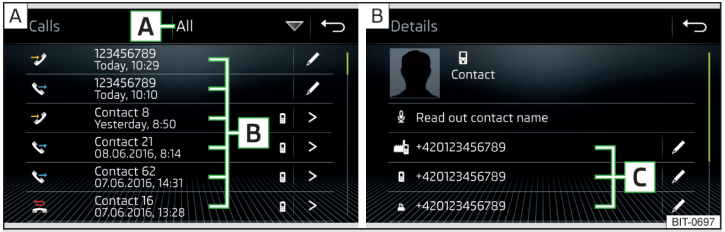


Fig. 184 **Call history / Contact details**

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface and a call list will be displayed » Fig. 184 - A.

The call list can also be displayed during a telephone call.

Functional surfaces

A Setting the display depending on the type of call
- **All** - List of all calls
- **Missed calls / Missed** - List of missed calls
- **Dialled numbers / Dialled** - List of dialled numbers
- **Received calls / Received calls** - list of received calls

B Dial a number from the call list

> Display the contact details

C Select the number in the contact details

Edit the phone number before dialling (not applicable to Infotainment Swing)

Call type symbols

Answered call

Outgoing call

Missed call

Phone call

Depending on the conversation context, the following functions can be carried out.

End dialling / reject incoming call / end call

Accept incoming call / return to held call

Switch on/off ringer

Hold a call

Switch off/on microphone

Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero:

Connect conference call » page 164

Show caller details (if the contact is stored in the list) » page 162

Switch on/off hands-free (call to the telephone / switch to Infotainment)

▶ To switch off the hands-free system, in the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface Tap on **hands-free**during a call.
▶ To switch off the hands-free system, tap on the function surface during a call.

Conference

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

The conference call is a shared call with between three and six participants.

Start a conference call/invite additional participants

› During a call/conference call, carry out the next call.
› **or:** Take the new incoming call by tapping on the function surface.
› To **initiate conference call** or **return to the conference call**, tap on the function surface .

Ongoing conference call

During an ongoing conference call, the call duration is displayed on the screen. Depending on the context, the following functions can be selected.

- Hold a conference call - leave the conference call temporarily (the conference call continues in your absence)
- Return to the held conference call
- Switch off/on microphone
- End conference call
- Display conference call

Conference details

▶ During the ongoing conference call, press the function surface .

A list of other conference participants is displayed. The following functions can be selected depending on the type of telephone.

- Display details of participant
- Talk to a participant separately from the conference call
- End the call to a conference participant

Text messages (SMS)

Main menu

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

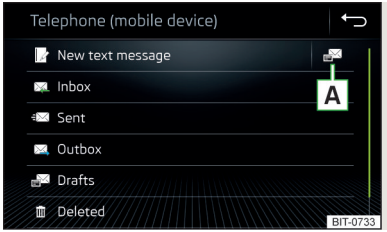


Fig. 185
Main menu text messages

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface and the main menu for text messages will be displayed » Fig. 185.
› If required, select whether the SIM card inserted in the external module or the telephone (applies to Infotainment Columbus) is to be used as the source of the text messages.

Depending on your model of connected telephone, you can perform the following functions.

- A Opening a list of templates for quick answers
- **New text message** - Creating and sending the message
- **Inbox**- Open a list of received messages
- **Sent** - Open a list of sent messages
- **Outbox** - Open a list of messages not sent
- **Drafts**- Open a list of drafts (messages in progress)
- **Deleted**- Open a list of deleted messages
- **Send contact details** - Send contact details (business card) (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- Select source of text messages (applies to Infotainment Columbus)

Display options to adjust the source of text messages (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
If there is a SIM card in the external module with telephone services and is also a phone connected to Infotainment, then for which source this is for after tapping the function surface ✉ From the main menu *Telephone*, a menu of text messages should be displayed automatically.

▶ In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surfaces ⚙ → **Text message settings** → **Standard Account**.
▶ Select the desired menu item.

New text message

Creating and sending the message
› In the main menu of the text messages, tap on function surface ✎ » Fig. 185 *on page 164*.
› Write a text message and confirm. A view of the text message is displayed.
› Tap the function surface ✉ / 👤✉ .
› Select the recipient of the message from the displayed contact list or tap on the ⠿ function surface and enter the telephone number.
› To add additional recipients, tap on the function surface 👤+ / 👤+ .
› To send the text message, tap the function surface ✉ .

Viewing the text message
After opening the view message function, the following functions can be executed.

💬 The text can be read out by the device's generated voice
✉ The text can be stored as a draft
✉ Open a list of templates with the option to replace the recorded text with the selected template
✉ / 👤✉ Open the contact list

The message can be edited, as long as the text range is within the entered view.

Contact list
After the list has been opened the following functions can be executed.

👤 Insert a contact in the recipient list
⠿ Enter the telephone number
↩ Return to view the message

Tap on the **Find** function surface to open a list of available telephone contacts.

After selecting the contact number or entering the telephone number, the recipient list will be displayed in the screen.

Recipient list
The following functions can be executed by tapping on one of the functional surfaces.

👤+ / 👤+ Display contact list with the option of adding/removing additional recipients (tap on the function surface to return to the recipient list ↩)
🗑 Removal of the contact from the recipient list
✉ Sending the message
↩ Return to view the message

Received text message

When you receive a new message, the number of new messages received is displayed next to the function surface ✉ and at the same time the icon in the status bar is ✉ displayed.

› To **open a list of received messages**, go to the *Telephone* main menu and tap on function surface ✉ → ✉ .
› Select a message.

The message content and the following menu is displayed.

💬 The text can be read out by the device's generated voice
... Display a menu with additional options
▶ **Reply with template** - Reply using a template
▶ **Delete current text message** - Distance of displayed text message (applies to Infotainment Columbus, when the SIM card is inserted in the external module or the phone is connected via the Bluetooth® profile RSAP)
▶ **Display numbers** - Recognition of telephone numbers in the message including the contact number (recognised numbers can be dialled directly or edited before dialling, or may be sent to this message)
✉ Forwarding a message with the option to edit the message before sending
✉ Reply to the sender via a message

Hotspot (WLAN) and data connection

Hotspot (WLAN)

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

WLAN can be used to connect to the Internet, to playback audio files in the menu *media* (if the connected external device allows this) or for operating the device using an application in the external device (e.g. ŠKODA Media Command or ŠKODA One App).

The requirement for the WLAN function is that the ignition is switched on. After switching on the ignition, the last-used WLAN connection appears.

It is possible to connect up to 8 external devices to the Infotainment hotspot **and at the same time** to connect Infotainment to the hotspot of other external devices.

If there is a SIM card with activated data services in the external module of Infotainment Columbus or there is a connection to the phone via Bluetooth® profile RSAP, a connection cannot be established to the external device hotspot.

connect an external device to the hotspot (WLAN) infotainment

Switch Infotainment hotspot on / off

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **WLAN** → **Mobile Hotspot** → **Mobile Hotspot**.

Set infotainment hotspot

▶ Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **WLAN** → **Mobile Hotspot** → **Hotspot settings (WLAN)**.
▶ Configure the required menu items from the following menu.

- **Security level:** - Setting the connection security
- **Network key** - Entering the access password
- **SSID: ...** - Name of the Infotainment hotspot
- **Do not send network name (SSID)** -Turn Infotainment hotspot visibility on/off

▶ Tap the function surface **Store** to save the parameters of the Infotainment hotspot.

Connect

▶ Enable the Wi-Fi in the external device and search for any available hotspots.
▶ Select the Infotainment hotspot (if necessary, enter the required password).
▶ Confirm the connection.

Establish secure connection using WPS (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)

▶ Turn on Infotainment in the device.
▶ Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **WLAN** → **Portable hotspot** → **WPS Quick Connection (WPS button)**.
▶ Turn on the option to connect to Infotainment hotspot using WPS.

i Note

If the external device is connected to the Infotainment hotspot (WLAN), then the data connection to the external device cannot be used.

Connect infotainment with the hotspot (WLAN) of the external device

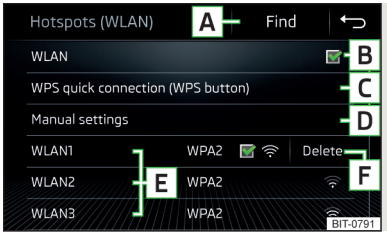


Fig. 186
List of available WLAN networks

› To **Turn WLAN on/off** for the infotainment system, press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → → **WLAN** → **WLAN** → **WLAN**.

Show available hotspots

▶ Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **WLAN** → **WLAN**[1)].

[1)] As long as Infotainment is connected to the hotspot of the external device, its hotspot name is displayed in this function surface.

With WLAN activated, a list of available or previously connected hotspots with the following information and function surfaces is displayed » Fig. 186.

- **A** Searching for available hotspots
- **B** Turn Infotainment WLAN on/off
- **C** Automatic establishment of the secure connection to the hotspot via WPS (Applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
- **D** Manual hotspot search and connect
- **E** Functional surfaces of the available hotspots
- **F** Disconnection from the currently connected hotpot by deleting the Infotainment memory access password (The function surface will only be shown when connected)
- ☑ Current connection
- Wi-Fi strength of the external device

Connect

- ▶ Turn on Infotainment in the device.
- ▶ Show the list of available hotspots, if necessary, update the list by tapping the function surface **Find**.
- ▶ Select the desired hotspot.
- ▶ If the access to the hotspot is password protected, then enter the required password.

Search for connection manually and connect

- ▶ Turn on Infotainment in the device.
- ▶ Display list of available hotspots.
- ▶ Tap on the function surface **Manual settings** and set the required hotspot parameters.
- ▶ Tap the function surface **Connect**.
- ▶ If the parameters for the search are set correctly and the hotspot is available, then the connection will take place.

Establish secure connection using WPS (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)

- ▶ Turn on Infotainment in the device.
- ▶ In the external device, turn on the option to connect to the external device via WPS.
- ▶ Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **WLAN** → **Mobile Hotspot** → **WPS quick connection (WPS button)**.

End connection to the hotspot

- ▶ At the desired hotspot, (WLAN) press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → → **WLAN** → **WLAN** → **Delete**.

Data Connection

Using the data connection, Infotainment can be connected to the Internet. The data connection can be established in one of the following ways.

Data connection via WLAN

› Connect Infotainment to the hotspot of an external device with activated data services » page 166, *Connect infotainment with the hotspot (WLAN) of the external device*.

Data connection using the SIM card in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus)

› Insert a SIM card with activated data services into the external module » page 159, *Use the SIM card in the external module*.

Data connection using rSAP (applies to Infotainment Columbus)

› Using Bluetooth® profile rSAP, connect the infotainment system to a telephone with activated data services » page 161, *rSAP*.

Data connection using CarStick (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)

The prerequisite for the correct function is in Carstick inserted SIM card size **mini** (Standard Size 25x15 mm) with activated data services. The CarstickIP-MENT supports the wireless network using the standard **2G** and **3G**,

To the **connection** proceed as follows.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› In the front USB input » page 85, insert the CarStick with inserted SIM card.
› Wait until the light on the Carstick is permanently illuminated.
› Observe the infotainment screen and if necessary, adjust the required network of data service provider.
› If the SIM card is protected by a PIN code, then the PIN code of the SIM card must be entered.
› Confirm the entered PIN code.

or

› If you would like to save the entered PIN code in the device memory, then press the function key Tap the PIN-code is stored and simultaneously confirmed.

The display of the signal strength, connection type and a possible data transfer occurs in the status bar by the symbol left next to the time.

The parameters of the telephone service provider network can be configured » page 130.

CAUTION

If you insert an incorrectly sized SIM card, there is a risk of damage to the CarStick device.

Note

The Internet connection may be chargeable based on the terms and conditions of your data provider.

SmartLink

Introductory information

Introduction to the subject

Fig. 187
Information on SmartLink on the ŠKODA websites

Read in the QR code» Fig. 187**or**enter the following address in the web browser to open the website with information on the SmartLink system.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity-smartlink

SmartLink offers the option to display certified applications on an external device equipped with a USB device on the Infotainment screen and to operate them.

SmartLink supports the following communication systems.

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink®

Using the applications in the connected external device, you can use navigation to make a call and to listen to music.

For reasons of safety, the operation of some applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Depending on the model of the connected external device, some applications can be started using voice activation, via the Infotainment screen, using the operating elements on Infotainment, or using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

To activate voice control for the connected external device, hold the VOICE or APP/ button or hold button on the multifunction steering wheel.

CAUTION

To establish the connection, it is necessary that the date and time in Infotainment are set correctly. If the date and time setting is based on the GPS signal, then problems may arise with establishing a connection with a poor GPS signal reception.

Note

- During the connection process, information messages may be displayed on the Infotainment screen, and in the phone display. These messages must be observed and confirmed if necessary (e.g. Release of data transfer, enabling the contact import, release of text messages).
- We recommend that you use extension cords from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- With some connected devices, it is necessary that the connected external device is "unlocked" over the entire duration of the connection for trouble-free functioning of the SmartLink function.

Main menu

Fig. 188 **Main menu: No connection / example of an active connection**

› To **display** the SmartLink main menu, press the APP or APP/ button.

Main menu - Functional surfaces

A Active connection
ⓘ Display of information about SmartLink
⊗ Disconnection
⚙ Settings of the SmartLink menu » page 134 or » page 139

Connection set-up

- Connect the external device to the USB input using a connecting cable » page 85.
- In the SmartLink main menu, choose the connected external device and the type of communication system if necessary » Fig. 188 - A.

Disconnection

- To end the connection, tap on the function surface in the main menu SmartLink ⊗ - » Fig. 188 B.
- **or**: Disconnect the cable from the USB input.

If the connection was ended by tapping on the function surface ⊗ in the SmartLink main menu, the connection needs to be re-established when the external device is connected again.

If the connection was terminated by disconnecting the cable from the USB port, then the last active connection is shown in the main menu when the external device is reconnected.

Android Auto

Introduction to the subject

The Android Auto- connection can be set up under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ Infotainment is switched on.
✓ The external device to be connected is switched on.

Some applications require the data connection in the connected external device to be switched on.

If Infotainment is connected to an external device via Android Auto then all the phones currently connected, as well as the Bluetooth® players are disconnected.

The external device to be connected will automatically establish a telephone connection via Bluetooth® as a main phone. Connecting an additional telephone and using telephone services of the SIM card in the external module are not possible for the duration of the connection. A possible data connection using the SIM card inserted in the external module remains operational » page 167.

An external device connected using Android Auto cannot be used as an audio source in the menu *Media*.

If route guidance is taking place at this moment in Infotainment, then there is the option to start the route guidance in the Android Auto application. This is also true reciprocally.

A list of devices and applications that the Android Autoconnection supports can be found on the Google websites. Functionality is not guaranteed outside of the supported regions.

main menu

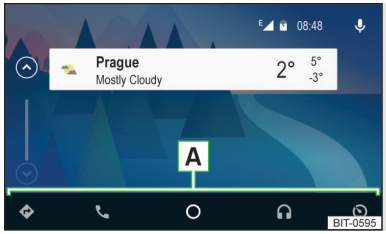


Fig. 189
Android Auto: Main menu

Main menu - function areas and information in the area A

- Navigation applications
- Telephone applications
- Overview regarding current applications, telephone calls, accepted text messages, tasks in the working directory, weather or similar.
- Music applications
- Display of other available applications as well as the option of returning to the SmartLink main menu

Start the application

▶ Tap on the function surface of the desired application to launch the application.

The symbol appears next to the function surface in the area A ▽, then, by tapping on this function surface again, a list of new applications is displayed.

Apple CarPlay

Introduction to the subject

The Apple CarPlay connection can be set up under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ Infotainment is switched on.
✓ The external device to be connected is switched on.
✓ The data connection is turned on in the device to be connected.
✓ Voice control is turned on in the device to be connected.

If Infotainment is connected to an external device via Apple CarPlay then the use of the Bluetooth® connection is not possible and the *Telephone* menu is not available. A possible data connection via the SIM card remains operational » page 167.

A device connected using Apple CarPlay cannot be used as an audio source in the menu *Media*.

If route guidance is taking place at this moment using Infotainment, then this is terminated by starting the route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application. This is also true reciprocally.

A list of devices and applications that support the Apple CarPlayconnection can be found on the Apple websites. Functionality is not guaranteed outside of the supported regions.

main menu

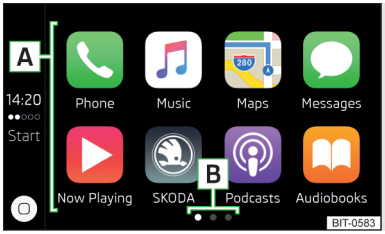


Fig. 190
Apple CarPlay: Main menu

Main menu - function surfaces and information

- A List of available applications
- B Other pages with applications (display the next page by running your finger sideways across the screen)
- Depending on how long the function surface is pressed for:
  - ▶ **Tap** - Return to main menu Apple Carplay
  - ▶ **Hold** - Switching on voice control

Start the application

▶ In the Apple CarPlay main menu connection select the desired application in the field A » Fig. 190.

MirrorLink®

Introduction to the subject

Fig. 191
Information about MirrorLink® on the ŠKODA websites

The MirrorLink®- connection can be set up under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ Infotainment is switched on.
✓ The external device to be connected is switched on.

Some applications require the data connection in the connected external device to be switched on.

If you want to use the menu *Telephone*, then before establishing the MirrorLink® connection with the telephone then connect Infotainment first via Bluetooth®.

An external device connected using MirrorLink® cannot be used as an audio source in the *Media* menu.

If route guidance is taking place at this moment using Infotainment, then this is not terminated by starting the route guidance in the MirrorLink®- application.

Read in the QR code» Fig. 191**or**enter the following address in the web browser to open the website with information on the supported MirrorLink ® system.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity

main menu

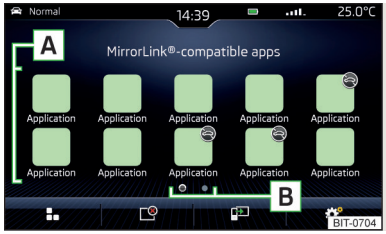


Fig. 192
MirrorLink®: Main menu

Main menu - function surfaces and information

- Return to SmartLink main menu » page 169
- Displays a list of running applications with the ability to terminate them
- Display the application last shown (as long as the application is running)/ show the display content of the connected external device
- Settings of the SmartLink menu » page 134 or » page 139
- A List of applications
- B Other pages with applications (by performing a finger movement sideways across the screen, other pages with applications are displayed)
- Application is not certified for use while driving

Operation

Start the application

▶ In the Mirrorlink® connection main menu, select the desired application in the field A » Fig. 192 *on page 171*.

The application starts and the following function surfaces are displayed.

/ Display of functional areas below / above (does not apply to the infotainment Swing)

< / > / ∨ / ∧ Move the functional surfaces in the desired corner of the screen (applies to the infotainment Swing)

Return to MirrorLink® main menu

Show/hide function surfaces (applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero)

▶ Press the control knob ⊙ .

Display of the running application

▶ In the main menu of the MirrorLink®- connection, press the function surface » Fig. 192 *on page 171* The last displayed application is displayed.

If you want to display a different application, then the function surface of the desired application must be tapped in the main menu of the MirrorLink®connection **A** » Fig. 192 *on page 171*.

Ending the current application

▶ Tap the function surface → .

▶ Press the function surface of the desired application with the symbol ⊗ .

By tapping the function surface **Close all**, all running applications are closed.

function problems

If problems occur with the MirrorLink ®connection, then one of the following messages may occur on the screen.

- **Error: Transfer**- Disconnect the external device and reconnect
- **MirrorLink® audio is not available.** - Disconnect the external device and reconnect
- **MirrorLink® availability on this mobile device is restricted.** Using of the connected device is not possible while driving
- **The mobile device is locked. Please unlock the mobile device to use MirrorLink®** – "unlock" the connected external device
- **Unable to start app or app not working.** - Disconnect the external device and reconnect

application ŠKODA One App

Introductory information

Fig. 193
Information on the use ŠKODA One App to ŠKODA websites

A mobile phone connected via Wi-Fi to the infotainment allows the ŠKODA One App to process and analyse journey data.

The ŠKODA One App is available from the App Store and Google Play.

Read in the QR code» Fig. 193**or**enter the following address in the web browser to open the website with information on the SmartLink system.

http://go.skoda.eu/infotainment

For the full functionality of the ŠKODA One App, data transmission of external devices must be switched on in the infotainment.

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

▶ To **activate data transfer from external devices**, press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → → **Mobile device data transfer** → **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA Apps**.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

▶ To **activate data from external devices**, press the SETUP button, then tap on function surface → **Mobile device data transfer**.

Note

Some features of the application may not be available in all countries, there may possibly exist a functional impairment while driving » page 117, *Mobile phones and applications*,

Connecting to Infotainment

The mobile phone can be connected to the infotainment using the function SmartLink or via Wi-Fi.

Connection by SmartLink

› Switch on the ignition.

› The connection means SmartLink (e.g.. MirrorLink®) build up » page 168,

› In the list of available applications, the application ŠKODA One App choose.

Depending on the model of the connected external device, some applications can be started using voice activation, via the Infotainment screen, using the operating elements on Infotainment, or using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

Once connected, the contents of the application in the infotainment screen may be displayed. ▶

A possible connection of the mobile phone to the Infotainment via Wi-Fi will be terminated after the connection using SmartLink.

Navigation menu (Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)

› Switch on the ignition.
› Establish the Wi-Fi connection» page 166.
› In the tablet, start the application ŠKODA Media Command.

Disconnection

The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› The connection in the application ŠKODA One App break up.
› The mobile phone from the USB input disconnect or terminate the Wi-Fi connection.

Navigation

Introductory information

Navigation - function sequence

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

Route guidance is started as follows.

› Search for/ enter a new destination **or** Select one of the stored destinations.
› Confirm the route calculation in the destination details or if necessary, adjust the route options.
› Select the preferred route type, if this is requested by Infotainment.

A route calculation occurs and route guidance starts.

The route guidance is provided by graphical driving recommendations and nav. announcements.

The is an option to add additional destinations during route guidance, or to adapt the route.

If a traffic radio station is available, information concerning traffic delays is evaluated by Infotainment and, if necessary, an alternative route is offered.

If you deviate from the route, then a new route calculation is carried out.

GPS satellite signal

Infotainment uses the GPS (Global Positioning System) satellite signal for route guidance.

Outside the range of the GPS satellite signal (e.g. in dense vegetation, in tunnels, parking garages, etc.), Infotainment navigates only with restrictions using vehicle sensors.

The unit offers the possibility to show in the split screen display the following **Position** » Fig. 197 *on page 176* information about the current geographical position of the vehicle and the satellite signal.

- Geographical longitude
- Geographical latitude
- Elevation
- Number of received/available satellites

If no GPS satellite signal is available, no values are displayed.

Navigation data

Navigation data source Columbus
The navigation data is stored in the Infotainment memory.

Navigation data source Amundsen
The navigation data is stored on an **Original** SD Card.

In order to ensure the function of the navigation, the Original SD card, with the navigation data, must be inserted in the respective slot in the external module » page 120.

If the original SD card is damaged or lost, a new original SD card can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

With a **Non-original** SD Card, navigation does **not work**.

Determining the version of the navigation data
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface ⚙ Tap→ **Version information** .

Update navigation data
We recommend that you update the navigation data on a regular basis (e.g. Due to newly developed roads and changed traffic signs).

The information on updating the navigation data is to be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or on the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Update navigation data online
When activated online services infotainment online » page 116 can the navigation data for the infotainment **Columbus** Updating online » page 174, *Navigation data and POI categories Import / Update online*,

If an update of the navigation data for the current vehicle position or the destination of the route is available, which in this regard from a Infotainment **automatic** Note issued and offered an upgrade option.

An online update of navigation data is also **manually** feasible as follows.

▶ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface ⚙ → **version information** → ▼ → **Update (online)** → **Card update**.
▶ The Select / the desired country / region.
▶ Tap on the function surface **Retrieve**.

During the upgrade process, infotainment is usable without limitation.

To complete the update of the navigation data, is the ignition for at least. Off 30 min.

Navigation data and POI categories Import / Update online

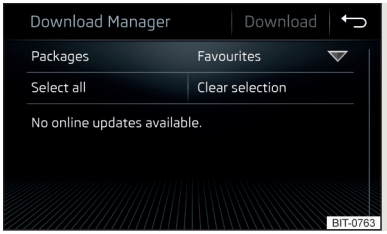


Fig. 194
Menu for importing / updating the navigation data and POI categories

When activated online services infotainment online » page 116 it is possible Navigation data download / update (applies to the infotainment Columbus) or POI categories download.

▶ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface ⚙ → **version information** → **Update (online)** → **Recall** Tap.

or

▶ Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → .

There is a menu for importing / updating the navigation data and POI categories displayed » Fig. 194,

▶ Tap the function surface ▼ Tap and select one of the following menus, depending on the context.

- **All** - Import all the available navigation data
- **Favourites** - Import of navigation data preferably countries / regions (applies to the infotainment Columbus)
- **My POIs (online services)** - Import of the POI category created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website » page 182
- **Map update** - Import of the navigation data available for the respective countries/regions (applies to Infotainment Columbus) » page 174, *Update navigation data online*

▶ Tap on function surface **Retrieve** and confirm the deletion.

During the upgrade process, infotainment is usable without limitation.

Main menu

Fig. 195
Navigation: Main menu

› To **display**, press the NAV button.
› **or**: Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ◁ .

Description of the function surfaces A » Fig. 195

- Context-dependent:
  Route guidance is deactivated - Search / enter a new destination
  Route guidance is enabled - The following menu is displayed:
  - **Route details** - Displays the route details » page 189
  - **Change route in map** - Displays a menu for the route change in the map (applies to Infotainment Columbus) » page 190
  - **Congestion ahead** - Manually adjusts traffic conditions » page 195
  - **Enter dest.** - Search / enter a new destination / stopover » page 177
  - **Stop route guidance** - Stops route guidance » page 189
- The following menu is displayed:
  - **Store current position** - Store the current vehicle position as a flagged destination » page 180
  - **Routes** - Display the list of saved routes » page 191
  - **Destinations** - Display the list of stored destinations » page 180
  - **Last destinations** - Display the list of recent destinations to which route guidance was carried out » page 180
  - **Home address** - Route guidance to your home address » page 181
- / / Search for POIs in categories , and P
- Map presentation options » page 184
- / Operation of **Media/Radio** playback
- *Navigation* settings » page 134

Map

Fig. 196
Card description

The following information and function surfaces can be displayed in the map. » Fig. 196

- A Vehicle position
- B Route
- C Function surfaces for card use » page 183
- D Function surface of the POI
- E Function surface for the POI list
- F Function surface for displaying a traffic incident » page 195
- G Information on the maximum permitted speed
- Destination position
- Intermediate destination position
- Destination position **Home address**
- Favourite position

Information in the status line

- Street name / street number of the current vehicle position
- Distance to destination
- Route to the stopover
- Estimated travelling time to the destination
- Estimated travel time to the stopover
- Estimated time of arrival at destination / stopover

additional window

Fig. 197
Split screen

› To **switch on/off** in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Split screen**.
› To **select content** of the additional window A » Fig. 197 tap the function surface ▼ Tap and select one of the following menus, depending on the context.

- **Audio** - Operation of **Radio/Media** playback
- **Compass** - Displays the current vehicle location in relation to the compass directions
- **Freq. Routes** - Display the three most frequently travelled routes (if route guidance is disabled) » page 189
- **Manoeuvre** - Displays graphical driving recommendations (if route guidance is enabled) » page 188
- **Position** - Displays the geographical coordinates of the current vehicle location
- **Map** - Displays the preview map (applies to Infotainment Columbus) » page 186

Online map Google Earth™

Introduction to the subject

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

To display the Google Earth™ Card The following conditions must be met.

✓ The online services infotainment online are activated » page 116,
✓ The data connection is established, the Internet is » page 167,
✓ The signal from the data service provider network for the data connection is available.

Note

- In the Google Earth™ Display is possible no insertion of the symbols of the POI categories.
- When driving through a tunnel changes the 3D representation of the Google Earth™ Card automatically in the 2D display.
- The speed of Google Earth™ Indicator depends on the Internet connection speed.

Google Earth™ online map

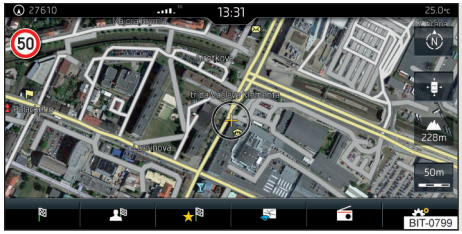


Fig. 198
Google Earth™ map

In the Google Earth™ map, the map is represented based on the images downloaded from the Internet.

› To **display**, go to the *Navigation* main menu and tap on function surface → **Google Earth™**.

The map and symbol display in the Google Earth™ map is dependent on the provider, Google, Inc.

Search for destination and enter

Search POI destination /

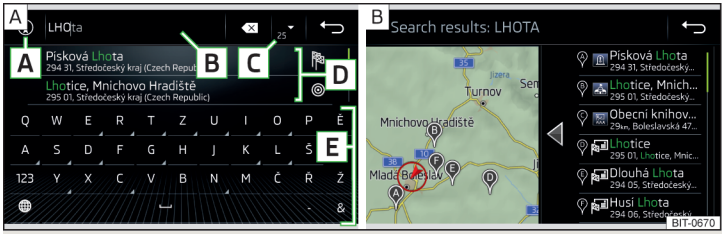


Fig. 199 **Destination search: Main menu / list of visited destinations**

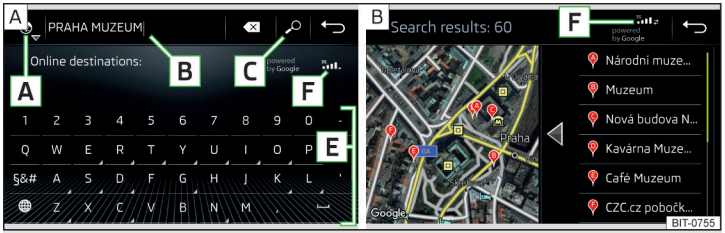


Fig. 200 **Find destination online: Main menu / list of visited destinations**

The feature allows a full text search of locations or points of interest (POI) by entering keywords.

Display main menu

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface .

› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → Tap **Enter dest.**

or

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → .

› If no menu is displayed for destination search, but a display for destination input via the address or the destination entry in the map, then tap on the function surface / → **Find**.

Search destination in the navigation data

› The function surface A » Fig. 199 → .

› In the entry line, enter the POI name or the POI category (POI),**If required** the place and street name or house number / postal code.

› To display the visited destinations, the function surface C » Fig. 199 .

Find Target online

› The function surface A » Fig. 200 → .

› In the entry line, enter the POI name or the POI category (POI),**If required** the place and street name or house number / postal code.

› To display the visited destinations, the function surface C » Fig. 200 .

Description of the functional surfaces » Fig. 199 or. » Fig. 200

A Choice of search
- Searching for a destination or POI (point of interest) by name
- Search for a point along the route (only works with active route guidance)
- Searching for a destination near the entered destination (after selection in destination details » page 187)
- Online POI search

B Input line

C Depending on whether a mark is in the entry line, the following menu is displayed.
- View a list of visited locations corresponding to the entered characters » Fig. 199 - B
- View a list of locations visited online, corresponding to the entered characters » Fig. 200 - B
- / - Choose the type of destination search / destination entry (no character is entered)
  - **Find** - Destination / POI search » Fig. 199
  - **Address** - Enter destination via the address » page 178, *Enter destination using the address*
  - **On map**- Enter destination via the map point / using the GPS coordinates » page 178

D List of last destinations (no character is entered) / List of visited destinations

E Alphanumeric keypad
F Signal strength of the data services and ongoing data transmission

List of visited destinations
In the list of visited destinations, there is a maximum of 6 destinations shown, each is identified with a letter.

Destinations visited in the navigation data.
Destinations visited online.

Enter destination using the address

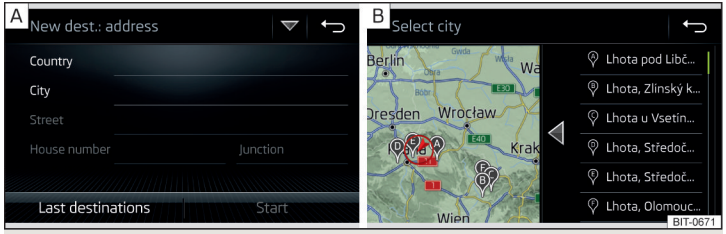


Fig. 201 **Enter destination using the address: Main menu / list of visited locations**

Display main menu
› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface .
› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → Tap **Enter dest.**
› If the destination entry menu » Fig. 201 - A is not shown using the address, then tap on the function surface / → **Address**.

Enter dest.
› Enter the destination address and then confirm.

Relevant names (e.g. Place/street names) are offered in the entry line during entry, depending on the context. Previously entered names are offered on a preferential basis.

The location of the destination offered, which is specified in the entry line in parentheses, can be displayed in the map by tapping the function surface**Map**.

List of locations visited
There is a possibility that a map with a list of places of the same name will be displayed during entry» Fig. 201 - B.

The list of places visited can also be called up during address entry by pressing the function surface .

In the list of visited locations, there is a maximum of 6 locations shown, marked with a letter. These places are then marked with the symbol in the map and a letter, which coincides with the character in the list of visited locations.

If several places were visited, then the list can be scrolled through by turning the controller (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus) or moving the slider.

Note
▪ When entering a street name, there is an option of entering the centre of a given place as a destination instead of a street name, by tapping on function surface **Centre**.
▪ After entering the street name, the house number or intersection can be entered using the name / number of the intersecting road.

Enter destination on the map and using GPS coordinates

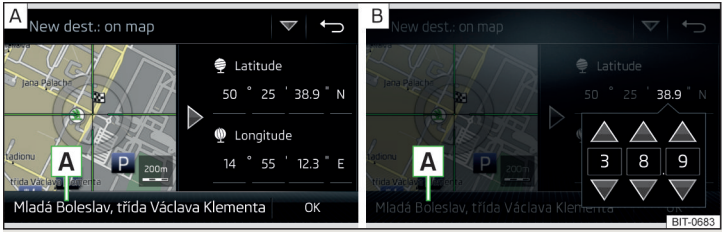


Fig. 202 **Enter destination: via the map point / using GPS coordinates**

Show map
› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface .
› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → Tap **Enter dest.**
› Then tap the function surface / and choose the menu item **On map**.

Enter destination via the point

› While entering a destination into the map, the map scale displayed can be changed manually » page 185, *Types of manual scale change*.
› By sliding the screen move the desired destination into the cross-hair » Fig. 202 - A.
› Confirm the destination entry by tapping the function surface OK .

through via coordinates

› The function surface with the desired GPS value coordinates for latitude and longitude - » Fig. 202 B.
› Set the desired value and the destination input by pressing the function surface OK .

If information is available about the point entered in the navigation data, then these will be displayed instead of the GPS coordinates (e.g. address A » Fig. 202).

seek gas station, restaurant or car park

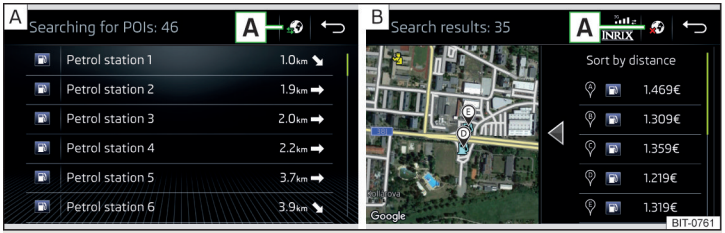


Fig. 203 **List of filling stations visited: in the navigation data/online**

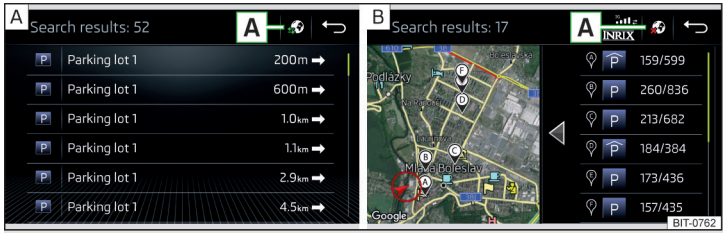


Fig. 204 **List of car parks visited: in the navigation data/online**

The infotainment system enables quick searching for petrol stations, restaurants, or parking.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface / or. ☆ .
› The function surface of the desired category button.

or

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → → or. P .

Search destination in the navigation data

Depending on the context below a list be examined POIs in the selected category is displayed.

- **No route guidance is taking place** - The nearest destinations in a radius of 200 km from the current vehicle position are displayed.
- **Route guidance is taking place** - Destinations on the route or near the route are displayed.

Find Target online

When activated online services infotainment online » page 116 is displayed within the current vehicle position, regardless of whether or not a route guidance is a list be examined POIs in the selected category.

After performing destination search, it is possible to switch between the list of visited in the navigation data or online goals by one of the following functional areas on the position A » Fig. 203 or. » Fig. 204 is tapped.

Displays the list of destinations visited in the navigation data.
Displays list of last destinations

Note

With activated function → **Fuel options** → **Select preferred fuel station** the preferred fuel stations are displayed in the first three positions during the fuel station search.

Last destinations

List of last destinations

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Last destinations**.

Details of the last destination (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus)

› In the *Navigation* main menu, press the NAV button.

If route guide is disabled, then the details of the last destination are displayed to where the route guidance was carried out. **If route guidance is enabled**, Then the details of the final destinations are displayed.

Last destinations menu for destination / POI search

In the menu for finding destinations in D » Fig. 199 *on page 177*, a short list of the most recent destinations is displayed.

Function surfaces in the list of last destinations

Search - Destination search by name (the function surface is displayed with more than 5 entries available)

> - Display the details of the selected destination » page 187

target memory

Fig. 205 **Select list of stored destinations / categories of saved destinations**

List of stored destinations

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Destinations**.

› Tap the function surface ▼ » Fig. 205 - A tap and choose and one of the following saved destination categories » Fig. 205 - B.

All saved destinations
- - Flagged destination (vehicle position at the time of storage)
- - Stored destination (manually saved destination / in vCard format imported destination)
- - Favourite (destination with additional favourite property)

Favourites (the favourite location is shown on the map by the ★ symbol).

Telephone contact addresses of the connected phone or the inserted SIM card.

In user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal or in the application ŠKODA Connect objectives created » page 183

Function surfaces in the list of stored destinations

Search - Destination search by name (the function surface is displayed if there are several entries on the next page of the list)

> - Display of the destination details » page 187

Store target

- In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Last destinations**.
- Tap the function surface > Tap on the desired destination, the destination details are displayed.
- Tap on the function surface **Store** .
- Rename the destination if necessary and confirm storage.

“Flagged destination” Save (current vehicle position)

- In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Store current position**.
- By then tapping on function surface **Rename**, you can rename the flagged destination and store it as a destination in the dest. memory.

By storing the next flagged destination, the last flagged destination will be overwritten. To maintain the existing flagged destination, this destination must be stored in the Infotainment memory.

Save as a favourite / cancel

It is not possible to store a contact, a vCard or target image as a favourite.

- In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Destinations**.
- Tap the function surface ▼ and select the desired group.
- Show the destination details by tapping on the function surface > at the desired destination.

▶ Tap the function surface **Edit** .
▶ Tap the function surface **Favourite**.

Delete destination
▶ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Destinations**.
▶ Tap the function surface ▼ and select the desired group.
▶ Show the destination details by tapping on the function surface > at the desired destination.
▶ Tap the function surface **Edit** .
▶ Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Home address

Define home address
When your home address is not entered, then proceed as follows.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Home address**.
› Defining the home address using the current vehicle position or by entering the address.

Change the home address
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Manage memory** → **Define home address**.
› Tap the function surface **Edit** .
› Edit the home address or set one up using the current vehicle position or by entering the address.

Delete home address
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete user data** → **Home address**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Import your own goals

Introduction to the subject

Fig. 206
MyDestination application on the ŠKODA websites

Fig. 207
Websites ŠKODA Connect

In this chapter, destinations are described which can be imported into the Infotainment memory.

The own objectives by means of ŠKODA-Application “MyDestination”, In the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal or in the application ŠKODA Connect to be created.

By reading the QR code » Fig. 206 **or** after typing the following address in the web browser, more information on the “MyDestination”application is displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/my-destination

Access to the ŠKODA Connect Portal is the website ŠKODA Connect refer to. This is carried out by reading the QR code » Fig. 207 **or** after entering the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity

Goals in vCard format

In the Infotainment memory, a custom destination can be imported in the vCard format (*.vcf) from an SD card or a USB source.

Import

› Insert the SD card into the external module or connect a USB source with the file of the custom destination.
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Manage memory** → **Import destinations (SD/USB)**.
› Select the source and confirm the import.

Route guidance

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Destinations** → → .
› Search for and select the desired imported destination.

Delete own destination

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Destinations** → → .
› Tap the function surface > Tap on the desired own destination.
› In the destination details, tap the function surface **Edit** → **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

In the application “MyDestination” created POI categories

Import / update

› Insert the SD card into the external module or connect a USB source with the POI categories.
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Manage memory**→ **Update "My POIs" (SD/USB)** Tap.

If there is already the same POI category name in the Infotainment memory, then it will be overwritten during the import.

Show POIs in the map

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** → **My points of interest (Personal POI)**.
› Select the desired POI category.

The insertion of the symbols of the POI categories in the Google Earth™Card is not possible.

Guidance to an online destination

› Tip on the traffic obstruction icon in the map.

There are details of the selected target appears » page 187,

Clear all own POI categories

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface Tap on→ **Manage memory** → **Delete my POIs** → Delete.
› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

In user profile “ŠKODA Connect Portal” created POI categories

The in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal started own POI categories can be imported into the infotainment memory.

The prerequisite for importing a POI category are the activated services infotainment online » page 116,

Import POI categories

In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **version information** → **Update (online)** Tap.

or

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → .

There is a menu for importing / updating the navigation data and POI categories displayed » Fig. 194 *on page 174*,

› Tap the function surface → **My POIs (online services)** → **Retrieve**.

Are new POI categories available, their number and the file size is displayed on the Infotainment.

› Tap the function surface **Start**to start route guidance.
› To complete the import, the function surface **Next** Tap and confirm the import.

Show POIs in the map

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** → **My points of interest (Personal POI)**.
› Select the desired POI category.

The insertion of the symbols of the POI categories in the Google Earth™Card is not possible.

Route guidance to a destination of imported POI category

› Tip on the traffic obstruction icon in the map.

There are details of the selected target appears » page 187,

Clear all own POI categories

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface Tap on→ **Manage memory** → **Delete my POIs** → Delete.

› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

In user profile “ŠKODA Connect Portal” objectives created

The in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal or in the application ŠKODA Connect drawn objects can be imported to the infotainment memory.

The prerequisite for importing the goals are enabled services infotainment online » page 116,

import goals

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Destinations** → → .

or

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → .

› Tap on the function surface **Store** .

› Are new targets available, then confirm the import.

If the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal or in the application ŠKODA Connect creates an object and sent to the infotainment, after switching on the ignition in the infotainment screen displays a message regarding a new destination with the option to import this displayed.

Guidance to an online destination

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Destinations** → → .

› In the list of online dests to visit and select the desired destination.

Delete Online dests

› to delete **all** Online destinations in the main menu *navigation* the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete User Data** → **Online dests** Tap.

› To delete **one** online destination, go to the *navigation* main menu and tap on function surface → **Destinations** → → → > → **Edit** → **Delete**.

Image with GPS coordinates

Fig. 208
Image with GPS coordinates

Infotainment enables guidance to the GPScoordinate data stored in the image.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface **Images**.

› Select the connected source and open the image with GPS coordinates.

› Tap the function surface » Fig. 208 in the image, a menu opens with the option to start route guidance.

The image can be obtained from an external device in which GPS coordinates are stored during image creation. If necessary, this can be created in the “MyDestination” application and imported» Fig. 206 *on page 181*.

Map

Tap map point

Fig. 209
Menu after tapping the map point

By tapping the map in the Main Menu *Navigation* the symbol and a menu with the following menu items appear (depending on the context) » Fig. 209.

A Display the details of the selected item (e.g. Address)

B Display the POI details/display the POI list (function surface)

Start route guidance to the selected point

Paste the selected point as the next destination in the current route guidance

Start route guidance to the favourite

Start route guidance to the home address

Destination search in the vicinity of the selected point » page 177

C Define the starting point for demo mode (if it is turned on) » page 188

Show POIs in the map

▶ To switch on/off the display in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface → **POIs**.

▶ To select to display POIs in the main menu *Navigation* tap on the function surface Tap on→ **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** and select the desired categories (maximum of 10).

Options for map display

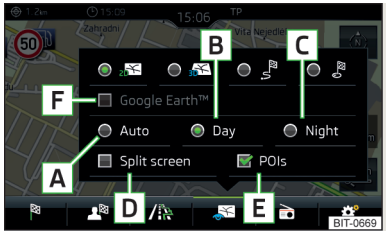


Fig. 210
Map options

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface .

The following function surfaces are displayed » Fig. 210.

2D - Two-dimensional map display

3D - Three-dimensional map display

Display of the route from the current vehicle location to the destination

Presentation of the destination or the next interim destination in the map (depending on the menu item setting) → **Advanced settings** → **Status line:**)

A Automatic map display in day or night mode (depending on the currently active vehicle lighting)

B Daytime map display

C Night-time map display

D Switching on / off of the split screen display » page 176

E Switching on/ off of the selected POI categories display » page 183, *Tap map point*

F Turn on / off the display of Google Earth™-Online Card » page 176

If the map scale of the 2D Map or 3D Map is greater than 10 km (5 miles), then the map is automatically displayed as 2D and aligned in the direction of north. If the scale is increased beyond this value, then the map is switched back to the original representation.

Map scale

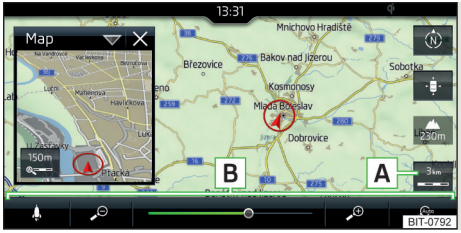


Fig. 211
Infotainment Columbus: Function surfaces for changing the map scale

Fig. 212 **Infotainment Amundsen: Function surfaces for changing the map scale**

It is possible to change the map scale manually or to turn on the automatic change of scale.

› Tap on function surface A » Fig. 211 or » Fig. 212.

In area B » Fig. 211 or » Fig. 212, the function surfaces for changing the map scale are displayed.

Types of manual scale change

▶ Touch the screen with two fingers and pull them apart or close them together.

▶ Tap on function surface A and set the desired scale with the slider or using the function surfaces / » Fig. 211 (applies to Infotainment Columbus)

▶ Turn the control knob (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus)

Switch on/off the automatic change of scale

If the automatic scale is active, the map scale will change automatically depending on the type of roads travelled (motorway - smaller map scale / town larger map scale) and from the manoeuvre to be carried out.

▶ To **switch on** the automatic scale change, go to the *Navigation* main menu and tap on function surface → .

The function surface is highlighted in green.

The automatic scale is only active as long as the map is centred on the vehicle position (the function surface or. is hidden).

▶ To **switch off** the automatic scale change, go to the *Navigation* main menu and tap on function surface → .

The function surface is highlighted in white.

The turning off occurs likewise when the map is moved or the map scale is changed manually.

Map view in reduced scale

▶ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface A → .

The map scale is reduced for a few seconds and then restored.

Change map orientation

Fig. 213
Change the map orientation

Changing map orientation is possible under the following conditions.

✓ The map is in the 2D display.

✓ The map is centred (the function surface / is hidden).

✓ The map scale is max. 10 km away.

With a larger map scale than 10 km, the map is automatically oriented towards north.

A change of map orientation is only possible in the 2D display when the map is centred on the vehicle position (the function surface or. is hidden » page 186, *Map alignment*).

With a larger map scale than 10 km, the map is automatically oriented towards north.

› To **change the map orientation**, go to the *Navigation* main menu and tap on function surface [1] A » Fig. 213.

The map is oriented to the north

The symbol the vehicle position rotates, the map and the Polar Star Symbol [1] do not rotate.

Map oriented to the direction of travel

The map and the Polar Star Symbol [1] rotate, the symbol of the vehicle position does not rotate.

[1] The letter inside the symbol is dependent on the chosen Infotainment language.

Map alignment

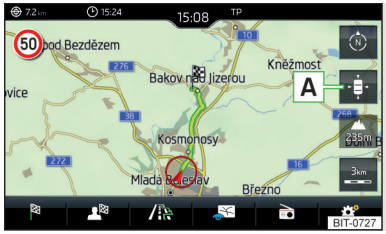


Fig. 214
Map centring

The moved map can be centred/aligned to the vehicle, destination or route position.

On the map within function surface A » Fig. 214, the following symbols are displayed, depending on the map display.

	Aligning to the vehicle position (in the 2D or 3D map display)
	Alignment to the destination position (in the destination position display)
	Centring and displaying the entire route (in the route display)

Options for map display in the split screen

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

Fig. 215 **Map in split screen**

› In the split screen, tap on function surface A » Fig. 215.

Depending on the context, some of the following function surfaces will be displayed in area B.

- Map display with the route from the current vehicle location to the destination
- Change the map orientation[1)]
- 2D - Two-dimensional map display
- 3D - Three-dimensional map display
- Switch on/off the automatic change of scale

Road sign display

Infotainment offers the option of displaying the traffic signs stored in the navigation data or detected by the front camera during guidance on the Infotainment screen G » Fig. 196 *on page 175*.

› To **switch on/off** the road sign display in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Map** → **Show road signs**.

For some vehicles it is possible to set an **alert when exceeding the permitted** speed limited set by a **road sign**.

› Press the CAR button, then tap on function surface → **Driver assistance** → **Speed warning:**.

For **trailer towing**, we recommend that you activate recognition of road signs relevant to trailers.

› Press the CAR button, then tap on function surface → **Driver assistance** → **Show road signs relevant to trailers**.

Route guidance

Introduction to the subject

A **route** is created by starting route guidance to a destination. Additional **intermediate destinations** can be added to the route.

[1)] The letter inside the symbol is dependent on the chosen Infotainment language.

The route guidance takes place as follows

- Through graphical driving instructions on the Infotainment screen and in the display of the instrument cluster.
- With nav. announcements.

Infotainment tries to allow for continued guidance even if the navigation data is incomplete or there is no data at all for the given area.

The route is recalculated each time if you ignore driving recommendations or change the route.

CAUTION

The nav. announcements provided may vary from the actual situations, e.g. due to out-of-date navigation data.

Destination details

Fig. 216 **Details of the destination visited in the navigation data/online**

The following menu items and information are displayed in the destination details » Fig. 216.

- **A** Area with function surfaces
- **B** Detailed destination information
- **C** Destination position in the map
- **D** Detailed target information (if available)
- **E** Signal strength of the data services and ongoing data transmission

Display the destination details

The destination details can be displayed in one of the following ways.

- While entering a destination.
- By tapping on the function surface > in the destination list.
- By pressing the NAV button in the *Navigation* main menu (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus) - the details of the last destination are displayed.

Function surfaces

Using function surfaces in the field **A** the following functions can be performed, depending on the context.

- Start / stop route guidance.
- Searching for a nearby destination » page 177.
- Setting route options.
- Store destination.
- Edit destination (the object can be deleted, renamed or saved).
- Dial the POI phone number (if Infotainment is connected to a phone» page 157, *Pairing and connecting*).

Route calculation and start route guidance

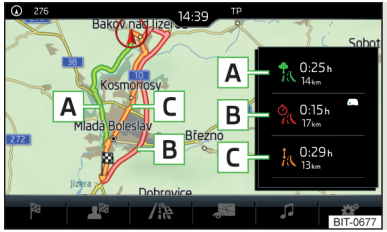


Fig. 217
Alternative routes

Route calculation is done on the basis of the set route options. The route options can be set: → **Route options**.

Alternative routes

With selection of alternative routes turned on, the following menu is displayed after the calculation of a new route » Fig. 217.

- **A** Calculate the most economical route with shortest travelling time and distance travelled – the route is highlighted green
- **B** Calculate the fastest route to the destination, even if a detour is necessary - the route is highlighted in red
- **C** Calculate the shortest route to the destination, even if a longer travelling time is required - the route is highlighted in orange

In the function surfaces of the alternative routes, information on the route length and the estimated travel time and the following symbols are displayed (applies to Infotainment Columbus).

- Use of a toll motorway
- Use of a train / ferry
- Using a toll tunnel
- Use of a toll road
- Using a vignette duty highway

It is possible to select an already calculated alternative route before the calculation of the remaining routes is completed.

Selecting the type of route will start the route guidance.

If no route selection is made within 30 s after the calculation of all routes, the route guidance is automatically started according to the preferred route type.

Route calculation for the trailer

When driving with a trailer or any other accessory connected to the trailer socket, we recommend that you switch on the trailer recognition, if necessary to set the maximum speed for towing a trailer.

› For calculating the route for towing a trailer, tap the function surface in the main *navigation* menu → **Route options** → .
› To set the maximum speed of the trailer, press the CAR button, then tap on function surface → **Driver assistance** → *Trailer recognition* → **Maximum speed for trailer**.

Demo mode

The Demo mode provides a travel simulation to the entered destination. The function offers the option to travel through the calculated route “virtually”.

When the Demo mode is turned on, a menu for route guidance in the Demo mode or in normal operation is displayed before the start of route guidance.

› To **switch on/off**in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface Tap→ **Advanced settings** → **Demo mode**.

When the Demo mode is switched on, the route starting point can be defined.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface Tap→ **Advanced settings** → **Define demo mode starting point**.
› Define the starting point by entering the address or the current vehicle position.
› The Demo mode starting point can also be set, provided the demo mode is switched on, by tapping the desired map location and selecting menu item **Define demo mode start** » page 183, *Tap map point*.

Graphical driving recommendations

Fig. 218 **Driving recommendations / travel recommendation detail**

The display of the graphical driving recommendations is in the split screen **Manoeuvre** as well as the display of the instrument cluster.

In the split screen **Manoeuvre** the following driving recommendations are shown » Fig. 218.

- **A** Street name / street number of the current vehicle position
- **B** Driving recommendations with street names / road numbers, with the route and the travel time to the manoeuvre location
- **C** Details of driving recommendation (is displayed near the manoeuvre)
- **D** Lane guidance

In the split screen **Manoeuvre**, Infotainment also announces TMC traffic obstructions and on motorways, car parks, petrol stations or restaurants.

Speed limits
With activated function → **Advanced settings** → **Note: National border crossed** display the country-specific speed limits when crossing international borders.

These speed limits can be displayed by tapping on function surface → **Maximum speeds** in the *Navigation* main menu.

Navigation announcements

Infotainment issues nav. announcements during route guidance.

The nav. announcements are generated by the instrument system. Flawless clarity of the message (e.g., road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

The last nav. announcement is repeated by pressing the control switch ⊙ (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus)

The timing of the navigation announcement is dependent on the type of road and on the driving speed.

The type of nav. announcements can be set: ⚙ → **Nav. announcements**.

Note

Guidance on the most frequently travelled route takes place without nav. announcements.

Most common routes

The most frequently travelled routes are automatically saved by Infotainment. Of these, up to 3 routes can be offered, which best match the current time, day of the week as well as the vehicle position.

A route guidance to one of the routes used most frequently can be started as long as **no route guidance** takes place.

› To display the menu with the most frequently travelled routes, tap on function surface **Freq. routes** → **Show on map** in the split screen.
› Select the desired route.

Then a selected route is calculated and the route guidance starts.

The menu display in the split screen can be turned on/off in the main menu *navigation* by tapping the function surface ⚙ → **Route options** → **Freq. routes** .

The stored most frequent routes can be deleted in the main menu *navigation* by tapping the function surface ⚙ → **Manage memory** → **Delete user data** → **Freq. routes** .

Note

Guidance on the most frequently travelled route takes place without navigation announcements.

Finish route guidance

The route guidance can be finished in one of the following ways.

› The final destination is reached.
› In the main menu *Navigation* by tapping the function surface ⚑ → **Stop route guidance**.
› By turning off the ignition for longer than 120 minutes.

Abort route guidance

If the ignition is switched off and on again, then the route guidance is continued depending on the stop time in one of the following ways.

▶ Within 15 min. - route guidance continues to take the calculated route into account.
▶ From 15 min to 120 min - after confirming the message on the infotainment screen, the route guidance continues, taking into account the calculated route.
▶ After 120 min - the route guidance is cancelled.

Route

Route details

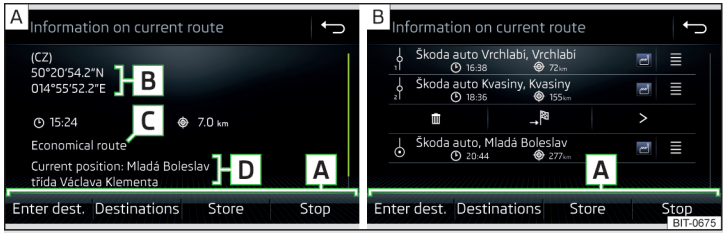


Fig. 219 **Route details: a route destination / several route destinations**

During route guidance, the **Route details** (Information about the current route) can be displayed.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface ⚑ Tap→ **Route details.**

A route destination
In the route plan, the following information is displayed at the destination» Fig. 219 - A.

A Area with function surfaces
B Destination information
Estimated time of arrival at destination / remaining driving time to destination[1)]
Remaining distance to the destination
C Chosen route type (economic, fastest, shortest)
D Current vehicle position (address / GPS coordinates)

The display of the arrival time or the remaining driving time can be adjusted as follows.

▶ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Advanced settings** → **Time display:**.

Several route destinations
In the route plan, the following information is displayed at the respective destinations» Fig. 219 - B.

A Area with function surfaces
Stopover (with sequential number)
Final destination
Estimated time of arrival at destination / stopover
Driving distance to destination / stopover
Change destinations with each other
Delete the destination
Continuation of the route guidance from the selected target (previous waypoints are skipped)
> Display the destination details » page 187

Insert destination into the route
▶ In the area A **Enter dest.** Tap the function surface and enter a new destination.
▶ **or**Tap on the area A the functional surface **destinations** and select a destination in the list of stored destinations.

Each additional destination is added to the list as the first subsequent destination route.

Change positions of destinations with each other
▶ The relevant function surface ☰ and move the destination to the desired position.

With destinations on the route already reached the note **Dest. reached** is displayed below the destination name. It is not possible to change the position of these destinations with each other.

Store route
▶ In the area A, tap the function surface **Save**.
▶ Save the edited route as a new route or replace the existing saved route.

The route is stored in the route list » page 191.

Stop route guidance
▶ In the area A, tap the function surface **stop** .

Route change in the map

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

Fig. 220 **Route change in the map / route transit point**

A route in which no waypoints are contained, can be changed during route guidance by adding a transit point.

Add a transit point
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Change route in map.**

[1)] If the time of arrival to the final destination or remaining travelling time greater than 24 hours, +d is displayed inside the symbol.

› Touch the screen in the route field and move the cross-point to the desired location on the map, e.g. A, move » Fig. 220).

The transit point B is added to the route » Fig. 220.

› Tap on the function surface **OK** .

Then a route is recalculated and the route guidance starts.

Customise transit point

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Change route in map**.
› Touch the transit point B and move to a different location on the map.
› Tap on the function surface **OK** .

Then a route is recalculated and the route guidance starts.

Remove transit point

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Change route in map**.
› Tap on function surface **Delete waypoint**.
› Tap on the function surface **OK** .

Then a route is recalculated and the route guidance starts.

route list

In the route list, it is possible to create routes, save, delete, or start navigation.

New route

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Routes** → **New route**.

Insert a route destination in one of the following ways.

› Tap on the function surface **Enter dest.** and enter a new destination.

or

› Tap on the function key **destinations** and select a destination from the list of saved destinations.
› To save the created route, tap the function surface **Store**.
› Tap the function surface **Start**to start route guidance.

route import

A in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal created route can be imported into the infotainment memory.

The prerequisite for importing the route are activated services infotainment online » page 116,

If the created route sent to the infotainment, after switching on the ignition in the infotainment screen **automatically** a message about a new route with the option to import this displayed.

If the directions shipped with the ignition to the infotainment, the Route Import offered by infotainment only after the ignition is switched again (the ignition must for at least. Be turned off for 15 minutes).

The update can be carried out **manually** as follows.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Routes** .

or

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → .

The route list is displayed.

› The function surface **import routes** Tap.

If a new route available, then a message is displayed on the Infotainment.

› Tap the function surface **Retrieve**to start route guidance.

The imported route can be displayed in the list of saved routes.

Managing saved routes

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Routes** .
› Choose the desired route, and then select one of the following functions.

Delete Clear saved route
Edit - Edit route » page 189, *Route details*
Start - Calculate route and start route guidance » page 187, *Route calculation and start route guidance*

Waypoint mode

Introduction to the subject

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

This mode is suitable for off-road navigation or for areas where maps are not available.

Infotainment allows the recording of waypoint tours driven using automatic of manually entered waypoints.

Then there is the possibility to start route guidance to the stored waypoint tour or to save the waypoint tour on the SD card.

Main menu

Fig. 221
Waypoint mode: Main menu

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Waypoint mode**.

The main menu is displayed» Fig. 221.

Any **ongoing route guidance** is terminated after the selection of this **waypoint mode** menu.

Description of the function surfaces A » Fig. 221

- Context-dependent:
  - **No route guidance is taking place** - Start recording a waypoint tour/display saved waypoint tour management/exit menu
  - **A waypoint tour is being recorded** - Stop recording a waypoint tour/manually adjust waypoint/exit menu
  - **Route guidance is taking place** - Stop route guidance/skip the next waypoint/exit menu
- Setting the map display / show/hide the additional window / activate/deactivate the display of POIs on the map
- Operation of **Radio/Media**playback
- Setting *Navigation* is not available in the**Waypoint mode** menu

Record waypoints

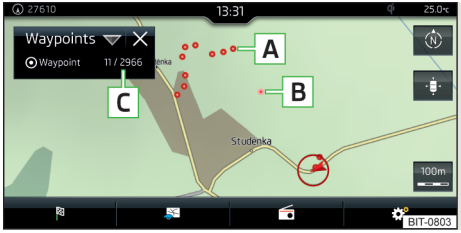


Fig. 222
Recording a waypoint tour

Start recording a waypoint tour

▶ In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on the function surface → **Record waypoint tour**.

Select one of the following recording types.

- **Select on map** - Enter destination on the map and start recording waypoints
- **Start recording** - Start recording waypoints without entering a destination

Recording a waypoint tour

After starting the recording of a waypoint tour the following contextual information may be displayed » Fig. 222.

A Automatically set waypoints
B Manually set waypoints
C Split screen **Waypoints** with the number of already set waypoints / maximum number of waypoints

Add waypoint manually

▶ In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on function surface → **Add waypoint manually**.

Stop recording

▶ In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on the function surface → **Stop recording**.

The recording also stops when the **waypoint mode** menu is exited.

The recorded waypoints are merged to a waypoint tour and stored in the waypoint memory after completion of the recording.

The recording cannot be continued once it has been stopped. A new recording must be started.

Guide along a saved waypoint tour

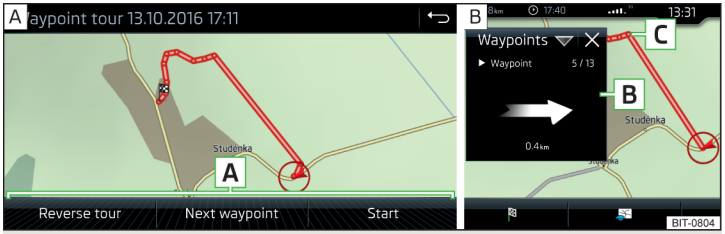


Fig. 223 **Display a waypoint / Guide along a waypoint tour**

Start guidance

› In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on the function surface → **Waypoint memory**.
› Select the desired route from the displayed list.
› Tap on the function surface > .
› Select one of the following menus » Fig. 223 - A.

- **Reverse tour** - Reverse the order of waypoints (suitable for guiding along a waypoint tour in the reverse direction)
- **Next. Waypoint.** - Skip to the next waypoint
- **Start** - starts route guidance

Route guidance

During the guidance along a waypoint tour, no nav. announcements are made by Infotainment.

When driving along the waypoint tour shown, follow as closely as possible the information shown on the Infotainment screen.

While driving along a waypoint tour, the split screen shows the **Waypoints** and the direction to drive as well as the distance to the next waypoint, the sequence number of the next waypoint and the total number of waypoints B » Fig. 223 - B.

The waypoint tour from the vehicle position to the next waypoint “reduces” continuously while driving “ ” C » Fig. 223 .

If you drive past but very close to the next waypoint, the route guidance will continue with the next waypoint.

If you drive past a waypoint and this does “not disappear” from the waypoint tour (e.g. because the distance to this waypoint is too large), then there is the possibility to “skip” over this waypoint and continue the guidance to the next waypoint.

▶ In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on function surface → **Skip waypoint**.

Stop route guidance

▶ In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on function surface → **Stop route guidance**.

The guidance also stops when **waypoint mode** is exited.

Manage waypoint tour memory

› to **display a list of saved and imported waypoint tours,** from main menu **Waypoint mode**, tap the function surface → **Waypoint memory**.

The name of the waypoint tour, the date and time of storage and the number of waypoints appears in the function surface for the waypoint tour.

› Choose the desired waypoint tour, and then select one of the following menu items.

Store the waypoint tour on the SD card
Delete the waypoint tour
Rename the waypoint tour
> Display the waypoint tour » Fig. 223 *on page 193*

Import waypoint tour from the SD card

▶ In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on the function surface → **Waypoint memory** → **Import**.
▶ Select the source of the waypoint tour recording and confirm the import.

Traffic reports

List of traffic reports

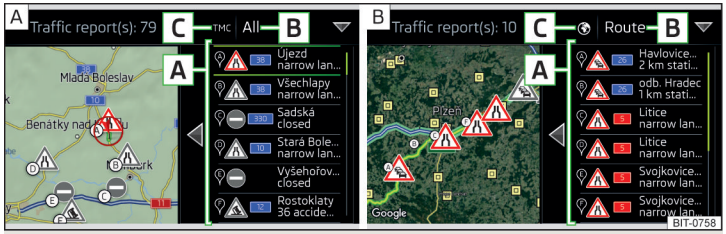


Fig. 224 **List of traffic reports: TMC source/online source**

The infotainment enables the reception of traffic reports, which include information regarding traffic congestion, using TMC (Traffic Message Channel) or online (when activated online services infotainment online » page 116).

› To **display the list of traffic reports**, press the MENU button, then tap on function surface .

In the list of traffic reports and in the map, a max. of 6 reports are displayed. These are provided with a letter and the traffic obstruction symbol (e.g. ⚠, ⚠, ⛔) » Fig. 224.

At present on the route traffic information is taken by using a nav. announcement.

Source of Traffic Information
On the position C » Fig. 224 can the following symbols are displayed.

TMC TMC Traffic Information (with strikethrough icon, the Infotainment is out of range of any traffic information provider)

Online traffic information

Display options
- **Route guidance is disabled** - All traffic messages are displayed.
- **Route guidance is taking place** - After tapping the function surface B » Fig. 224 in the displayed menu all traffic messages can be selected by tapping the function surface **All** , **or** by tapping the function surface **route**Only the traffic messages present on the route can be selected.

A traffic report may contain some of the following information.
- Symbol of the traffic obstruction
- Number of road affected
- Name of the location affected
- Description of the traffic obstruction

Distinguish the importance of a TMC message traffic obstruction using colour
The symbol for traffic obstruction (e.g. ⚠, ⚠, ⛔) precedes the obstruction and the length of the obstruction is shown in the map on the right along the route.

Depending on the context, the symbol for the obstruction is displayed in one of the following ways.

No route guidance is taking place
- **Red** - All traffic obstructions

Route guidance is not taking place
- **Grey** - The traffic obstruction is not on the route
- **Red** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route will not be recalculated and the route passes through the traffic obstruction
- **Orange** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route is recalculated and an alternative route is available

Distinguish the importance of a TMC message traffic obstruction using colour
The colour differentiation of traffic conditions on the provider of the online traffic reports depends.

To change the map orientation, go to the *Navigation* main menu and tap on function surface → **Map** → **Traffic flow settings**.

Update
The list of traffic reports will be updated by Infotainment on a continuous basis.

Detail of the traffic report

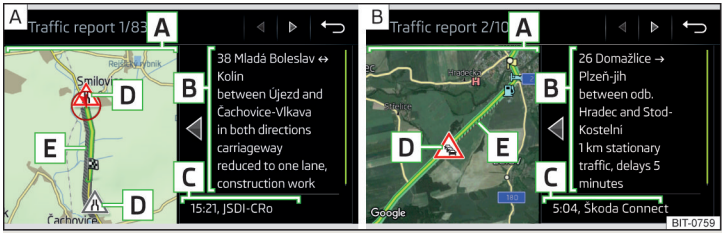


Fig. 225 **Details of the traffic report: TMC source/online source**

The display of traffic report details is dependent on whether the respective traffic report is based on the TMC source » Fig. 225 - A or the online source » Fig. 225 - B.

› To **display** this, select the desired traffic report from the list of traffic reports.
› **Or** Tip on the traffic obstruction symbol in the map.

Depending on the context, the following information and functional surfaces are displayed » Fig. 225.

A Map of the affected location
B Description of the traffic obstruction
C Reception timing and information relating to the traffic report provider (is ŠKODA Connect the provider, it is an online traffic report)
D Symbol of the traffic obstruction
E Length of the traffic obstruction

Dynamic route

Infotainment allows an evaluation of the traffic reports received during the route guidance. In fulfilling the following conditions, a bypass route is calculated, and the appropriate announcement is issued.

✓ The dynamic route function is turned on.
✓ The traffic congestion included in the traffic information is on the route.
✓ The traffic obstruction will be evaluated by Infotainment as of great importance.

› To **switch on/off** in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Route options** → **Dynamic route**.

enter / remove traffic conditions on your route manually

If a traffic obstruction is detected during route guidance (e.g. traffic jam), this traffic obstruction be manually entered into the route.

After entering, Infotainment calculates and provides an alternative route.

Enter traffic obstruction

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Congestion ahead**.
› Adjust the length of the traffic obstruction.

The traffic obstruction will be displayed in red in the map to the right along the route.

Remove traffic obstruction

The traffic obstruction is removed from the route after completion of the route guidance or can manually be removed as follows.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Cancel "congest. ahead"**.

Vehicle systems

CAR - Vehicle settings

Introduction to the subject

In the menu CAR , journey data and vehicle information can be displayed and some vehicle systems can be set.

Reset to factory settings
You can reset to factory settings in the infotainment system in menu CAR / → → **Factory settings**.

Note
Settings relating to the vehicle systems can only be made when the ignition is switched on.

Main menu

Fig. 226
Function surfaces in the main menu

› Press the CAR / MENU → button to display the main menu with the following function surfaces » Fig. 226.

Selecting the following menu points
- **Convenience consumers**
- **Journey data**
- **DriveGreen**
- **Vehicle status**

Operating playback - Radio / Media

Depending on equipment fitted with manual air conditioning: setting the auxiliary heating and ventilation / Operation of heated windscreen

Vehicle system settings

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

Depending on equipment fitted, it is possible to switch the ignition on/off and start/stop the engine with the **key in the ignition** or using the **starter button**.

WARNING

- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- The ignition must always be switched during the journey when the engine is idling. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 202, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft etc!
- Never run the engine in an enclosed space (e.g. in garages) - there is the danger of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a push-start aid.
- On vehicles with the starter button, pay attention to where the key is located. The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. The engine will reach its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobiliser and steering lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 197 first.

The electronic immobiliser (hereinafter referred to as immobiliser) makes it more difficult for someone to attempt to steal or use your vehicle without authorisation.

Immobilizer
The immobilizer enables the engine start exclusively using the original vehicle keys.

Malfunction of the immobilizer
If the immobiliser components in the key fail, it is not possible to start the engine. A message appears in the display of the instrument cluster to explain that the immobiliser is active.

To start, use the other vehicle key or seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock - lock

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, remove the key and turn the steering wheel until the steering lock engages.
› On vehicles with a **starter button**, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door. If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked automatically after the vehicle has been locked.

Steering lock - unlock

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, insert the key into the ignition and turn on the ignition. If this is not possible, move the steering wheel slightly back and forth and thereby unlock the steering lock.
› On vehicles with **starter button**, get into the car and close the driver's door. Under certain circumstances, the steering lock can be unlocked only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - there is a risk of accident!

Ignition on / off

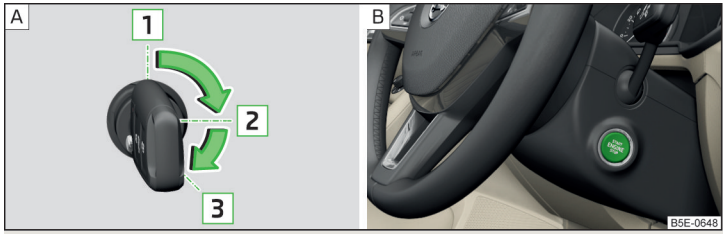


Fig. 227 **Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock / starter button**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 197 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 227 - A

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching on /off ignition in vehicles with starter button

› Press the » Fig. 227 - B button, the ignition is turned on / off.

On vehicles with **manual transmission** the pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, the brake pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

Starting engine / Stopping

Read and observe ! and ! on page 197 first.

Before starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and » !depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.

Starting engine

› On vehicles with **Ignition lock**, turn the key to position 3 and the engine starts» Fig. 227 *on page 198* A. Release the key, the engine will start automatically.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the starting process after 30 seconds.

› On vehicles with **starter button**, press the button briefly » Fig. 227 *on page 198* - B, the motor will start automatically.

For vehicles with **diesel engines**, the glow plug warning light illuminates during starting. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Stopping the engine

› Stop the vehicle.
› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, turn the key to position 1 » Fig. 227 *on page 198* A.
› On vehicles with **starter button**, press the button » Fig. 227 *on page 198* - B, The engine and the ignition will be switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** .

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running for a prolonged period at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Emergency shutdown of the engine in vehicles with starter button

The system is equipped with a protective device against accidental switching off, the engine can only be shut off while driving in the event of an emergency.

› Keep the knob pressed » Fig. 227 *on page 198* - B or press it twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the engine, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

! CAUTION

When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.

Note

- The engine running noises may be louder at first for a short time after starting the cold engine.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period, otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to run for approx. 10 minutes (also continuously).

Problems with the engine start - vehicles with starter button

Fig. 228
Starting the engine - press the button with the key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 197 first.

If no engine start is possible and the display of the instrument cluster shows a message that the key could not be detected by the system or there is a system fault, then try to start the engine as follows.

› Press the starter button with the key » Fig. 228.

If the engine does not start, the help of a specialist garage is required.

! CAUTION

The key may not be detected by the system if the battery in the key is running out of charge or the signal fails.

START-STOPsystem

Introduction

The START-STOPsystem (hereinafter referred to as the system) reduces CO_2emissions and harmful emissions, and saves fuel.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops or is at a standstill (e.g. at the traffic lights), it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

The system function depends on many factors. Some of them are down to the driver, while others are systemic and can neither be influenced nor identified.

For this reason, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The system is automatically activated **every** time the ignition is switched on (even when it has previously been manually deactivated with the A OFF button).

Note

If the engine has stopped due to the system, the ignition remains switched on.

Operation

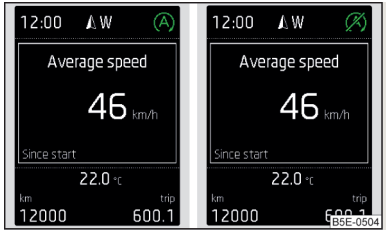


Fig. 229
Display

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt, the shift lever is moved into neutral and the clutch pedal is released.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the clutch pedal is depressed.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt and the brake pedal is operated.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the brake pedal is released.

Conditions for the system function

The following conditions must be met for the system to function correctly.

✓ The driver's door is closed.

✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.

✓ The driving speed after the last stop was higher than 4 km/h.

System status

The system status is shown in the display when the vehicle comes to a halt » Fig. 229.

Ⓐ The engine is switched off automatically; when moving off, the ignition process will be initiated automatically.

Ⓐ The engine is not switched off automatically.

When stopping, the engine will not switch off for the following reasons, among others.

- The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.
- High air conditioning or heating output (high blower speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

If the engine is shut down automatically and the system detects that the engine is required, such as when the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly, then the system automatically starts the engine.

More information about the current system status can be displayed in the infotainment screen in menu CAR/ → → → **Vehicle status**.

If there is a **system fault**, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during automatic stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
- No automatic engine shut-down takes place when a vehicle with **automatic transmission** is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shut-down takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.
- For vehicles with **automatic transmission** there is no automatic engine shut-down when the system detects a manoeuvring action due to a large steering angle.

manually activate/deactivate system

Fig. 230
Button for the START-STOP system

› To **deactivate/activate**, press the A OFF button » Fig. 230.

When the system is deactivated, the A OFF symbol lights up in the button.

If the system is deactivated, it will be reactivated automatically after the ignition has been switched off and on.

Note

If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.

Brakes and Parking

Introduction

The **wear** of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style. Under difficult conditions (e.g. urban, sporty driving style) the condition of the brakes should also be checked by a specialist garage between the service intervals.

The performance of the brakes can be delayed if the brakes are **damp, iced up in winter or if covered in a layer of salt**. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » !.

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned by applying the brakes several times » !.

Before travelling a **long distance with a steep gradient**, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. If you do have to brake, this should be carried out at intervals.

Emergency braking display - when an emergency braking is performed, the automatic flashing of the brake lights are used to alert the traffic behind.

New brake pads must first be “worn in” because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect. Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

A too low **brake fluid level** can cause **faults in the braking system**, and the warning light (!) lights up in the instrument cluster» page 34, (!) *Brake system*. If the warning light does not illuminate and an extended stopping distance is required, the driving style should be adapted according to the unknown cause of fault and restricted braking effect - seek the assistance of a specialist garage immediately.

The **brake booster** increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

! WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- Do not press the brake pedal if braking is now required. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear - risk of accident!
- Braking for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs should be carried out only if the traffic conditions permit. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.
- Recommendations for new brake pads have to be observed.
- When stopping and parking, the parking brake should always be applied firmly, otherwise the vehicle could move off - There is a risk of an accident!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

Handbrake

Fig. 231
Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 201 first.

The handbrake secures the vehicle against unwanted movement when stopping and parking.

Apply

› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Release

› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the lock button » Fig. 231 .
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light (P) lights up in the instrument cluster when the handbrake is applied and the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied. The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of over 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Disengage the handbrake completely. A handbrake which is only partially disengaged can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the handbrake» page 79.

Parking

Read and observe ! on page 201 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » ! .

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select **1st gear** or **reverse gear R**.
› Release the brake pedal.

WARNING

▪ The exhaust system components can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like. - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!
▪ When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who could, for example, lock the vehicle or release the brake, unattended in the vehicle - risk of accident and injury!

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

CAUTION

When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the clutch and the accelerator pedal – There is risk of damage to the clutch.

Manual gear changing

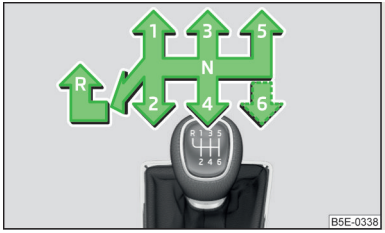


Fig. 232
The shift pattern

Read and observe ! on page 202 first.

The gearshift pattern for the individual gear positions is shown on the gear lever » Fig. 232.

The gear shift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 43.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Reverse gear is engaged

› Stop the vehicle.

› The clutch pedal is fully depressed.
› Switch the gear lever to **N**.
› Push the shift lever downwards fully to the left and then forward into **R**» Fig. 232.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gear shift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gear shift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

Read and observe ! on page 202 first.

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat (supplied by the factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories) which is secured on the respective attachment points should be used.

WARNING

No objects should be located in the driver's footwell, otherwise the pedal operation could be disabled - risk of accident!

Automatic transmission

Introduction

The automatic transmission performs an automatic gear change irrespective of the engine load, the operation of the accelerator, the vehicle speed and the selected driving mode.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

- Do not use the throttle if the forwards mode has been set using the selector lever prior to starting up - risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of accident!
- If the vehicle stalls with the engine running, in the **D**, **S**, **R** or Tiptronic mode, then the vehicle must be prevented from rolling away by means of the brake pedal, parking brake or using the Auto Hold function. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever must always be set to **P** . Otherwise, the vehicle could start to move - risk of accident.

CAUTION

- If you want to move the selector lever from position **N** to position **D** / **S** whilst driving, the engine must be running at idling speed.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Select selector lever position

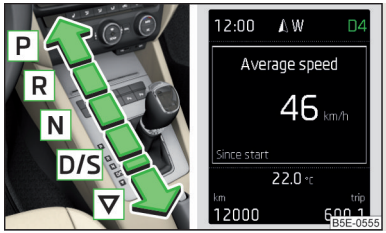


Fig. 233
Selector lever settings / display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 203 first.

Move the selector lever to change to the following positions » Fig. 233. In some positions you have to push the locking button » page 204, *Selector lever lock*.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 233.

P **Park** - the position can be set only when the vehicle is at a standstill. The drive wheels are mechanically locked.

R **Reverse gear** - the position can be set only when the vehicle is at a standstill and the engine is at idling speed.

N **Neutral (idle position)** - the power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted.

D/S **Forward mode / sports programme** - the gear change takes place in the position **S at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**

▽ (Sprung position) - choice between positions **D** and **S**

If the Sport driving mode is selected with the engine running » page 241, *Select the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)* , the transmission is automatically set in the **S** mode.

E – Economical driving mode

If the driving mode Eco or Individual (engine - Eco) » page 241 is selected and the selection lever is in the setting **D/S**, the transmission is automatically set to mode **E**. This mode cannot be selected with the selector lever.

The forwards mode is switched up or down automatically in mode **E at lower engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Selector lever lock

Fig. 234
Shift lock button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 203 first.

The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light.

Disengage selector lever from P mode or N

› Press the brake pedal and, at the same time, push the lock button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 234.

To move the selector lever from mode **N** to **D / S** only the brake pedal is pressed.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

If it is not possible to release the gear selector from mode **P** in the usual manner, then this can be emergency unlocked » page 297.

Note

If you want to switch the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

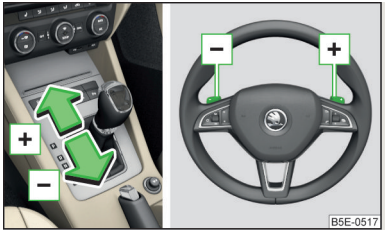


Fig. 235
Selector lever/multi function steering wheel

Read and observe ! and ! on page 203 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel.

Switching to manual shifting using the selector lever

› Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle. The current gear is maintained.

Switching to manual shifting by using the rocker switches under the multifunction steering wheel

› To **change gear**, pull one of the rocker switches - / + briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 235.
› To **cancel** manual shift, pull the rocker switch + towards the steering wheel for more than 1 s.

If you do not pull one of the rocker switches - / + for more than 1 minute, manual shifting of the gears is deactivated automatically.

Changing gear

› To **shift up**, tap the selector lever forwards + or pull the rocker switch + briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 235.
› To **shift down**, tap the selector lever backwards - or pull the rocker switch - briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 235.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display » Fig. 233 *on page 203*.

The gear shift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 43.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached. If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine over revving.

Note

It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes.

Start and drive

Read and observe ! and ! on page 203 first.

Starting and temporarily pausing

› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Start the engine.
› Press the locking button and move the selector lever to the desired position » page 203.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected if stopping for a short time, such as at cross roads. However, you must apply the brake pedal in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Accelerate to max. speed during the journey (kickdown function)

The kickdown function is applied when the accelerator pedal is pressed down in the forward mode.

The gear change is adjusted accordingly to reach the maximum acceleration.

Accelerate to maximum speed when starting (launch control function)[1)]

The launch control function is available in mode **S** or Tiptronic.

› Disable the TCS » page 209, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.
› START STOP deactivate » page 200, *manually activate/deactivate system*.
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
› Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
› Release the brake pedal - the vehicle is running at maximum acceleration.

Driving in neutral (“coasting”)

When releasing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle moves without the braking effect of the engine.

Operating conditions

▶ The selector lever is in the **D/S** position.
▶ Driving mode Eco or Individual (Drive: - Eco) is selected » page 241, *Select the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)*.
▶ The vehicle is travelling at more than 20 km/h.
▶ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

The gear is selected again automatically, when you depress the accelerator or brake pedal or pull the left rocker switch - towards the steering wheel » page 204, *Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)*.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

[1)] This function is only valid for some engines.

Running in the engine and economical driving

Introduction

Run in engine

During the first 1,500 km, the driving manner determines the quality of the running in process on a new engine.

During the first 1,000 km, the engine should not be charged with more than 3/4 of the maximum permitted engine revs and without the trailer.

In the area of **1,000 to 1,500 kilometres**, the engine load can be increased up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

Tips for economical driving

The fuel consumption depends on the driving style, road condition, weather conditions and the like.

For an economical driving style, the following instructions must be observed.

- Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Observe the recommended gear » page 43.
- Avoid full throttle and high speeds.
- Reduce idling.
- Avoid short distances.
- Ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure is maintained» page 281.
- Avoid unnecessary ballast.
- Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
- Only switch on electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating) for as long as they are needed. In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ → → → **Convenience consumers**, it is possible to display up to three consumers, which currently make up the largest share of fuel consumption.
- Before switching on, ventilate the cooling system briefly and do not use the cooling system with open windows.
- Do not leave windows open at high speed.

DriveGreen function

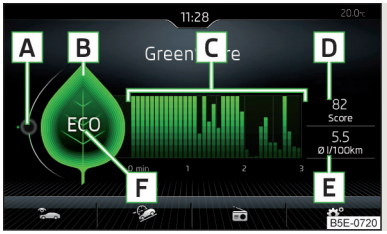


Fig. 236
Display in Infotainment screen

The DriveGreen function (hereinafter referred to as DriveGreen) evaluates the driving efficiency based on the information respecting the driving style.

DriveGreen can be displayed in the infotainment screen in menu CAR/ → → → **DriveGreen**.

A driving liquid display
With the driving is fluid, the display is located in the middle (near the green dot). When accelerating, the display moves down, and upwards when braking.

B "Green leaf"
The greener the leaf, the more economic the driving style. With less economical driving, the leaf is presented without any green colouring or it can be completely hidden.

C bar graph
The higher the green bars, the more economical the driving style. Each bar shows the driving efficiency in 5-second steps, the current bar is on the left.

D scoring (0 - 100)
The higher the indicated value, the more economical the driving style. When you tap the function surface D, a detailed assessment showing the driving efficiency during the last 30 minutes is displayed.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the assessment from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

E the average fuel consumption from the start
When you tap the E function surface, a detailed overview of the average fuel consumption during the last 30 minutes is shown.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the overview of the average fuel consumption from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

F symbols

The display may show the following four symbols, which give information on the current driving style.

ECO Economical driving style

The current speed has a negative effect on fuel consumption.

The journey does not take place in a free-flowing manner, avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking

4 Recommended gear

Tips for economical driving

Tap on the B leave to display tips for economical driving.

Note

When resetting the single-trip memory “from start”; the average consumption E, the driving assessment D, and the diagram C are also reset.

Radiator shutters

The radiator shutters located in front of the radiator (hereinafter: shutter) help to reduce CO_2 emissions as well as harmful emissions and to save fuel.

If the system detects that it is possible to reduce the amount of air flowing to the radiator, it closes the blinds. As a result, the air resistance of the vehicle is reduced.

If a driving speed of 150 km/h is reached due to a **function impairment** of the shutters, a message regarding the function impairment of the shutters is shown in the instrument cluster display.

After this message has been displayed, the maximum speed of the vehicle is automatically limited to 160 km/h. The manner of driving should therefore be adapted to this limitation.

If this message appears in the winter, the cause may be ice or snow caught up in the blinds. After the ice or snow has thawed, the blinds are functional again.

If the impairment not due to ice or snow, then assistance from a specialist should be sought.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

Driving Tips

Only drive on such roads and in such terrain that match the vehicle parameters » page 308, *Technical data* as well as your driving skills.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can handle travelling in the given terrain.

When travelling off paved roads, we recommend activating OFF ROAD mode » page 211.

WARNING

- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Too high a speed or an erroneous manoeuvre may cause serious injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the vehicle can get damaged.
- Any objects that get trapped under the vehicle floor must be removed as soon as possible. These items can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. on parts of the fuel system or the brake system).

Driving through water

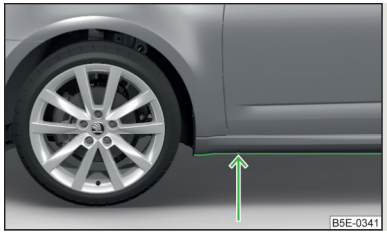


Fig. 237
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water. The water level must not reach above the lower edge of the lower brace » Fig. 237.
› Drive at a maximum speed of walking pace, otherwise a shaft may form in front of the vehicle which could enable water to enter the vehicle system (e.g. in the air induction system of the engine).
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

▪ Water entering the vehicle systems (e.g. the air induction system of the engine) can cause serious damage to the vehicle!
▪ Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
▪ Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. An vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Assist systems

General information

Introduction

WARNING

▪ The assistance systems only serve to support the driver and do not relieve the driver of the responsibility for driving the vehicle.
▪ The increased safety provision, as well as the increased occupant protection provided by the assistance systems must not tempt you to take risks - risk of accident!
▪ Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
▪ The assistance systems have physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
▪ Only enable, disable or set the assistance systems when you have the car fully under control, in every traffic situation - risk of accident!

Radar sensor

Fig. 238
Installation location of the radar sensor

Read and observe ! on page 208 first.

The radar sensor (hereinafter referred to only sensor) uses electromagnetic waves to capture the traffic situation ahead of the vehicle. The radar is located under a cover » Fig. 238.

The sensor is part of the ACC » page 232 and Front Assist » page 238systems.

The sensor function may be impaired in the event of one of the following situations arising.

- The sensor cover is soiled (e.g. with mud, snow and the like).
- The area in front of and around the sensor cover is obscured (e.g. by labels, auxiliary headlights and the like(.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- In exceptional cases, the sensor may be covered in the area beneath the cover, e.g. due to snow.

If the sensor cover or the sensor is dirty or covered, a message to that effect from the ACC system » page 237, *Malfunctions* or Front Assist » page 240, *Malfunctions* system appears in the instrument cluster display.

WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the ACC system and Front Assist system» page 235, » page 240. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- A collision or damage in the front or lower area of the vehicle could affect the sensor function - there is risk of accident! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- Do not cover the area in front of and around the sensor cover. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accident!

CAUTION

Remove snow with a brush and ice with a solvent-free de-icer from the sensor cover.

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

The brake and stabilization systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on, unless otherwise indicated.

The error display is in Chapter » page 33, *Warning lights*.

WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.

Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

ESC improves vehicle stability in critical driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle starts to skid) by the braking the individual wheels to maintain the direction.

During an ECS intervention, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

ESC Sport

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

ESC Sport allows for a sportier driving style. With ESC Sport activated, no ESC intervention takes place when the vehicle slightly oversteers and understeers, and ASR is so limited that the drive wheels can be spun.

Activation

› Press and hold down the » Fig. 239 *on page 210* button.
› **or:** In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **ESC system: → ESC Sport**.

When **activated**, warning light **lights up** in the instrument cluster and a corresponding message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Deactivation

› Press the » Fig. 239 *on page 210* button.
› **or:** In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **ESC system: → Activated**.

When **deactivated**, the warning light in the instrument cluster goes out and a corresponding message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

The MSR prevents the blocking tendency of the drive wheels when shifting down or with an abrupt deceleration (e.g. on icy or otherwise slippery road surfaces).

If the drive wheels lock, the engine speed is automatically increased. This reduces the braking effect of the engine, and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Traction control (ASR)

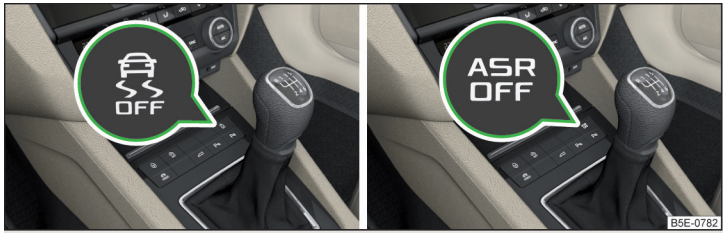


Fig. 239 **System button: Vehicle with ESC/Vehicle without ESC**

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

The TCS prevents spinning of the drive wheels. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thus, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During TCS intervention, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Deactivation

› Press the » Fig. 239 button.
› **or:**press the button » Fig. 239
› **or:** In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **ESC system: → ASR off.**

When **deactivated**, warning light **lights up** in the instrument cluster and a corresponding message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Activation

› Press the » Fig. 239 button.
› **or:**press the button » Fig. 239
› **or:** In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **ESC system: → Activated.**

When **activated**, the warning light in the instrument cluster goes out and a corresponding message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.

▶ When driving with snow chains.
▶ When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
▶ When it is necessary to “rock” a car free when it has become stuck.

Note

On vehicles without the ESC system, warning light **does not light up** upon deactivation of the TCS system, but only a message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS)

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes the spinning wheel, if necessary, and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

XDS is an extension to the electronic differential lock (EDL). XDS does not respond to the relieved inner curve wheel of the driven axle in the case of fast cornering.

By applying braking force to the relieved wheel, spinning is prevented by the XDS. This has a positive effect on the driving stability and steerability of the vehicle.

Active steering assist (DSR)

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

In critical situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist (HHC)

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without the vehicle rolling downhill on its own.

The vehicle is braked by the system for about 2 seconds after releasing the brake pedal.

The HHC is active on gradients upwards of 5 % if the driver door is closed. HHC is only ever active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off.

Multicollision brake (MCB)

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

MCB helps to decrease speed after a collision by means of automatic braking interventions and to stabilise the vehicle. This reduces the risk of a subsequent crash due to uncontrolled vehicle movement.

The automatic brake interventions can take place only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ A **head-on** or **side** collision occurred.
- ✓ The impact speed was greater than approx. 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESL and other required electrical systems remain functional after impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not actuated.

Trailer stabilisation system (TSA)

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

The TSA helps the combination stable in situations where the trailer sways and then the whole trailer combination.

TSA brakes the individual wheels of the towing vehicle in order to damp the rocking motion of the entire vehicle combination.

The following conditions are required for the correct TSA function.

- ✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The speed is greater than 60 km/h.

Further information » page 250, *Towing device and trailer*.

OFF ROAD mode

Introduction

The OFF ROAD mode includes functions that help to overcome routes that are difficult to navigate when travelling on non-paved roads.

But even with OFF ROAD mode activated, your vehicle is never a true SUV.

! WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.

CAUTION

- The OFF ROAD mode is not designed for the use on common roads.
- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by ŠKODA AUTO to ensure the OFF ROAD mode operates correctly.

Operation

Fig. 240 **Button for selecting the driving mode / function surface on the Infotainment screen**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 211 first.

OFF ROAD mode intervenes at a speed up to 30 km / h.

We recommend that you activate the OFF ROAD mode for every trip on non-paved roads.

› To **activate**, press the MODE » Fig. 240button.

In the Infotainment screen, a running mode menu » Fig. 240 appears.

› Press the**Offroad** function surface on the Infotainment screen. Warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.
› To **deactivate**, press the MODE » Fig. 240 button and, in the infotainment screen, choose mode other than the **Offroad** mode.

The following functions are integrated in the OFF ROAD mode.

- Downhill Drive Support » page 212
- ESC OFF ROAD » page 213
- TCS OFF ROAD » page 213
- EDL OFF ROAD » page 213
- ABS OFF ROAD » page 213

Note

If the engine “stalls” while driving and is started again within 30 seconds, then OFF ROAD mode will be automatically activated.

Hill Descent Assistant

Read and observe ! and ! on page 211 first.

The hill descent assistant (hereinafter referred to as assist system), with its automatic braking action on all wheels, ensures a constant speed is maintained on a steep slope when driving forwards and reversing.

During an intervention of the assistant, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The assist system is automatically engaged under the following conditions.

✓ The engine is running.
✓ For vehicles with **Manual transmission** the shift lever is in the neutral position and or the 1st, 2nd, 3rd gear, or reverse gear is engaged.
✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the R, N, D/S position or in the Tiptronic position.
✓ The downhill gradient is at least 10 % (when driving over sleepers, the limit can briefly drop to 8 %).
✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed.

Driving speed

Initiate the downhill descent at a reasonable speed of approx. 2 - 30 km/h, the assist system constantly maintains this speed as you travel downhill.

If a forwards or reverse gear is engaged on vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the speed must be high enough to avoid “stalling the engine”.

The driving speed can be changed by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal. This is true even if the shift lever is in the neutral position and the selector lever in the N position. Engagement of the assist system is resumed after the pedal is released.

WARNING

For the correct operation of the assistant the road surface must be sufficiently adherent. The assistant cannot properly fulfil its function on slushy soil due to physical reasons (e.g. ice or mud). - there is a risk of an accident!

Note

When the wizard brakes the vehicle automatically, then the brake light does not come on.

ESC OFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 211 first.

The ESC OFF ROAD makes driving on dirt roads easier, as no ESC interventions occur when the vehicle is slightly over or under steered.

TCS OFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 211 first.

The TCS OFF ROAD makes starting and driving on an unpaved surface easier as it partially allows wheel-spin.

Note

When disabled, the TCS » page 210 OFF ROAD mode works without the support of the TCS OFF ROAD.

EDL OFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 211 first.

The EDS OFF ROAD supports the driver when driving on a surface with different grip under the drive wheels or when driving over bumps.

A spinning wheel or wheels are braked earlier and with more force than with the intervention of the standard EDS system.

ABS OFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 211 first.

The ABS OFF ROAD supports the driver when braking on an unpaved surface (e.g. gravel, snow etc.).

The system generated by a controlled locking of the wheels braked wheel before a “wedge” of piled material, which shortens the braking distance.

Maximum system efficiency is achieved when the front wheels are in the straight ahead position.

Parking aid (ParkPilot)

Introduction

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to as system) uses acoustic signals on the Infotainment screen when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

! WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognized by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. There is a danger that such objects or people may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. There is a danger that obstacles may not be detected by the system sensors.
- Before reversing, make sure that there are is not any small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post etc., in front of or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

! CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 241 *on page 214* clean, snow-and ice-free and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the system function may be limited - “incorrect recognition of obstacle”.
- Accessories fitted to the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 213 first.

› In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **Parking and manoeuvring.**

- *ParkPilot* - Settings for the parking aid
  - **Activate automatically** - Activate/deactivate the compact parking aid display (when driving forward)
  - **Front volume** - Adjust the volume of the beeps for obstacle detection in front
  - **Front tone setting** - Setting the pitch of the beeps for obstacle detection in front
  - **Rear volume** - Set the volume level of the beeps for the rear obstacle detection
  - **Rear tone setting** - Setting the pitch of the beeps for the rear obstacle detection
  - **Entertainment fading (while parking) / Entertainment fading** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) with activated parking aid
  - **Manoeuvre braking** - Activation / deactivation of the automatic emergency braking

Operation

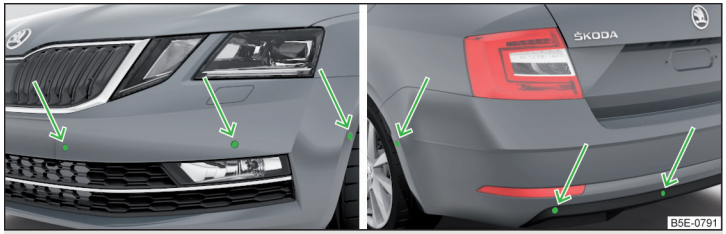


Fig. 241 **Installation location of the sensors on the left side of the vehicle: front/rear**

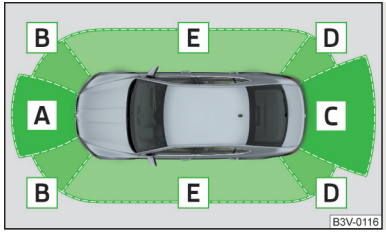


Fig. 242
Sampled areas and range of the sensors

Read and observe ! and ! on page 213 first.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment,, located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 241.

Depending on the equipment, the following system versions are possible » Fig. 242.

▶ Variant 1: warns of obstacles in the areas C, D.
▶ Variant 2: warns of obstacles in the areas A, B, C, D.
▶ Variant 3: warns of obstacles in the areas A, B, C, D, E.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 242	Variant 1 (4 sensors)	Variant 2 (8 sensors)	Variant 3 (12 sensors)
A	-	120	120
B	-	60	90
C	160	160	160
D	60	60	90
E	-	-	90

Audible signals
The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of approx. 30 cm a continuous tone starts to sound - danger area. **Stop driving in the direction of the obstacle!**

The acoustic signals can be set in Infotainment » page 213.

Towing a trailer
When towing, or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket, only the areas A and B » Fig. 242 are active in the system.

Note

- If with **Version 3** vehicles not all fields around the vehicle silhouette are active after activation, the vehicle should be moved forwards or backwards.
- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.
- The setting of the acoustic signals is stored (depending on Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Display Infotainment screen

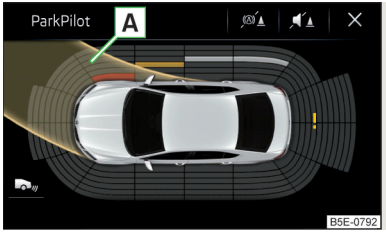


Fig. 243
Screen display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 213 first.

Function surfaces and warnings » Fig. 243

A	Road display.
✕ / ⮌	Depending on the infotainment type: Switching the parking aid display off.
	Switching audible parking signals on/off.
	Disable / enable the automatic emergency braking.
	Change to rear-view camera display .
	There is an obstacle in the collision area (the distance to the obstacle is less than 30 cm). STOP Stop moving in the direction of the obstacle!
	There is an obstacle in the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).
	An obstacle is located outside of the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).
!	System failure (there is no indication of obstacles).

Road display
The road display A » Fig. 243 indicates the road on which the vehicle would take the current steering wheel and shift / selector lever position.

The shift lever is in the neutral position and the gear selector is in mode **N**. the road display is at the front.

Activation / deactivation

Fig. 244
System key (option 2, 3)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 213 first.

Activation
To activate the system, engage reverse gear and, on vehicles with **version 2 and 3**, also press the P button » Fig. 244 button.

During activation, an alarm sounds and the P symbol lights up in the button.

Deactivation
On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with **version 2 and 3**, the system is deactivated when you press the P button, or automatically at a speed of more than 15 km/h (the P symbol in the button goes out).

Fault display
Vehicles with **Variant 1**
- After system activation an acoustic signal sounds for approx. 3 seconds (there is no obstacle near the vehicle).

Vehicles with the **Variants 2 and 3**
- After system activation, the P symbol flashes in the button.
- In the display of the instrument cluster a message about an error of the ParkPilot system appears (at the same time there is an audible signal).

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
The system can only be activated with the P button at a speed of below 15 km/h.

Automatic system activation when moving forward

Fig. 245
Infotainment screen: Display with automatic activation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 213 first.

Automatic system activation occurs when moving forward at a speed below 10 km/h when the vehicle approaches an obstacle.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of Infotainment display » Fig. 245.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

The automatic display can be activated / deactivated in Infotainment » page 213.

Note

The setting (activate / deactivate) of the automatic display is stored (depending on Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Automatic emergency braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 213 first.

If the system detects a collision risk when reversing at a speed up to 10 km / h, there is an automatic emergency braking to reduce the impact consequences.

Disable / Enable

The brake function can be enabled / disabled in the Infotainment in the menu **Parking and manoeuvring** » page 213.

After switching the ignition on and off, the systems remains activated / deactivated depending on the setting prior to switching off the ignition.

The brake function can also be deactivated once with the function surface » Fig. 243 *on page 215*.

Rear traffic alert and wizard for “Blind spot”Monitoring

Introduction

Fig. 246
Installation location of the radar sensors

The Rear Traffic Alert and Wizard for “blind spot” monitoring works based on the information from the radar sensors in the rear bumper » Fig. 246. The radar sensors are not visible from the outside.

Rear Traffic Alert

The Rear Traffic Alert (hereinafter referred to as system) warns when leaving a parking space from a transverse parking space about any approaching vehicles.

If necessary, the system tries to avoid a collision with automatic braking, or at least to mitigate the consequences.

Wizard for “blind spot”monitoring

The wizard for“blind spot monitoring” (hereafter referred to as system) draws attention to vehicles travelling in the same direction in the next lane in the so-called blind spots.

The “blind spot” is an area that is not easily visible in a rear-view mirror or even directly from the vehicle.

! WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.

WARNING

- In the case of a collision or damage to the rear of the vehicle, the function of the systems may be affected - risk of accident! Have the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.
- Do not cover the sensor area - the function of the systems could be limited.
  - Remove snow, ice and such obstacles from the sensor environment immediately.

WARNING

The wizard for “blind spot”monitoring is limited by physical and system-related limits. Therefore, in the following situations the system can be delayed in drawing attention (or not at all) to a vehicle in the next land.

- When a vehicle is approaching at a very high speed.
- When passing through a very sharp curve or a roundabout.

CAUTION

- If a trailer or other accessory is to be connected to the trailer socket, then the two systems are not available.
- In adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the system function may be limited - “failure to recognise a vehicle”.
- Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Rear Traffic Alert- Operation

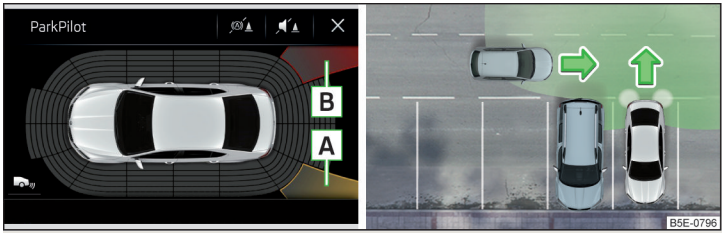


Fig. 247 **Infotainment screen: Warning indicator/Driving situation**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 216 first.

With the ignition switched on, the area next to and behind the vehicle is monitored by the radar sensors of the system. If an approaching vehicle is detected from the rear of the vehicle » Fig. 247, the system warns of this fact.

Warning - vehicles with parking aid
You will hear a continuous tone and one of the following warning levels appears on the Infotainment screen » Fig. 247.

A An oncoming vehicle is detected. Do not continue driving backwards and check around the vehicle.

B A vehicle is detected in the collision zone. Do not continue reversing STOP.

Warning - vehicles without parking aid
An acoustic signal is sounded and information asking the driver to observe the traffic behind is shown in the instrument cluster.

Automatic emergency braking
If the driver does not react to the warning and the system detects an impending collision, then this can trigger an automatic braking at a speed up to 10 km/h. A corresponding message is shown in the information cluster display.

Wizard for “Blind Spot”Monitoring - Operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 216 first.

At a speed of more than 15 km/h, the area alongside and behind the vehicle is monitored by the system. At the same time, the distance and the difference in speed between your vehicle and other vehicles in the monitored area are measured.

When driving, the system monitors an area the size of a normal lane width to the left and right.

If a vehicle is detected in the “blind spot” area, the system indicates this vehicle by the warning light in the exterior mirror.

System constraint
The system is unable to recognise the specific lane width by means of sensors. Therefore it may respond to a vehicle in a lane further away in the following scenarios, for example.

- When driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge.
- Driving around a bend.

The system may also respond to objects on the roadside such as crash barriers, noise barriers or similar objects.

Wizard for “Blind Spot”Monitoring - driving situations and warnings

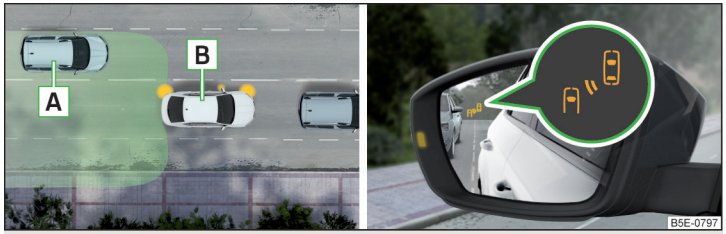


Fig. 248 **Driving situation / indicator light in the left outside mirror indicates the driving situation**

Fig. 249 **Driving situation / indicator light in the right outside mirror indicates the driving situation**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 216 first.

In the following situations, the indicator light in the outside mirror indicates a vehicle detected in the “blind spot”.

- Your vehicle **B** is being overtaken by vehicle **A** » Fig. 248.
- Your vehicle **C** overtakes vehicle **D** at a speed of max. 10 km higher » Fig. 249. If the speed during the overtaking is even higher, then there is no warning by the warning light.

The warning is always displayed in the exterior mirror on the side of the vehicle where a vehicle is detected in the “blind spot”.

The greater the speed difference between the two vehicles, the earlier the warning of the vehicle overtaking you is provided (by means of the warning light).

Two warning levels

light ups - a vehicle has been detected in the “blind spot”.

flashes - a vehicle has been detected in the “blind spot” and **the turn signal is switched on**.

An advanced warning for vehicles with Lane Assist

flash also if **the steering wheel** is turned in the direction of the vehicle in the “blind spot” . Therefore the Lane Assist » page 244 must be enabled and the boundary line between the vehicles detected.

If in this case your vehicle indicates crossing the boundary line, with a short vibration of the steering wheel.

Note

The brightness of warning light is dependent on the vehicle lighting setting. With the low or high beam on the brightness of the light will be lower.

Activation / deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 216 first.

The activation or deactivation of the system can be carried out in one of the following ways.

- In the instrument cluster display » page 48, *Menu item* **Assist systems**.
- In the infotainment system, in menu CAR / → → **Driver assistance** (Applies to the wizard for “Blind Spot” Monitoring).
- In the infotainment system, in menu CAR / → → **Parking and manoeuvring** (Applies to Rear Traffic Alerts).

After switching off and switching on the ignition, depending on the setting prior to switching off the ignition, the systems remains activated / deactivated.

Note

During activation of the “blind spot” monitoring wizard, the warning lights light up in the two exterior mirrors.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 216 first.

If the systems are not available for some unknown reason, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor is dirty or covered, a message indicating that there is no sensor view appears. Clean or remove the obstructing object from the sensor environment » Fig. 246 *on page 216*.

Systems unavailable
If the systems are currently unavailable, a message regarding the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the systems are still not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

System fault
In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Rear View Camera

Introduction

The rear view camera (following as system) helps the driver when parking and manoeuvring by displaying the area behind the vehicle on Infotainment screen (hereinafter only known as screen).

There are four modes available for different situations during the park and manoeuvring action. The mode change is carried out using the function surfaces on the screen » page 220.

! WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The system detects obstacles. The auxiliary boxes and lines are displayed by the system, regardless of the area around the vehicle. The driver must judge for themselves whether the vehicle can park safely in the selected parking space.
- The camera may not be soiled or obscured, otherwise the system function will be significantly affected - there is a risk of accident. For information on cleaning » page 265.

! CAUTION

- The camera image is distorted by contrast with eyesight. For this reason, the screen display is only of limited use for estimating distances to following vehicles.
- Some items, such as thin posts, chain link fences, grilles or uneven road surfaces may not be properly displayed in terms of screen resolution.
- In a crash or damage the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

i Note

The camera is equipped with a cleaning system » page 73. The spraying is carried out automatically when the rear window is sprayed.

Operation

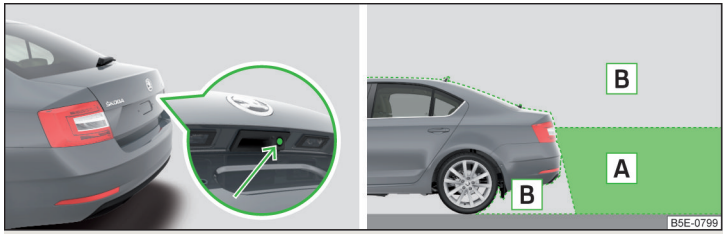


Fig. 250 **Installation location of the camera / scanned area behind the vehicle**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

The camera for capturing the area behind the vehicle is in the grip of the boot lid » Fig. 250.

Area behind the vehicle » Fig. 250

A Detection range of the camera

B Area outside the detection range of the camera

The system can assist the driver when parking and manoeuvring under the following conditions.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 15 km/h.
- ✓ The area behind the vehicle is clearly visible.
- ✓ The selected parking / manoeuvring area is clear and even.

Activation/deactivation

Fig. 251 **Button for activation / deactivation**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

Activation

The system is activated by selecting reverse gear or pressing the symbol button» Fig. 251.

During activation, an alarm sounds and the symbol lights up in the button.

The display mode for the traverse parking is displayed.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated when you press button , switch off the ignition, put the selector lever in position **P**, or when you drive forwards at a speed of more than 15 km/h (the symbol in the button goes out).

Function surfaces

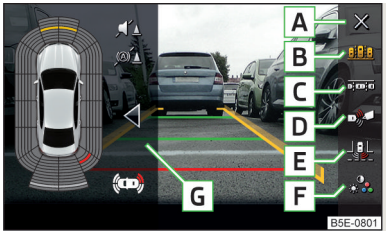


Fig. 252 **Function surfaces**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

It is possible to adjust the parking and manoeuvring mode by means of the function surfaces.

Function surfaces » Fig. 252

A Turns off the display of the area behind the vehicle
B Mode - traverse parking
C Mode - parallel parking
D Mode - driving up to a trailer / distance monitoring
E Mode - monitor the area behind the vehicle (wide view)
F Screen settings - brightness, contrast, colour
G Parking aid (thumbnail display)
◀ / ▶ Switch thumbnail display on/off
Switch to full screen display

Orientation lines and lane

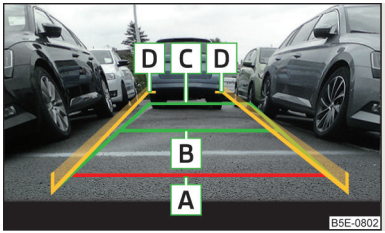


Fig. 253
Orientation and lane lines

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

In the modes for transverse and parallel parking guidance, orientation lines for the assessment of distance and lane lines are displayed on the screen.

Screen display » Fig. 253

A The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit).
B The distance is about 100 cm.
C The distance is about 200 cm.
D The lane lines terminate approximately 300 cm behind the vehicle.

The distance may vary slightly depending on the load of the vehicle and the road inclination.

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Lane

The lane lines D » Fig. 253 change depending on the steering angle and indicate the roadway on which the vehicle would take with the current steering wheel position.

! CAUTION

The objects shown on the screen can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.
- Protruding objects, such as the rear of a truck and the like.
- When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
- When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

Mode - traverse parking

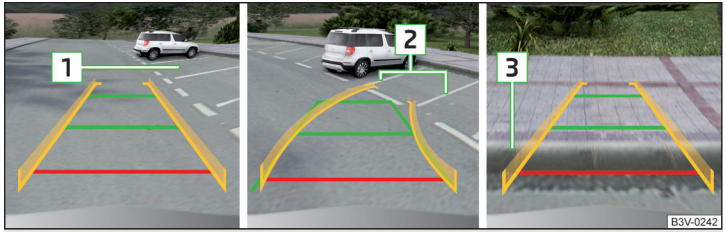


Fig. 254 **Screen display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

This mode supports the driver when reverse parking in a parking space that is transverse to the road.

Parking manoeuvre

› Select a suitable parking space.
› Press the P » Fig. 251 *on page 220* button.
› At the selected parking space 1 » Fig. 254 slowly drive past and stop the vehicle.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the steering wheel so that the lane lines lead into the parking space 2.
› Carefully move backward and steer so that the yellow lines are still leading into the parking space.

› At the latest when the red line of the back of the parking space (for example, curb) 3 is touched, stop the vehicle.

Mode - parallel parking

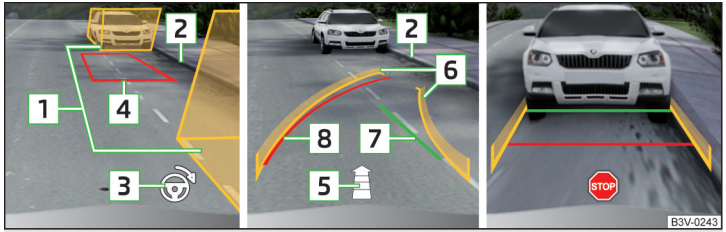


Fig. 255 **Screen display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

This mode supports the driver when reverse parking in a parking space that is parallel to the road.

Parking manoeuvre

› When driving past a parking space push the button P » Fig. 251 *on page 220*.
› Tap the function surface C » Fig. 252 *on page 220*.

The screen shows auxiliary boxes for both road sides.

› Switch on the indicator for the side on which you want to park.

The auxiliary boxes for the opposite side will be hidden.

› Stop the vehicle stop so that there are no obstructions in the gap between the auxiliary boxes 1 » Fig. 255 and the rear box does not extend over the side of the parking space 2 (e.g. kerb).
› Turn the steering wheel in the direction recommended 3 until the colour of the trapezoidal frame 4 is green. Hold the steering wheel in this position.
› Once the arrow 5 appears on the screen, reverse (when reversing in the parking space the arrow will get shorter).

The screen shows the yellow lane lines 6 and the green line 7.

If the steering angle is corrected while reversing then the red line 8 appears (required roadway alignment).

› In this case, adjust the steering wheel so that the yellow lines 6 the red line 8 fade into each other.
› Carefully reverse until STOP appears on the screen or the green line 7 is congruent with the lateral boundary of the parking space (e.g. kerb) 2.
› Stop the vehicle and steer opposite until the yellow lines 6 the red line 8 fade into each other (required roadway alignment). Hold the steering wheel in this position.

Orientation lines are displayed » Fig. 253 *on page 221* on the screen.

› Carefully move backwards.
› Stop the vehicle when STOP appears on the screen, or at a safe distance from the obstacle situated behind the vehicle.

Note

The guidance in the parking space is cancelled due to the system when the steering wheel is set for a period of time against the required road direction. The parking is to be started again.

Mode - driving up to a trailer / distance monitoring

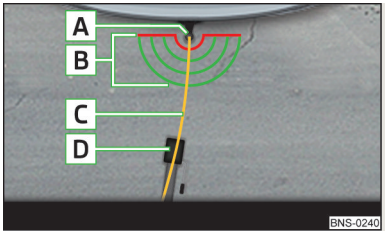


Fig. 256
Screen display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

In this mode, the area behind the vehicle is shown at the top of the screen.

Vehicles with towing hitch

If your vehicle is factory fitted with a tow-bar, this mode supports the driver when the vehicle approaches a trailer draw bar.

Screen display » Fig. 256

A Ball head of the towing device
B Lines for the distance estimation (at a distance of about 10 cm)

C Line for approaching a trailer draw bar
D Trailer draw bar

The line C moves depending on the steering angle and indicate the roadway on which the vehicle would take with the current steering wheel position.

Vehicles without towing hitch
If your vehicle is not factory equipped with a towing hitch, a red line for monitoring the distance to obstacles is displayed on the screen at a distance of 40 cm behind the vehicle.

Mode - monitor the area behind the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

In this mode, the area behind the vehicle is shown on the screen.

The mode is suited for the entire view of the situation behind the vehicle.

Park Assist

Introduction

Park Assist (following referred to system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places or also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system takes over the steering movements **only** when entering or leaving a parking space. The driver operates the brake, accelerator or clutch pedal and the shift / selector lever.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation.**

The Park Assist is an extension of the parking aid » page 213 and operates on the basis of data collected by the ultrasonic sensors.

For this reason, the chapter on the parking aid is to be read carefully and the safety notes are to be observed.

! WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- During parking manoeuvres on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) it is possible to stray from the calculated road. It is therefore recommended that you do not use the system in such situations.

! CAUTION

The correct evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle.
- The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by ŠKODA AUTO.
- Abstain from using the system when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or a temporary spare wheel.
- If wheels other than those approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

If other vehicles are parked behind or on the curb, the system can drive your vehicle over the kerb or up to the kerb - there is a risk of damage to the wheels. If necessary, intervene in good time.

i Note

- We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed of up to about 5 km/h.
- The parking procedure can be stopped at any time by pressing the P button » Fig. 257 *on page 224* or by a steering intervention.

Operation

Fig. 257
System button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 223 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

- While the parking space search is going on, a measurement and evaluation of the parking space size is completed.
- The display of the instrument cluster (hereinafter only display) shows suitable parking spaces and a parking mode is recommended.
- The display shows instructions and information before the start and during the parking.
- Based on the calculated road surface, the front wheels will be automatically rotated during the parking.

Conditions for the system function

The system can look for a parking space only if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 40 km/h.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 20 km/h.
- ✓ The distance to a number of parked vehicles is approximately 0.5 - 1.5 m.
- ✓ TCS is activated » page 210.

The system can only carry out the parking procedure if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 7 km/h.
- ✓ The parking procedure takes less than 6 minutes.
- ✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.
- ✓ TCS is activated » page 210.
- ✓ The TCS does not engage.
- ✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Activation/deactivation

The system can be activated/deactivated by pressing the P button » Fig. 257.

When the system is activated, the P symbol lights up in the button.

Search for parking space

Read and observe ! and ! on page 223 first.

The system searches for a parking space in a number of parallel and transverse parked vehicles on the passenger or driver's side.

Process with the parking space search

› Slowly drive past a row of parked vehicles.
› Activate the system with the P button » Fig. 257 *on page 224*.

The system will automatically search for a parking space on the passenger side.

If the system finds a parking space, the recommended parking mode is displayed » Fig. 259 *on page 225* A or » Fig. 260 *on page 225* - A.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to look for a parking space on this side of the road. The display changes and the system searches for a parking space on the driver's side.

Note

If the symbol (km / h) is shown in the display while you are looking for a parking space, the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km / hr (parallel parking) or below 20 km / hr (Transverse parking).

Switch to park mode

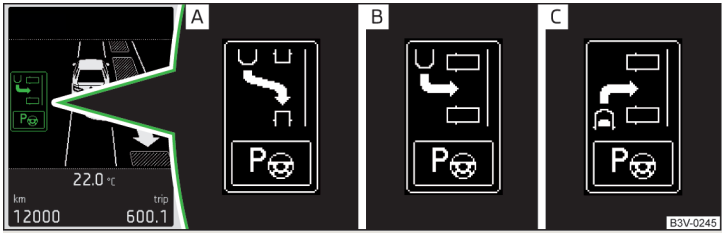


Fig. 258 **Menus with the parking modes: Display indicator**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 223 first.

While the parking space search is going on and before the start of the parking, a menu may appear showing other suitable parking modes.

Parking modes » Fig. 258

A To park backwards in a parallel parking space

B To park backwards in a traverse parking space

C To park forwards in a traverse parking space

The parking mode can be changed by pressing the P button » Fig. 257 *on page 224* button.

After switching through all parking modes offered, an additional press of the P button deactivates the system.

If you want to return to the originally recommended parking mode, press the P button again.

Parking

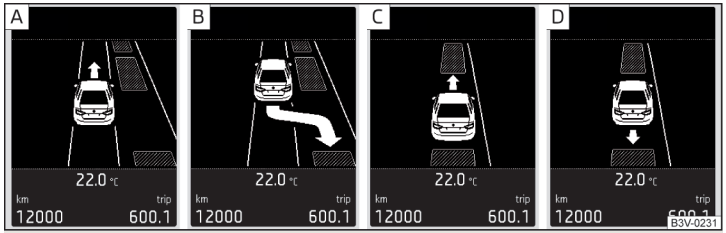


Fig. 259 **To park in a parallel parking space: Display indicator**

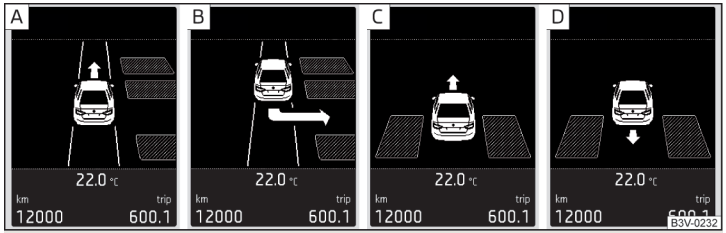


Fig. 260 **To park in a traverse parking space: Display indicator**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 223 first.

The system helps the driver to reverse park in a parking space found in a row of traverse and parallel parked vehicles.

Display view » Fig. 259 or » Fig. 260

A Parking space detected with the indication to drive on

B Parking space recognised with the indication to reverse

C Note to drive on to the parking space

D Note to reverse to the parking space

Process for reverse parking

The parking space found is shown in the display » Fig. 259 - A or » Fig. 260 - A.

› Continue driving forwards until B appears in the display.
› Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue to move forward until the parking procedure starts.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steering intervention active. Check area around vehicle!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

If necessary, the parking procedure can be continued with further steps.

› If the arrow in the information display is flashing to the front C, engage 1st gear or move the selector lever into the position **D/S**.

The display shows the ⛐ icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol ⛐ goes out.
› Carefully drive forwards.
› If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display - D, select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The display shows the ⛐ icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol ⛐ goes out.
› Carefully move backwards.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.

As soon as the parking procedure is complete, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

Parking forwards

Fig. 261
To park forwards in a traverse parking space: Display indicator

📖 **Read and observe ! and ! on page 223 first.**

The system helps the driver to drive into a parking space found in a row of parallel parked vehicles.

As soon as the system finds a parking space, select the P⛐ » Fig. 257 *on page 224* button for forwards parking mode » Fig. 258 *on page 225* - C. The display shows the following » Fig. 261.

The further procedure is analogous to that for reverse parking.

› Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is complete, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

The system is activated by pressing the P⛐ button and this is also possible if the vehicle has already been partially moved to a suitable parking space.

Leaving a parallel parking space

📖 **Read and observe ! and ! on page 223 first.**

The system supports the driver when leaving a parking space of a parallel parking space.

Leaving a parking space process
› Press the P⛐ » Fig. 257 *on page 224* button.

The following message is shown in the display: **Park Assist: Activate turn signal and engage reverse gear!**

› Activate the turn signal for the side of the road you will drive onto after exiting the parking space.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The further procedure is analogous to that for reverse parking.

› Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is complete, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the system to leave the parking space. A corresponding message is shown in the information cluster display.

Automatic brake assist

Read and observe ! and ! on page 223 first.

Automatic brake assist when speeding
If a velocity of 7 km / h is exceeded during the parking manoeuvre for the first time, the speed will be automatically reduced by the system to less than 7 km / h. This prevents the parking manoeuvre from aborting.

Automatic emergency braking
If the system detects a risk of collision during parking, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

The parking is terminated by the emergency braking.

! CAUTION
The automatic emergency braking is not triggered by the system when the parking process stops due to the speed of 7 km / hr being exceeded!

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 223 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

System unavailable
If the system is not available because the vehicle has a fault, a message appears concerning the unavailability. Seek help from a specialist garage.

System fault
In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Trailer manoeuvring assistant (Trailer Assist)

Introduction

The trailer manoeuvring assistant (below only system) helps the driver when reversing with a trailer.

When manoeuvring, the system **only** undertakes the steering movement. The driver operates the brake, accelerator or clutch pedal and the shift / selector lever.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation.**

! WARNING
- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The system is not oriented to the area around the vehicle, there is no obstacle detection.
- During manoeuvring, always observe the movement of the trailer and if necessary cancel the manoeuvring autonomously to prevent accidents or damage to the vehicle and the trailer.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- During parking manoeuvres on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) it is possible to stray from the calculated road. Therefore, use the system with extreme caution in such situations.

! CAUTION
- The trailer position is evaluated by the rear camera based on the bending angle of the drawbar and the steering movement carried out by the system. For this reason, the drawbar must not be obstructed by external influences.
- The rear camera lens must not be contaminated, otherwise the system may be unavailable or the system function my be significantly impaired.

i Note
- We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed of up to about 5 km/h.
- The parking process can be terminated at any time by pressing the button P⊗ » Fig. 262 *on page 228* or by a steering intervention.
- The correct system function can only be ensured if a one- or two-axle trailer is hitched without steered axle.

Operating principle

Fig. 262
System button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 227 first.

The trailer position is detected by the system based on the information of the rear camera. Trailer is steered in the direction set by the driver using steering wheel movements.

Conditions for the system function

✓ The engine is running.
✓ The system is activated.
✓ The parking aid is activated.
✓ The driver's door and the boot lid are fully closed.
✓ The trailer is plugged into the trailer socket.
✓ The trailer is not veering too much.

Determining the drawbar length

The system must know the drawbar length in order that the driver is offered the maximum possible setting angle with respect to the target position of the trailer.

The system needs some turning manoeuvres or cornering with a hitched trailer in order to determine the drawbar length.

The manoeuvring dimensions are shown in the display 5 » Fig. 263 *on page 228*.

Activation / deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 227 first.

The system is **activated** by engaging reverse gear and pressing the button » Fig. 262 *on page 228*.

When the system is activated, the symbol lights up in the button.

The system is **deactivated** by pressing the button (the symbol in the button is no longer illuminated).

Manoeuvring trailer

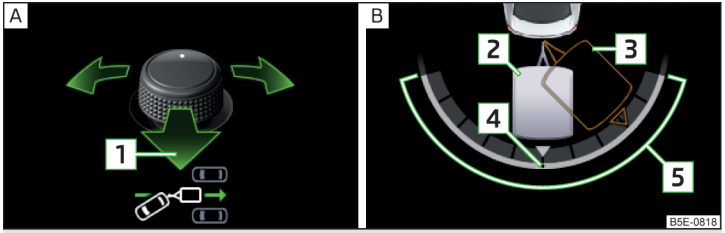


Fig. 263 **Instrument cluster display: Manoeuvre trailer**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 227 first.

Trailer manoeuvring

› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› Ensure that the vehicle/trailer combination is at a standstill.
› Release the steering wheel and press the button .

The steering is taken over by the system.

The symbol of the control button for the exterior mirror is shown in the display » Fig. 263 - A.

› Tilt the adjusting knob for the exterior mirror » page 75, *Exterior mirrors* to left or right according to the required direction of travel of trailer.

The display shows the silhouette of the vehicle rear with trailer in top view » Fig. 263 - B.

The actual position of the trailer is indicated by the silhouette 2.

The target position of the trailer is indicated by the contour 3.

› Tilt the knob for the adjusting exterior mirror to adjust the trailer contour 3 to the target position.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

The set angle of articulation can be further corrected while reversing by tilting the adjusting knob for the side mirrors.

› Stop the vehicle/trailer combination in the required position.

If a forward gear is engaged or the **D / S** mode set, the system is deactivated.

To align the vehicle/trailer combination (trailer and vehicle in a line), tilt the adjusting knob for the exterior mirror in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 263. The trailer contour 3 pivots to the position 4.

› Carefully reverse and drive forwards until the desired position of the vehicle combination is achieved.

Note

The outer mirror surfaces cannot be adjusted while the system is active.

Automatic brake intervention

Read and observe ! and ! on page 227 first.

The systems is deactivated and an automatic braking intervention takes place in the following situations.

- If, during the manoeuvring, P the button is pressed, the driver's door is opened or the steering wheel is gripped.
- If the angle between the vehicle and trailer is assessed by the system as too large during the manoeuvring procedure.
- If a specific speed is assessed by the system as too high during the manoeuvring procedure due to the current angle between the vehicle and trailer and the driver does not react to the warning braking intervention.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal. The state where the CCS maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.
- After pressing the clutch pedal, no interrupted control occurs! For example, if a different gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released, control is continued.

Operation

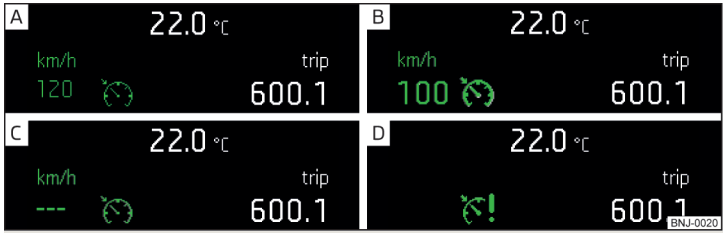


Fig. 264 **MAXI DOT display (monochromatic): Examples of CCS status displays**

Fig. 265 **Segment display: Examples of CCS status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 229 first.

CCS status displays » Fig. 264, » Fig. 265

- A Speed is set, control is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).
- B Control active (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).
- C No speed set.
- D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for start of control

- ✓ The CCS is activated.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher is engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ The current speed is greater than approx. 20 km/h.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

! WARNING

If the engine power and engine braking effect is insufficient in order to maintain the set speed, the acceleration and brake pedals must be taken over!

Operation description

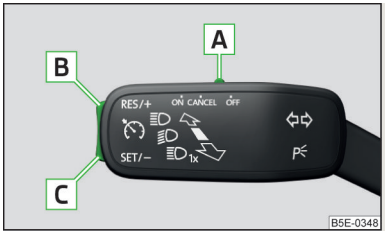


Fig. 266
Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 229 first.

Overview of the CCS controls » Fig. 266

A	**ON**	Activate CCS (control deactivated)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (spring-tensioned position)
	OFF	Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	**SET/–**	Launch control / reduce speed

[a] If no speed is set the current speed is adopted.

After the start of the regulation, the CCS regulates the vehicle to the current speed and warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The **automatic control interruption** occurs if any of the following conditions are met.

- ▶ The brake pedal is operated.
- ▶ When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
- ▶ Through an airbag deployment.

! WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.
- The control does not resume if the set speed for the existing traffic conditions is too high.

Note

During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Speed limiter

Introduction

The Speed Limiter limits the maximum driving speed to the set speed limit.

The speed limit can only be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The condition in which the Speed Limiter prevents a potential set speed limit excess is referred to as **Regulation**.

WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, in section *Introduction*.

Operation

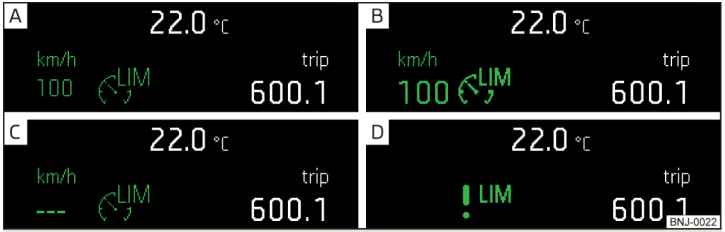


Fig. 267 **MAXI DOT display (monochromatic): Examples of status displays of the speed limiter**

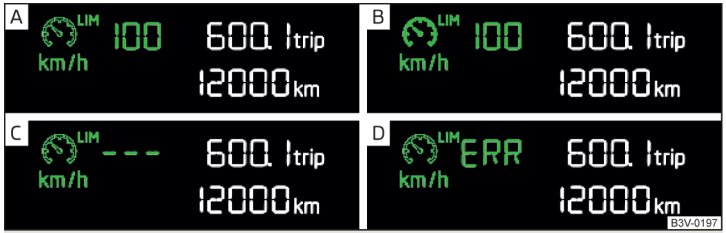


Fig. 268 **Segment display: Examples of status displays of the speed limiter**

Read and observe ! on page 231 first.

Status displays of the speed limiter » Fig. 267, » Fig. 268

- A Speed limit is set, control is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).
- B Control active (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).
- C No speed limit set.
- D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ The Speed Limiter is activated.

✓ The current speed is greater than approx. 30 km/h.

After starting the system, the current speed is set as the speed limit and the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

Exceeding the speed limit during the regulation

If, during the control, it is necessary to exceed the speed limit (e.g. to overtake), the accelerator pedal must be pressed fully.

When the speed limit is exceeded (e.g. driving down a hill), an acoustic signal sounds and warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Regulation resumes once the speed has fallen below the set limit.

Operation description - Variant with GRA

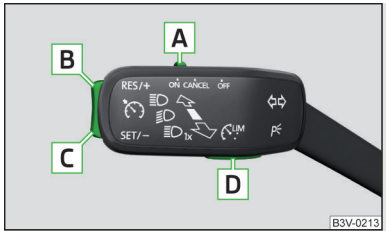


Fig. 269
Controls the speed limiter (version with GRA)

Read and observe ! on page 231 first.

Overview of the control elements of the speed limiter » Fig. 269

A	ON	Activate CCS (required condition for the subsequent activation of the speed limiter) To **activate the speed limiter**, set the switch to position **ON**, then press D.
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (spring-tensioned position)
	OFF	Disable speed Limiter (delete set limit)
B	RES/+	Take control again [a] / increase speed limit - press (in increments of 1 km/h), hold (in increments of 10 km/h)
C	SET/–	Start control/ reduce speed limit - press (in increments of 1 km/h), hold (in increments of 10 km/h)
D		Switching between CCS and speed limiter

[a] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Note

By pressing the button D » Fig. 269 during the regulation this is cancelled and the CCS is activated.

Operation description - Variant with ACC

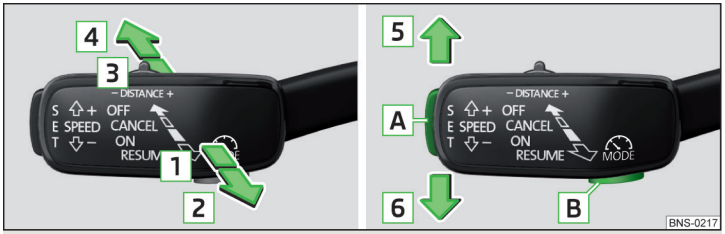


Fig. 270 **Controls the speed limiter (version with ACC)**

Read and observe ! on page 231 first.

Overview of the control elements of the speed limiter » Fig. 270

1	ON	Activate ACC (required condition for the subsequent activation of the speed limiter) To **activate the speed limiter**, set the lever to position **ON**, then press B to operate.
2	RESUME	Resume control[a] / increase speed limit by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
3	CANCEL	Interrupt control (spring-tensioned position)
4	OFF	Disable speed Limiter (delete set limit)
5	SPEED +	Increase speed limit by 10 km/h at a time
6	SPEED –	Decrease speed limit by 10 km/h at a time
A	SET	Start control / reduce speed limit in increments of 1 km/h
B	MODE	Switching between ACC and speed limiter

[a] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

The Adaptive Cruise Control (hereinafter referred to as ACC) maintains the set speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead without the accelerator or brake pedal being pressed.

The front of the vehicle and the distance to the vehicle ahead is monitored by a radar sensor » page 208.

The state in which the ACC maintains the speed or the proximity is described as **control** from here on.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The driver must always be ready to take over the operation of the accelerator and brake pedal.
- The ACC does not react when approaching a stationary obstacle, such as traffic jams, vehicle breakdowns or vehicles waiting at a traffic light.
- The ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.
- If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough, immediately apply the vehicle's foot brake.

WARNING

For safety reasons, do not use the ACC under the following conditions.

- When driving in turning lanes, motorway exits or construction sites, to avoid an unwanted acceleration to the stored speed.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When road conditions are poor (e.g. ice, slippery road, gravel, dirt road).
- Driving in “sharp” corners or in steep gradients / on steep inclines.
- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railway tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries, tunnels and the like.).

Note

- The ACC is designed primarily for use on motorways.
- The ACC reduces the speed by automatically releasing the accelerator or by means of a braking procedure as appropriate. If the brakes are used for an automatic speed reduction at any moments, then the brake light illuminates.
- In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the connected trailer, the ACC becomes unavailable.
- The control automatically cancels the engagement of the brake supportive assistance systems (e.g. ESC) or when the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe ! on page 233 first.

› In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **Driver assistance**, tap.

- *ACC (adaptive cruise control)* - Setting for the adaptive cruise control
  - **Driving programme:** - Set the vehicle acceleration when adaptive cruise control is activated[1)]
  - **Last distance selected** - Last selected distance level on/off
  - **Distance:** - Set the distance monitoring to the vehicles ahead

Operation

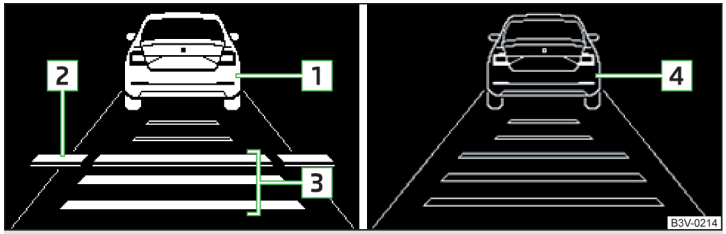


Fig. 271 **Display in the instrument cluster: Examples of ACC displays**

[1)] This can be set as follows on vehicles with a travel mode option » page 241.

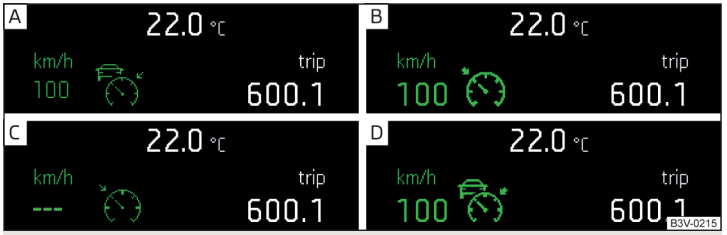


Fig. 272 **Display in the instrument cluster: Examples of ACC status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 233 first.

The ACC allows you to set a speed of 30-160 or 210 km/h (depending on equipment) and the distance to the vehicle ahead ranging from a very short distance to a very long distance.

The ACC adjusts the set speed with respect to the detected vehicle ahead, thus maintaining the selected proximity.

The ACC can detect a vehicle that is up to approx. 120 m ahead using the radar sensor.

ACC displays » Fig. 271

1 Vehicle detected (control active)
2 Line showing the displacement of the distance when setting » page 236, *Set the clearance level*
3 Set distance to the vehicle ahead
4 Vehicle detected (control deactivated)

ACC status displays » Fig. 272

A Regulation is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).
B Regulation active - no vehicle detected (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).
C Regulation deactivated - no speed stored.
D Regulation active - vehicle detected (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).

Note to reduce speed
If the ACC's deceleration is insufficient in relation to the vehicle in front, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the display shows a message to engage the brake pedal.

Regulation according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane
During regulation your vehicle may be regulated according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane.

This could occur at speeds above about 80 km/h when your vehicle is moving faster than the vehicle in the adjacent lane on the driver's side. The display shows the detected vehicle is in the adjacent lane.

Note
Some ACC notifications in the display of the instrument cluster may be hidden by notifications for other functions. An ACC notification automatically appears for a brief moment when there is a change in status of the ACC.

Automatic stopping and starting

Read and observe ! on page 233 first.

Vehicles with an **automatic transmission** can decelerate to a standstill and start moving again using the ACC.

Decelerate to a standstill
If a vehicle ahead decelerates to a standstill, the ACC will also decelerate your vehicle to a standstill.

Starting to drive again after a holding period
As soon as the vehicle ahead starts moving again after a holding period, your vehicle will also move and the speed will continue to be regulated. Control is automatically disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

Operation overview

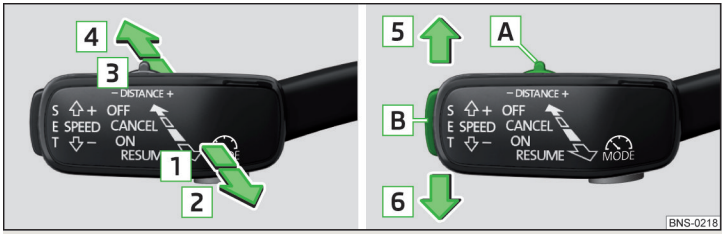


Fig. 273 **Operating lever**

Read and observe ! on page 233 first.

Overview of ACC functions operated with the lever » Fig. 273

1	ON	Activate ACC (control deactivated)
2	RESUME	Start control (resume) / increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
3	CANCEL	Interrupt control (spring-tensioned position)
4	OFF	Deactivate ACC
5	SPEED +	Increase speed by 10 km/h at a time
6	SPEED –	Decrease speed by 10 km/h at a time
A	– DISTANCE +	Set proximity level
B	SET	Start control / reduce speed in increments of 1 km/h

If the lever is set from the position OFF directly into the sprung position RESUME the current speed is stored and the control process is started.

Start control

Read and observe ! on page 233 first.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ On vehicles with **manual transmission**, the second gear or a higher gear is selected and the current speed is greater than 25 km/h.

✓ On vehicles with **automatic transmission** the selector lever is in the position **D / S** or in the Tiptronic position and the current speed is higher than 2 km / h.

Start control

› Press the button SET » Fig. 273 *on page 235* .

› **or** set the lever into the sprung position RESUME » Fig. 273 *on page 235* .

The ACC adopts the current driving speed and performs the control, and the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

If control is started by moving the lever to the position RESUME and if the speed is already stored, the ACC adopts this speed and carries out the control.

Note

If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed of 30 km/h is stored. The speed increases automatically to 30 km/h or is regulated with respect to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

Stop/resume control

Read and observe ! on page 233 first.

Stop control

› Set the lever into the sprung position CANCEL » Fig. 273 *on page 235* .

› **or:** apply the brake.

Control stops, the speed remains stored.

Resume control

› Start control » page 235, *Start control*.

Note

Control is also stopped when the clutch pedal is held down for longer than 30 s or the TCS is deactivated.

Set/change desired speed

Read and observe ! on page 233 first.

The desired speed can be set or changed using the control lever » Fig. 273 *on page 235*.

Setting/changing the speed by increments of 10 km/h at a time (SPEED) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

Increasing/reducing the speed by increments of 1 km/h at a time (RESUME/SET- requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ Vehicle control takes place.

Changing the speed by adopting the current speed (SET) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed **other** than that which is stored.

Note

- If during control the speed is increased by pressing the accelerator, control is temporarily stopped. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is automatically resumed.
- If during control the speed is reduced by applying the brake, control is stopped. Control needs to be restarted in order to resume » page 235.
- If the vehicle is controlled by a lower speed than the stored speed, then **SET** the current speed is stored by pressing the button again **SET** and the speed is reduced in increments of 1 km/h.

Set the clearance level

Read and observe ! on page 233 first.

The proximity to the vehicle ahead can be set with the lever » Fig. 273 *on page 235* or in Infotainment » page 233, *Settings in Infotainment*.

Setting by means of the lever

› Set the switch **DISTANCE** to the spring-tensioned position – or + » Fig. 273 *on page 235*.

The instrument cluster display shows line 2 » Fig. 271 *on page 233*, which indicates the proximity.

› Using the switch **DISTANCE** on the lever, adjust the line 2 to the desired distance.

Note

- If the proximity is changed in infotainment, the change will only come into effect after a subsequent activation of the ACC.
- The higher the speed, the greater the proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- The adjustment of the distance is stored (depending on Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Special driving conditions

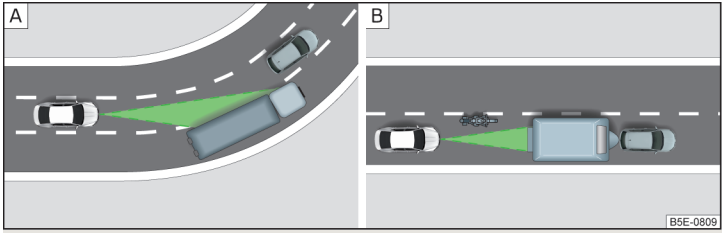


Fig. 274 **Cornering / narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side**

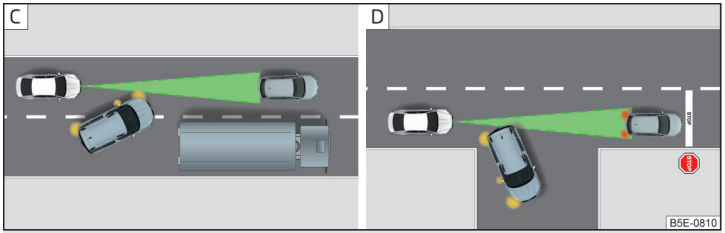


Fig. 275 **Lane changes of other vehicles / stationary vehicles**

Read and observe ! on page 233 first.

The following (and similar) situations require special attention and possibly the intervention of the driver (braking, accelerating etc.).

When cornering
When driving into or driving out of long corners, it could be that a vehicle is travelling in the adjacent lane and is scanned by the radar » Fig. 274 - A. The host vehicle is then controlled according to this vehicle.

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side
A narrow or offset vehicle driving can only be recognized by the ACC if this is located in the scanning range of the radar » Fig. 274 - B.

Other vehicles changing lanes
Vehicles that change onto the lane with a small distance » Fig. 275 - C may not be detected by ACC in good time.

Stationary vehicles
The ACC does not detect stationary objects! When a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or sheers off and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, » Fig. 275 - D the ACC does not respond to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special body parts
Other vehicles with a load or with body parts protruding from the sides, back or top of the vehicle contour may not be detected by the ACC.

Overtaking and towing

Read and observe ! on page 233 first.

When overtaking
When your vehicle is being controlled at a speed that is lower than the set speed and the turn signal is operated, ACC assesses this situation as meaning that the driver wishes to overtake. The ACC automatically accelerates the vehicle, thereby reducing the proximity to a vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle changes to the overtaking lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, ACC accelerates until the set speed is reached and then keeps it constant.

Acceleration can be cancelled at any time by touch on the brake pedal or pressing the button CANCEL on the lever » Fig. 273 *on page 235*.

Towing a trailer
When towing, or if another accessory is connected to the trailer socket, ACC control is set with a lower rate. The manner of driving should therefore be adapted to this limitation.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! on page 233 first.

If, for some unknown reason, ACC is not available, the warning light ! appears in the display of the instrument cluster and an appropriate message is shown.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor cover or the sensor is dirty or covered, a message appears on the instrument cluster display stating there is no sensor view. Clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacles » Fig. 238 *on page 208*.

If there is no sensor view in the winter, the snow on the sensor under the cover could be the reason. The ACC is functional again after the snow melts away from the sensor.

ACC not available
If the ACC is currently unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If ACC continues to be unavailable, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

ACC fault
With an ACC fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Introduction

The Front Assist (hereinafter referred to as the system) warns you of the danger of a collision with a vehicle or another obstacle in front of the vehicle, and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes where necessary.

The area in front of the vehicle is monitored by a radar sensor» page 208.

WARNING
- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The system does not respond vehicles that are crossing or oncoming.

CAUTION
In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the system becomes unavailable.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 238 first.

› In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **Driver assistance**.

- *Front Assist (ambient traffic monitor. sys.)* - Set the assistant for distance monitoring to the vehicles ahead
  - **Active** - Activate/deactivate the assistant
  - **Advance warning** (Version 1) - Activate/deactivate advance warning
  - **Advance warning** (Version 2) - Activating/deactivating and setting the distance level at which a warning occurs
  - **Display distance warning** - Activate/deactivate distance warnings

Operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 238 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.
- Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- Warns you of an impending collision.
- Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
- If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic braking action is performed.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.
✓ The system is activated.
✓ TCS is activated » page 210.
✓ The vehicle is travelling forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

Note
The system can be impaired or may not be available, for example when driving in “sharp ”curves or with an ESC engagement » page 209.

Distance warning

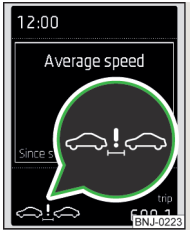


Fig. 276
Display in the instrument cluster: Proximity warning

Read and observe ! and ! on page 238 first.

The display of the distance warning is for vehicles with MAXI DOT display.

If a safe distance from the vehicle ahead is fallen short of, the warning light appears in the display » Fig. 276.

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Warning and automatic braking

Fig. 277
Display in instrument cluster: Advance warning or emergency braking at low speed

Read and observe ! and ! on page 238 first.

Emergency braking at low speed
In the event of a risk of collision in a vehicle speed range of approximately 5 km/h to 30 km/h, the warning light appears on the display » Fig. 277 and the system initiates automatic braking.

Advance warning
If the system detects a risk of collision, the warning light appears on the display » Fig. 277 and an audible signal is emitted.

The pre-warning display can occur in the following situations.
- If there is a risk of collision with a **moving** obstacle in a speed range of approximately 30 km/h to 210 km/h.
- If there is a risk of collision with a **stationary** obstacle in a speed range of approximately 30 km/h to 85 km/h.

When the advance warning is issued, the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle avoided!

Immediate warning and automatic braking - a moving obstacle
If the driver does not react to the advance warning when in danger of a collision with a moving obstacle, the system briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

If the driver does not respond to acute warning, the system begins to automatically brake the vehicle.

Automatic braking - a stationary obstacle
If the driver does not respond to the advance warning of the risk of a collision with a stationary obstacle in a speed range of approximately 30 km/h to 60 km/h, the system initiates automatic braking.

Information on automatic braking
If automatic brake intervention is triggered by the system, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.

The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by means of a steering intervention.

Brake assist
If the driver brakes inadequate with an impending collision, the system automatically increases braking force.

The braking assistance only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

Pedestrian recognition

Read and observe ! and ! on page 238 first.

The pedestrian recognition can help to prevent accidents with crossing pedestrians or to mitigate the consequences of an accident.

The system warns of an imminent collision, prepares the vehicle for an emergency braking, supports during braking or performs an automatic braking.

Emergency braking at low speed
If there is a risk of collision in a vehicle speed range of about 5 km/h to 30 km/h, the system triggers an automatic braking.

With automatic braking, the warning light appears in the display » Fig. 277 *on page 239*.

Advance warning and automatic braking
If the system detects a risk of collision in a vehicle speed range of 30 km / h to 65 km / h, the warning light appears on the display » Fig. 277 *on page 239* and an audible signal is emitted.

With a warning the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle is to be avoided!

If the driver does not respond to the advance warning, the system begins to automatically brake the vehicle.

Deactivation/activation

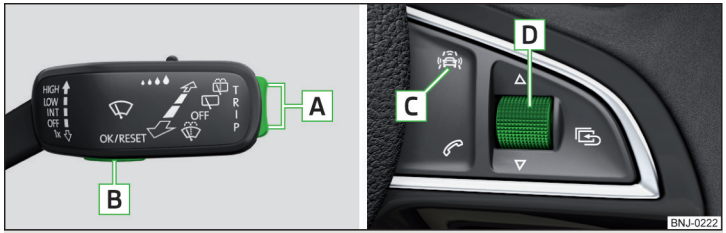


Fig. 278 **Buttons/dial: on control lever/on multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 238 first.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The system should only be disabled in exceptional cases » !.

On vehicles with the MAXI DOT display, the system can be activated/deactivated in the main menu » page 48, *Menu item* **Assist systems**.

Deactivation / activation in vehicles with segment display

Button » Fig. 278	Action	Operation
A	Hold up / down	Show Front Assist menu item
B	Press	Deactivate/activate system

Deactivation / activation in vehicles with multi-function steering wheel

Button / dial » Fig. 278	Action	Operation
C	Press	Show Front Assist menu item
D	Press	Deactivate/activate system

Disable / enable and setting in the Infotainment
In Infotainment, the entire system or the function advance warning and distance warning can be deactivated/activated» page 238, *Settings in Infotainment*.

The distance-warning function was deactivated before the ignition was switched off, it remains deactivated after the ignition is switched on again.

! WARNING

In the following situations, Front Assist should be switched off for safety reasons.
- When the vehicle is being towed away.
- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- If an unfounded warning or a system action was taken.
- When on a truck, or a car ferry service or similar.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 238 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor cover or the sensor is dirty or covered, a message appears on the instrument cluster display stating there is no sensor view. Clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacles » Fig. 238 *on page 208*.

If there is no sensor view in the winter, the snow on the sensor under the cover could be the reason. The system is functional again after the snow melts away from the sensor.

System unavailable
If the system is currently unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the system still is not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Select the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)

Introduction

By selecting the driving mode, the driving behaviour can be adapted to the desired mode of operation.

The following modes **Eco**. **Comfort**. **Normal**. **Sports**. **Individual** and **Offroad** are available.

The**Comfort** is only on vehicles with adaptive chassis control (DCC) and the mode **Offroad** available only on vehicles Octavia Scout.

WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, in section *Introduction*.

Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

The adaptive chassis control (following known as DCC) provides the ability to adjust the shock characteristics for the sporty, normal or comfortable driving when the corresponding control mode is selected.

The DCC evaluates steering response and road conditions while driving continuously and adjusts the suspension behaviour within the selected driving mode accordingly.

Mode Eco

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

This mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Drive
Vehicle acceleration is more relaxed than in **Normal** mode.

The recommended gear is controlled such to achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption » page 43.

If the START-STOP system is deactivated manually» page 200, this will be automatically activated.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **E** » page 204.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
Acceleration occurs more relaxed than in **Normal** » page 232mode with distance control.

Headlights with LED lamps
The system is in economic mode » page 66. The headlamps are in basic setting and do not adapt to the direction of travel.

Air conditioning (Climatronic)
The air conditioning is controlled so as to save energy. For this reason, for example, it may take longer to reach the desired interior temperature in mode **Normal**.

Note

- If a trailer or other accessory is to be connected to the trailer socket, driving mode **Eco** is not available.
- The maximum vehicle acceleration (kick down function) is possible also in driving mode **Eco**.

Mode Comfort

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

This mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long motorway journeys.

Mode normal

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

This mode is suitable for a conventional driving.

Mode Sports

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

This mode is suitable for a sporty driving.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

DCC
The DCC adjusts the chassis for the sporty driving style.

Steering
The power steering is reduced slightly, i.e., the driver needs to exert more force for steering .

Drive
The vehicle acceleration is more dynamic than in **Normal** mode.

Front axle differential lock
The driving force distribution between the front wheels is adapted to the sporty driving style.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
The acceleration is quicker than in **Normal** mode with distance control » page 232.

Headlights with LED lamps
The headlamps adapt to the driving style more dynamically than in mode **Normal** » page 66.

ProActive passenger protection
The first level of protection is deactivated » page 243.

Engine noise
The engine noise is noticeable in the interior more intensely than in **Normal** mode.

mode individual

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

In the mode **Individual** each system can be set independently » page 243, *Individual mode* **settings**.

Mode Offroad

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

The mode **Offroad** is suitable for driving outside paved roads.

Further information » page 211, *OFF ROAD mode*.

Note
The mode **Offroad** is deactivated after switching off and switching on the ignition and the mode **Normal** is set automatically.

Mode selection and Infotainment display

Fig. 279 **Button for selecting the driving mode: Version 1/Version 2**

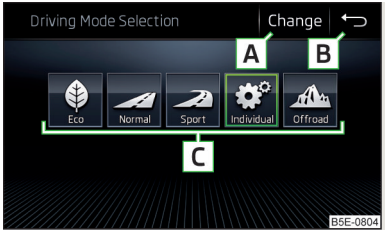


Fig. 280
Display on Infotainment screen

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

Procedure for the selection of the driving mode
› Press the button and MODE » Fig. 279.

In the Infotainment screen, a running mode menu » Fig. 280 appears.

The mode is changed by repeatedly pressing the button and MODE or by tapping the corresponding function surface on the Infotainment screen.

If a driving mode other than **Normal** is selected, then the symbol lights up on the button or MODE.

If the mode **Sport** or **Individual** was set prior to the engine being switched off (Drive - Sport), the drive changes to **Normal** mode after the engine is started. In order to switch back to **Sport**, select mode **Sport** or **Individual** or set the selector lever of the automatic transmission to mode **S**.

Function surfaces on the screen » Fig. 280

A Sets the **Individual** mode and information on the setting of the currently selected mode

B Cancel the menu to select driving mode

C Modes (the surface of the selected mode is shown in green)

Note

- The currently selected driving mode is displayed in the infotainment system in the status bar next to the symbol.
- The selected driving mode or the configuration of **Individual** mode is stored in the active user account personalisation » page 50.
- If the driving mode menu is not operated within a few seconds, the Infotainment switches to the last selected menu or switches off.

Individual mode settings

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

In the **Individual** mode, the following menu items can be set.

- **DCC:** - Adjustment of the shock characteristics
- **Steering:** - Adjustment of the power steering characteristics
- **Drive:** - Adjustment of the drive characteristics
- **Front differential lock:** - Adjustment of the front differential lock characteristics
- **ACC:** - Adjustment of the vehicle acceleration with adaptive cruise control switched on
- **Dynamic cornering lights:** - Adjustment of the front headlight characteristics with LED lamps
- **Air conditioning:** - Adjustment of the Climatronic characteristics
- **Engine sound:** - Adjustment of engine noise in the vehicle
- **Reset mode** - Setting for all menu items in **Individual** mode to **Normal**
  - **Cancel** - Keep the current settings
  - **Reset** - cancels all menu items in the **Normal** mode

Proactive passenger protection (Crew Protect Assist)

Introduction

ProActive passenger protection (following known as system) increases passenger protection in the front seats in situations that could lead to vehicle impact or overturning.

! WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.

Note

- The system component service life is monitored electronically. Further information » page 36, *Safety systems*.
- If the front passenger front airbag is deactivated, the belt tensioning function for the front passenger seat is switched off.

Operation

Read and observe ! on page 243 first.

In critical driving situations (e.g. during emergency braking or a sudden change in direction), the following steps can be taken separately or combined in order to reduce the risk of serious injury.

- The front passenger's and driver's seatbelts, if worn, are automatically **tensioned** closely over the body.
- Opened door windows in the front doors are automatically closed up to a gap of about 5 cm from the edge.
- The sliding/tilting roof is closed.

Once the critical driving situation has passed, the tension on the seatbelts will be released again.

The system operates at two levels of protection.

The first level of protection

The system already intervenes in situations that may occur during dynamic driving. As a result, this primarily helps to keep the driver and the passenger in the correct seated position.

The first protection level can be deactivated in one of the following ways.
- In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **Driver assistance**.
- Deactivation of TCS » page 210.
- By selecting the driving mode **Sport** » page 242.

Provided that the driving mode **Sport** is not selected, the system is activated over the two levels of protection after switching the ignition off and on again.

The second level of protection
The system intervenes only if the situation is evaluated as critical, such as when panic braking at high speeds.

This level of protection cannot be deactivated.

Vehicles with the Front Assist system
Using this information, a system intervention may also occur when there is the danger of a collision with an obstacle detected in front of the vehicle.

Spurhalteassistent (Lane Assist)

Introduction

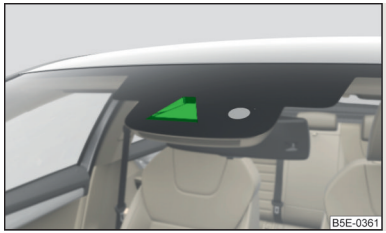


Fig. 281
Sensor for Lane Assist

The lane departure warning (following known as system) helps to keep the vehicle between the boundary lines of a lane.

The system recognises the boundary lines of the lane using a sensor » Fig. 281.

When the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes, the system makes a **light** movement of the steering wheel in the opposite direction to the boundary line. This corrective steering intervention can be manually overridden at any time.

WARNING
- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, in section *Introduction*.
- Lane Assist can help you keep the vehicle within the lane. However, it does not steer the vehicle for you. The driver retains full responsibility for steering at all times.
- Some objects or markings on the road can be recognised as the boundary lines - an erroneous steering intervention may be the result.

WARNING
The system may not be able to recognise the boundary line, or recognise it incorrectly, for example, in the following situations.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When driving in “sharp” bends.
- The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.

CAUTION
Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the system.

Note
- The system is designed for driving on motorways and roads with adequate longitudinal markings.
- The system can detect both continuous and broken lines.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe and on page 244 first.

› In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **Driver assistance**.

- *Lane Assist (lane departure warning sys.)* - Settings for Lane Assist
  - **Active** - Activate/deactivate the assistant
  - **Adaptive lane guidance** - Activate/deactivate adaptive lane guidance

Operation

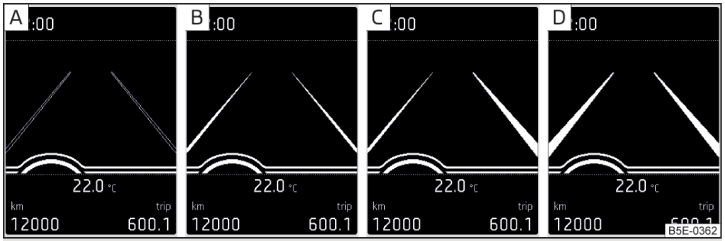


Fig. 282 **Monochromatic display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system displays**

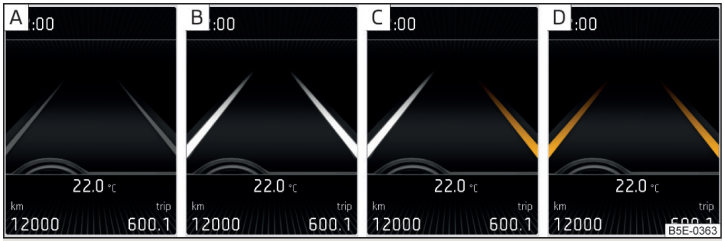


Fig. 283 **Colour display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system displays**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 244 first.

System displays » Fig. 282 and » Fig. 283

A The system is active, but not ready to intervene.

B The system is active and ready to intervene.

C The system intervenes when approaching the right-hand boundary lane.

D Adaptive tracking takes place.

The system can intervene when the following basic conditions are present.

✓ The system is activated.

✓ The vehicle is travelling at more than around 65 km/h.

✓ The boundary line of at least one side of the lane is detected.

✓ The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.

✓ The lane is more than 2.5 m in width.

If the turn signal is switched on (e.g. when turning), no steering intervention takes place when the vehicle approaches the boundary line. The system regards the situation as an intended lane change.

Warning lights in the instrument cluster

The system is active, but not ready to intervene.

The system is active and ready to intervene or is currently intervening.

Adaptive lane assist

Adaptive tracking helps to keep the vehicle in the position between the boundary lines selected by the driver, by means of steering intervention.

If the position within the lane is changed, the system quickly adapts and holds the newly-selected position.

Steering wheel vibrations

In the following situations, it may occasionally be the case that due to the steering wheel vibrations the syst4em indicates that a driver steering intervention is required.

- The system is not able to keep the vehicle by a within the lane due to a steering intervention.
- During an intense system-related steering intervention, the system suddenly cannot recognize the boundary lines.

! WARNING

The system function may be restricted if, for example there is danger due to ruts on a downhill road or in a crosswind.

Activation / deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 244 first.

The activation/deactivation of the system can be carried out in one of two ways.

- In the instrument cluster display » page 48, *Menu item* **Assist systems**.
- In Infotainment » page 244, *Settings in Infotainment*.

Adaptive tracking can also be enabled or disabled In Infotainment.

After switching off and switching on the ignition, the system setting is retained.

Note

The system setting is stored (depending on Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 244 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the windscreen is dirty, iced or misted up in the sensor area, a message appears indicating that there is no sensor view. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles from the sensor area.

System unavailable
If the system is currently unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Try to re-activate the machine. If the system still is not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

System fault
In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Request to take over steering
If the system detects that there are no hands are on the steering wheel, this will not work properly. You will be prompted to take over steering. Place your hands on the steering wheel.

Traffic sign recognition

Introduction

The traffic sign recognition (following known as system) shows certain traffic signs (e.g. speed limits) on the display of the instrument cluster and if necessary warns against excessive speeds.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Vertical traffic signs must always take precedence over the traffic signs shown in the display. The driver is always responsible for correctly assessing the traffic situation.
- Speed specifications in the displayed road signs refer to the customary speed units. For example, the ⑳ indicator in the display can refer to km/h or mph, depending on the country.

WARNING

The traffic signs may not be displayed or may be displayed incorrectly in the system e.g. in the following situations.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- Travelling at high speed.
- The traffic signs are covered (e.g. by trees, snow or dirt).
- The traffic signs are not standard (round with a red border) or are damaged.
- The traffic signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- The traffic signs were changed (the navigation data are out of date).

Note

The system is only available in some countries.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe ! on page 246 first.

› In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface ⚙ → **Driver assistance**.

- *Dynamic Road Sign Display* - Settings for the Dynamic Road Sign Display
  - **Show in instrument cluster** - Activation/deactivation of the additional traffic signs in the display of the instrument cluster
  - **Speed warning:** - Configuration of a warning when the speed limit is exceeded
  - **Warning at over** - Configuration of the warning timing with the option to exceed the speed limit in a range from 0 to 20 km/h

- *Trailer recognition*
  - **Show road signs relevant to trailers** - Activating / deactivating the display of road signs relevant to trailers
  - **Use for route calculation** - Activation / deactivation taking trailers in account for route calculation in navigation
  - **Maximum speed for trailer** - Set the top speed for towing a trailer

Operation

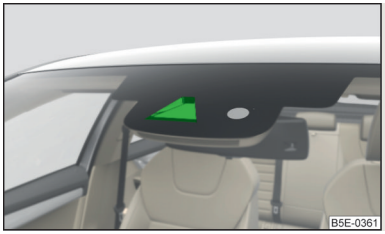


Fig. 284
Sensor for traffic sign recognition

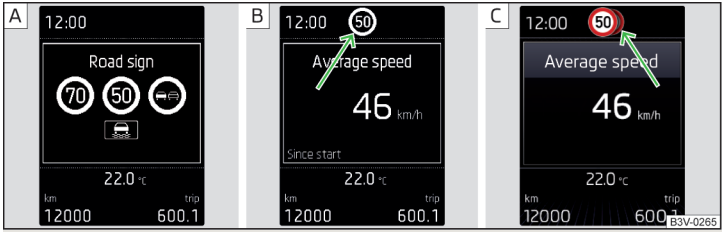


Fig. 285 **Display in the instrument cluster: Display examples**

Read and observe ! on page 246 first.

Description of displays and displayed traffic signs

Display » Fig. 285

A Display of detected traffic signs » page 45, *Driving data (Multifunction display)*

B Additional display (monochromatic display)

C Additional display (colour display)

The system can display the following (vertical) traffic signs where identified.

- Speed limit.
- Overtaking prohibited.

Additional signs, such as 'when wet' or signs which only apply for a limited time can also be displayed.

The system displays only traffic signs that are in the “viewing area” of the sensor » Fig. 284.

Data from the sensor is supplemented by information from the Infotainment Navigation. This is the reason why traffic signs with maximum speeds can also be shown on sections of roads which do not have any traffic signs.

Warning when exceeding the speed limit

The warning when exceeding the permissible speed (based on the detected traffic sign) can be activated and set in Infotainment» page 246.

Mode when towing a trailer

For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, in Infotainment it is possible to enable or disable the relevant traffic signs for trailer operation and the top speed for towing a trailer » page 246, *Settings in Infotainment*.

Note

If, for example, you are on a motorway without speed limits, then a road sign relating to the end of all limits is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Additional display

Read and observe ! on page 246 first.

If the menu item Road sign is currently not shown » Fig. 285 *on page 247* - A, the road sign with the speed limit will appear in the upper display area of the instrument cluster » Fig. 285 *on page 247* - B, C.

If several traffic signs are detected simultaneously, in some cases the next traffic sign will also be displayed in the colour display - » Fig. 285 *on page 247* - C.

All detected traffic signs can be displayed via the multifunction display in the menu item Traffic Sign Recognition » Fig. 285 *on page 247* - A.

The additional display can be activated / deactivated in Infotainment» page 246.

Note

The setting (activation/deactivation) of the auxiliary display will be saved (depending on Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 50.

Malfunctions and information messages

Read and observe ! on page 246 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty

If the screen in the sensor area is dirty, iced or misted, a caution to clean the screen appears. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles from the sensor area.

System fault

In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

System limitation (Navigation data not available)

If the Infotainment Navigation submits no data, a message regarding the limitation of the system function appears. Check whether the map documents are up to date or whether the vehicle is currently in a location for which no navigation data are available.

Fatigue detection

The fatigue detection system (following known as system) recommends the driver taking a break from driving when, because of the driver's steering behaviour, driver fatigue can be detected.

From the starting of the journey, the system evaluates the steering behaviour at speeds 65-200 km/h. If, while driving, there have been changes in the steering behaviours that are evaluated by the system as indicating possible fatigue, a break recommendation is issued.

Conditions under which a break from driving is detected by the system

- The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
- The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated/deactivated in menu CAR / → → **Driver assistance** in the infotainment system.

Pause recommendation

The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster and a message about the detected fatigue. An audible signal is also emitted.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.
- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

The tyre pressure monitoring function (following known as system) monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

If the tyre inflation pressure changes, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and an audible signal sounds » page 37.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed inflation pressure and these pressure values are stored in the system. ▸

Always save the tyre pressure values in the system if one of the following events occurs.

- Change of tyre inflation pressure.
- Change one or more wheels.
- Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
- The warning light (!) in the instrument cluster lights up.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 208, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility. Tyre pressure should be checked regularly » page 281.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage.
- Before storing the pressures, the tyres must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 281. If the wrong pressure valuesare stored, the system may not issue any warnings, even if the tyre pressure is too low.

CAUTION

To ensure proper system function, the tyre pressure values must be stored every 10,000 km or 1x a year.

Storing the tyre pressure values and Infotainment display

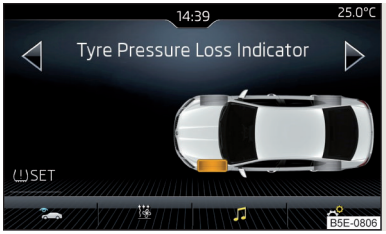


Fig. 286
Button for storing / Example of screen display: it indicates a front left tire pressure change

Read and observe ! and ! on page 249 first.

Procedure for storing the tyre pressure values

› Inflate all the tyres to the specified pressure.
› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface Tap → **Vehicle status**.
› Use the function surfaces ◁ ▷ Select the menu item *Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator*.
› Tap on function surface (!) **SET** » Fig. 286.

In addition, follow the instructions that appear on the screen.

A message on the screen informs about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

Note

When the warning light (!) appears in the instrument cluster, the affected tyre can be displayed on the infotainment system » Fig. 286.

Towing device and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

The maximum trailer nose weight when towing a trailer is **75 kg**, Vehicles with four-wheel drive **80 kg** and G-TEC vehicles **56 kg**. Other data (e.g. shown on the nameplate of the hitch) on provides information about the test values of the device .

WARNING

- Before each time you make a journey when using the ball rod, check that it is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess.
- When the knee-joint bar is not used and properly secured in the receiving shaft, it is damaged or incomplete, this must not be used - there is a risk of an accident.
- Do not perform any modifications or changes to the towing device.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing device clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball rod from being attached securely!

Note

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the original reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

Description

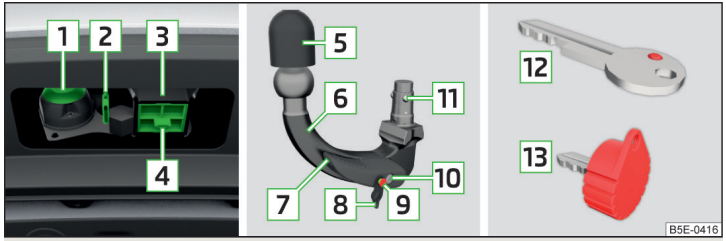


Fig. 287 **Carrier for the towing device/tow bar/key versions**

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

The tow bar is detachable and is located in the storage compartment for the spare/emergency wheel.

Towing device carrier, tow bar and key versions (dependent on equipment)
» Fig. 287

1 13-pin power socket
2 Safety eye
3 Mounting recess
4 Cap
5 Dust cap
6 Ball rod
7 Operating lever
8 Lock cap
9 Trigger pin
10 Lock
11 Locking ball
12 Key – Version 1
13 Key – Version 2

Adjusting the ready position

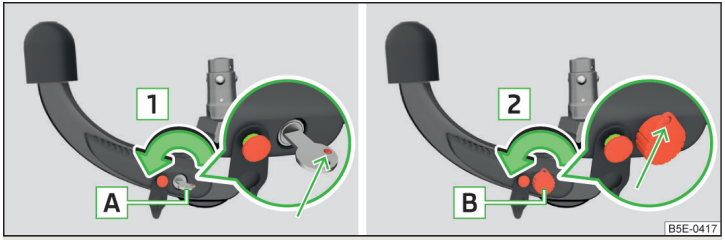


Fig. 288 **Step 1: Key version 1/Key version 2**

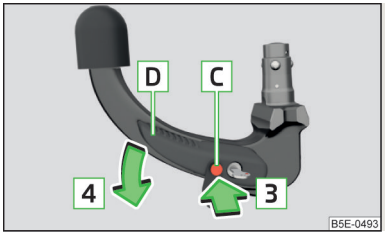


Fig. 289
Step 2: Both key versions

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

The tow bar can only be fitted if it is in the ready position.

Step 1 - Applies to key version 1
› Remove the cap from the lock
› Insert key A into the lock so that the green marking is pointing upwards.
› Turn key A in the direction of arrow 1 so that the red marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 288.

Step 1 - Applies to key version 2
› Remove the cap from the lock
› Insert key B into the lock so that the eye of the key is pointing downwards.
› Turn the key in the direction of arrow B 2 so that the conclusions release shows up » Fig. 288.

Step 2 - Applies to both key versions
› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
› Push release pin C in the direction of arrow 3 to the stop, and simultaneously push operating lever D in the direction of arrow 4 to the stop » Fig. 289.

Operating lever D remains locked in this position.

Check the setting of the standby position

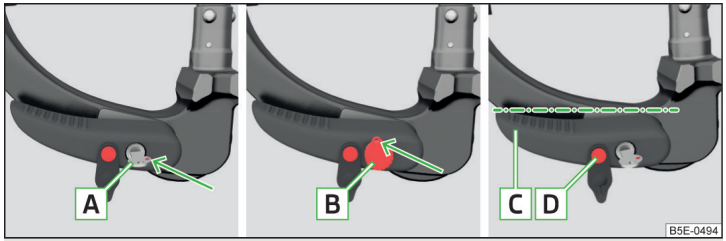


Fig. 290 **Ready position: Key version 1/Key version 2/Position of the lever and the release bolt with both key versions**

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 290
✓ Applies to key version 1 - the red marking on key A is pointing upwards.
✓ Applies to key version 2 - the eye of the key B is pointing upwards.
✓ Operating lever C is locked in the lower position.
✓ The trigger pin D can be moved.

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed or turned into a different position. The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

Assembling the bar ball – Step 1

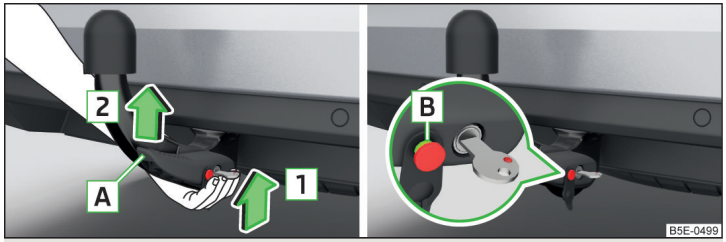


Fig. 291 **Insert ball rod / trigger bolt in the extended state**

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

Insert ball rod - applies to both key versions

› Remove the cover for the mounting recess 4 in a downwards direction » Fig. 287 *on page 250*.
› Adjust the ball rod to the ready position » page 250, *Adjusting the ready position*.
› Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 291 and insert into the mounting recess in arrow direction 1 until you hear it click into place » !.

The lever A **automatically** turns upwards in the direction of arrow 2 and the release pin B pops out (both its red and green parts are visible) » !.

If lever A does not turn automatically, or if the release pin B does not pop out, remove the ball rod from the mounting recess by turning lever A downwards as far as it can go. Clean the contact surfaces on the ball rod and the mounting recess.

! WARNING

- Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the ball rod – risk of finger injuries!
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever violently upwards to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball rod is not attached correctly!

Assembling the bar ball – Step 2

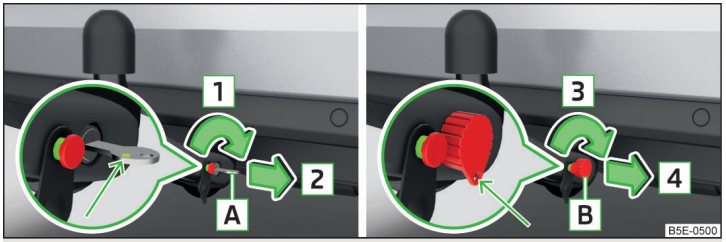


Fig. 292 **Locking the lock: Key version 1/Key version 2**

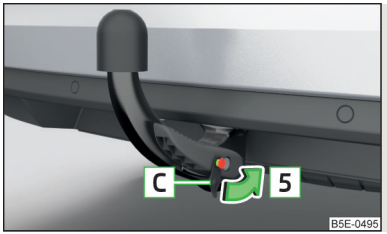


Fig. 293
Place cap on the lock

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

Applies to key version 1

› Turn key A in the direction of arrow 1 so that the green marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 292.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 2.

Applies to key version 2

› Turn the key B in the direction of arrow 3 so that the conclusions release points down » Fig. 292.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 4.

Applies to both key versions

› Fit and press cap C onto the lock in the direction of arrow 5 » Fig. 293.
› Check that the ball rod is securely attached » page 253, *Check proper fitting*. ▸

WARNING

After fitting the tow bar, always secure the lock and remove the key. The tow bar must not be operated with the key inserted.

Check proper fitting

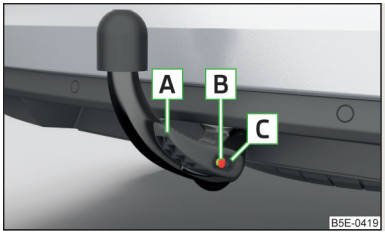


Fig. 294
Correctly secured ball rod

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

Correctly secured ball rod » Fig. 294

- ✓ The tow bar must sit securely in the receiving shaft. There must be no play when “shaken” roughly.
- ✓ Operating lever A is as far up as possible.
- ✓ The release pin B is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
- ✓ The key is removed and the cap C attached to the lock.

Removing the bar ball – Step 1

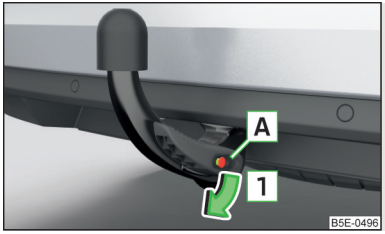


Fig. 295
Remove the cap from the lock

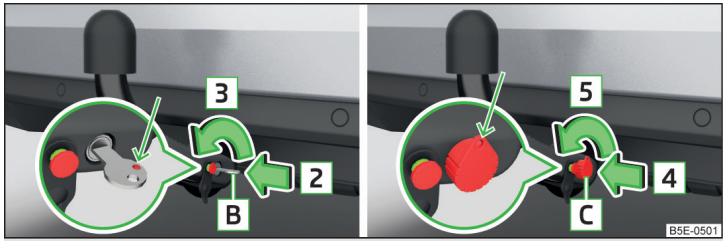


Fig. 296 **Unlocking the lock: Key version 1/Key version 2**

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

No trailer or other accessory is connected to the tow bar. We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.

Applies to both key versions

› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 295.

Applies to key version 1

› Insert key B into the lock in the direction of arrow 2 so that the green marking is pointing upwards.
› Turn key B in the direction of arrow 3 so that the red marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 296.

Applies to key version 2

› Insert key C into the lock in the direction of arrow 4 so that the eye of the key is pointing downwards.
› Turn key C in the direction of arrow 5 so that the eye of the key is pointing upwards » Fig. 296.

Removing the bar ball – Step 2

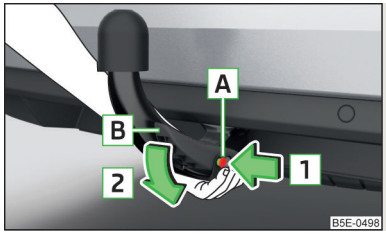


Fig. 297
Release ball bar

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

› Grasp the ball rod from **below** » Fig. 297.
› Push release pin A in the direction of arrow 1 to the stop, and simultaneously push operating lever B in the direction of arrow 2 to the stop .

The ball rod is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

› Place the cap 4 » Fig. 287 *on page 250* onto the mounting recess.

If lever B is held firmly and not pushed downwards to the stop, it will move back up after the ball rod is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The knee-joint bar will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is installed» page 250, *Adjusting the ready position*.

The knee-joint bar must be cleaned before storing in the box with the vehicle tool always.

! WARNING

Never allow the ball rod to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

! CAUTION

- Store the ball rod in the box in the ready position and with the key facing upwards - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the key!
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not climb on it)!

Vertical load with mounted accessories

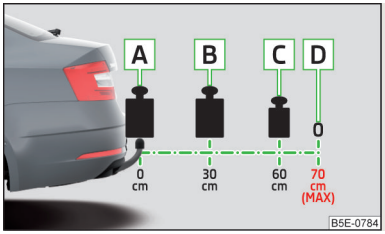


Fig. 298
Representation of the maximum length of the mounted accessories and the permissible total weight of the accessory depending on the load centre of gravity

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The **maximum length** of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) is **70 cm** » Fig. 298.

The total permitted weight of the accessories including load changes with increasing distance of the load centre of gravity from the ball head of the towing device.

Distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head		Permissible total weight of the accessories, including load
A	0 cm	75 kg / 56 kg[a)]
B	30 cm	75 kg / 56 kg[a)]
C	60 cm	35 kg / 28 kg[a)]
D	70 cm	0 kg / 0 kg[a)]

a) Applies to G-TEC vehicles.

! CAUTION

Never exceed the permissible **total weight** of the accessories incl. load and **maximum length** of the accessories - There is a risk of damage to the towing device.

i Note

We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Using hitch

Trailer (accessory) connect and disconnect

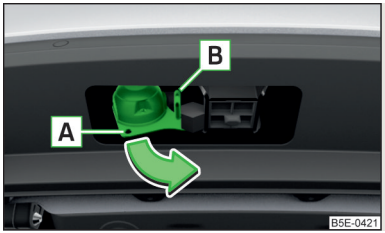


Fig. 299
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket, safety eyelet

Connect / disconnect

› Fit the ball rod.
› Grip the 13-pin socket at point A and swing out in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 299.
› Remove the protective cap 5 » Fig. 287 *on page 250*.
› Place the trailer (the accessory) onto the ball head.
› Open the socket cap and insert the plug of the trailer (accessories) into the 13-pin socket A » Fig. 299. (If the trailer / accessories have a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding reduction piece from the ŠKODA Original Accessories).
› Suspend the breakaway cable of the trailer at the safety eyelet B (the breakaway cable must **sag** in all trailer settings in view of the vehicle).

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Exterior mirrors

You should have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer using the standard rear-view mirrors.

Headlights

The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer (accessory) is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users. Set the range of the headlights » page 64, *Operating the lights*[1].

Power supply of the trailer / accessory power system

In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory), the trailer (accessories) is supplied with power from the vehicle (with ignition switched on and off).

With the engine switched off, the vehicle battery is discharged by the connected consumers.

At low charge state of the vehicle battery, the power supply to the trailer (accessories) is interrupted.

WARNING

- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) may result in an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- Do not make any adjustments to the electrical installation of the vehicle and the trailer (accessories) - risk of an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- After the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory) the trailer / accessory lights should be checked for function.
- Never use the securing eye to tow - risk of accident!

CAUTION

- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) can lead to the inoperability of the vehicle electronics.
- The total power consumption of all the connected loads to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle.

Loading a trailer

Correct the **tyre inflation pressure** on the vehicle for “full load”» page 281.

Distribution of the cargo

Distribute the cargo in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the load from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Drive with particular caution if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

[1] Does not apply to vehicles with headlights with LED lamps.

WARNING

Sliding cargo can significantly adversely affect stability and driving safety - risk of accident!

Trailer

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances.

Permissible trailer load - Octavia

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	MG	1300	610
	DSG	1300	620
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	MG	1100	610
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	MG	1400	690
	DSG	1400	700
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1500	620
	DSG	1500	630
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1100	600
	AG	1100	620
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG	1600	650
	DSG	1600	660
	DSG 4x4	1600	710
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1400	640
1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR	MG	1500	650
	DSG	1500	650
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	660
	DSG	1600	670
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	660
	MG 4x4	2000	710
	DSG	1600	670
	DSG 4x4	2000	730
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1800	730

Permissible trailer load - Octavia RS

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	MG	–[a)]	–[a)]
	DSG	–[a)]	–[a)]
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	MG	–[a)]	–[a)]
	DSG	–[a)]	–[a)]
	DSG 4x4	–[a)]	–[a)]

a) The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Permissible trailer load - Octavia Combi

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	MG	1300	620
	DSG	1300	630
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	MG	1100	620
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	MG	1400	700
	DSG	1400	710
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1500	630
	DSG	1500	640
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1100	610
	AG	1100	620
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG	1600	660
	DSG	1600	670
	DSG 4x4	1600	720
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1400	650
1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR	MG	1500	660
	DSG	1500	660
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	670
	DSG	1600	680

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	670
	MG 4x4	2000	720
	DSG	1600	680
	DSG 4x4	2000	740
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1800	730

Permissible trailer load - Octavia Combi RS

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	MG	–[a]	–[a]
	DSG	–[a]	–[a]
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	MG	–[a]	–[a]
	DSG	–[a]	–[a]
	DSG 4x4	–[a]	–[a]

[a] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Permissible trailer load - Octavia Combi Scout

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	–[a]	–[a]
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	–[a]	–[a]
	DSG 4x4	–[a]	–[a]
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	–[a]	–[a]

[a] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

WARNING

The maximum vertical load and the maximum trailer load must not be exceeded - there is risk of accident!

Towing a trailer

Driving speed

For safety reasons, do not drive with the trailer any faster than 100 km/h (when the towing vehicle is a passenger car of category M1) or 80 km/h (when the towing vehicle is a truck of category N1).

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from “swaying” by accelerating.

Brakes

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

CAUTION

With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

The alarm is triggered if, with a vehicle with activated anti-theft alarm (hereinafter only warning system), the electrical connection to the trailer (accessory) is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer (accessory) is coupled or uncoupled » page 56.

Conditions for including a trailer (accessory) in the anti-theft alarm system.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer (accessory) is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is not equipped with LED taillights.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

WARNING

- Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle are to be carried out only by a specialist garage. Improperly conducted work (including work on the electronic components and their software) can cause faults - there is a risk of accidents and increased wear on parts!
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA AUTO cannot assume any liability for products which have not been approved by ŠKODA even though these may be products with a type approval or have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 260 first.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with the intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA partner. They will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant / battery replacement etc.).

Statutory checks

Read and observe ! on page 260 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and roadworthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose.

Upon request, the ŠKODA Service Partners can prepare the vehicle for the tests or have this carried out.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation for a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

ŠKODA Service Partner

Read and observe ! on page 260 first.

All ŠKODA Service Partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO . All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 260 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Original Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts correspond exactly to the ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 260 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following.

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO has selected such accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch for other products, even though in some instances such parts may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 260 first.

! WARNING

If your vehicle is equipped with an original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the boot lid, the following instructions must be observed - otherwise there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries!

- The vehicle must always be equipped with a spoiler on the front bumper only in combination with the corresponding spoiler on the boot lid.
- This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.
- Improperly conducted work on the spoilers of your vehicle may result in malfunction.

Component protection

Read and observe ! on page 260 first.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This ensures the functional limitation of these components in a non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 260 first.

! WARNING

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tyre combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!

! WARNING

- No changes may be made to parts of the airbag system, the front bumper and the body.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- If the airbag is triggered, the airbag system must be exchanged.

WARNING

The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). The resulting damage can negatively affect the function of the airbag system - there is a risk of accidents and fatal injuries! The following guidelines must be observed.

- Any work on the front doors and their door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never drive with removed inner door panels or openings in the panels.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

Read and observe ! on page 260 first.

All new ŠKODA vehicles are 95% recyclable.

Service intervals

Introduction

The service interval display in the display of the instrument cluster will remind you to carry out every service stipulated by the manufacturer at the right time in order to prevent you from forgetting them » page 49.

The completion of services can be verified through the printed verification from the digital service schedule and the respective receipts.

The specified service intervals are tailored to normal operating conditions.

In the case of difficult operating conditions, it is necessary to have some service work performed before the date of the next service or between the specified service intervals. This applies mainly to the cleaning or the replacement of the air filter insert in regions with heavy dust pollution as well as checking and replacing the toothed belt, but also to vehicles with diesel particle filters, which can put greater strain on the engine oil.

The following is understood under difficult conditions:

- Fuel containing sulphur.
- Frequent short trips.
- Longer periods of engine idling (e.g. taxis).
- Operation in areas with heavy dust pollution.
- Frequent trailer operation.
- Predominantly stop-and-go traffic as is often the case in city driving, for example.
- Operation predominantly during winter.

You will be told at the specialist garage whether the operating conditions of your vehicle may make it necessary for service work to be carried out between the normal service intervals.

Different service charges may apply from the particular scope of work required, depending on the vehicle type and equipment and the status of your vehicle.

Note

- The customer is responsible for covering the cost of all services including changing or replenishing the oil, even during the warranty period, unless stated otherwise in the ŠKODA AUTO. warranty terms or other agreements.
- You will be informed about the current service scopes for the particular service work by the specialist garage.

Overview of service intervals

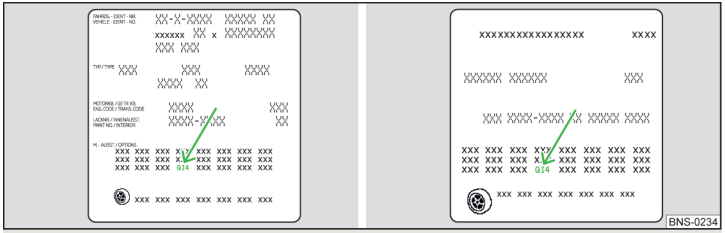


Fig. 300 **Vehicle data: Service Interval**

The service interval prescribed by the manufacturer is indicated on the vehicle data » Fig. 300. The vehicle data is affixed in the Owner's Manual and under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

One of the following service intervals applies to your vehicle:

- Fixed service interval QI1.
- Fixed service interval QI2.
- Fixed service interval QI3.
- Fixed service interval QI4.
- Variable service interval QI6.

In order to operate a vehicle with a flexible service interval, it is necessary that only the prescribed engine oil is used.

If this engine oil is not available, the oil change is subject to a fixed service interval. In this case, the vehicle **must** be changed to the fixed service interval.

Note

- The corresponding motor oil specifications » page 274.
- For vehicles with flexible service interval QI6, you can initiate a return to the fixed service interval or back to the flexible service interval to be performed by a specialist garage.

Fixed service intervals QI1 - QI4

Oil change service	QI1	Every 5,000 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI2	Every 7,500 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI3	Every 10,000 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI4	Every 15,000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 1	QI1 - QI4	After the first 30,000 km or 2 years[a], then every 30,000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 2		Every 15,000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 3		Every 10,000 km or every 1 year[a].
Brake fluid change	QI1 - QI4	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years,

[a] (whichever comes first).
[b] For information about the valid version for your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA partner.

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system on sharp braking. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – risk of accident!

Note

For diesel operation with a high sulphur content, the oil must be changed every 7,500 km. Ask your specialist garage for information on the countries where diesel fuel has a high sulphur content.

Variable service interval QI6

The oil change service intervals depend on the intensity at which the vehicle is driven and the local conditions in which the vehicle is used. For example, your vehicle is subjected to different demands when driven over short distances than when driven over long distances. The intervals are therefore **flexible**.

Oil change service	According to the service interval display (at the latest after 30,000 km or 2 years[a]).
Inspection[b] Variant 1	After the first 30,000 km or 2 years[a], then every 30,000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 2	Every 15,000 km or every 1 year[a].
Brake fluid change	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years,

[a] (whichever comes first).
[b] For information about the valid version for your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA partner.

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system on sharp braking. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – risk of accident!

Digital Service Plan

A specialist garage does not confirm the corresponding service evidence in this Owner´s Manual, but in the service information system called Digital Service Plan.

Therefore, we recommend that you always print the respective Service Certificate as evidence of the service work carried out.

Benefits of the digital service plan

- High level of security when it comes to the manipulation of the event entries.
- Transparent documentation of service work carried out.
- Protection against loss or damage of the event entries – you receive a complete service-verification if required.
- Optional; request of complete verification in electronic form.
- You can have the vehicle serviced in any specialist garage (also abroad) – the database is accessible worldwide.

- Increased transparency when purchasing a used vehicle due to event entries being stored centrally.
- The system entries support you in the enforcement of obligations under the ŠKODA extended warranty and mobility guarantee.

Cleaning and care

Introduction

Regular and thorough care retains the value of your vehicle.

When using the care product, always observe the instructions on the packaging. We recommend that you use the preservative from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents - there is a danger of damaging the material that is to be cleaned.

Note

We recommend that the vehicle is cleaned and cared for by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Washing the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 264 first.

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is frequent washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain on the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the underside of the vehicle at the end of the winter.

Washing by hand

Wash the vehicle from top to bottom, if necessary, wash using a soft sponge or washing mitt and plenty of water with appropriate detergents. Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Use a different sponge for the wheels, door sills and lower vehicle areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

Automatic car washes

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the blades of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

Pressure washer

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This particularly applies to information with respect to the **pressure** and **spray distance** from the vehicle surface.

WARNING

- Car washing in winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Take care when cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel wells - there is a risk of injury on sharp metal parts!

CAUTION

▪ Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight, do not exert pressure on the body while washing. The temperature of the washing water should be max. 60 ° C - otherwise there is a risk of damaging the vehicle paint.
▪ Before driving through a car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors - there is a risk of damage.

CAUTION

Washing the vehicle using pressure washers

▪ The foils should not be washed using pressure washers - there is a risk of damage .
▪ Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter – there is a risk of freezing.
▪ During cleaning, always keep a sufficiently large spraying distance to the parking sensors, the rear camera lens, to external decorative and protective plastic parts (e.g. Roof racks, spoilers, protective strips) and other vehicle parts made of non-metallic materials such as rubber hoses or insulation materials.
▪ The sensors of the parking aid can be sprayed only for a short time and there must be a minimum distance of 10 cm - there is a risk of damage.

Caring for the outside of the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 264 first.

Vehicle component	Facts of the matter	Remedy
Paint	Spilled fuel	Clear water, cloth, (clean as soon as possible)
	No water droplets form on the paint	Use hard wax (min. twice a year), apply wax to clean and dry body
	Matt paint	Use polish, then preserve (if the polish does not contain any preservative ingredients)
Plastic parts	Soiling	Clear water, cloth / sponge provided for the intended cleaning agent
Chromed and anodised parts	Soiling	Clear water, cloth or cleaning agent provided for this purpose, then polish with a soft dry cloth
Foils	Soiling	Soft sponge and mild soap solution[a]
Windows and door mirrors	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry using the intended cloth
Headlights/lights	Soiling	Soft sponge and mild soap solution[a]
Reversing camera	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a soft cloth
	Snow / ice	Hand brush / de-icer
Door lock cylinder	Snow / ice	De-icer
Wiper / wiper blades	Soiling	Glass cleaner, sponge or cloth
Wheels	Soiling	Clear water, then coat with appropriate conservation solution

[a] Mild soap solution = 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

The **jack** is maintenance-free. If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

The **towing device** is maintenance-free. Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Protection of hollow spaces

All the hollow spaces on your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of protective wax applied in the factory.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

Underbody protection

The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

Product life of the films
Environmental influences (e.g. sunlight, humidity, air pollution, rockfall) affect the life of the films. Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal: this is not a fault.

Sunlight may also affect the strength of the film colour.

When transporting a load on the roof rack (e.g. roof box or similar), there is an increased risk of film damage (e.g. of chipping from the secured load).

! CAUTION

- **Vehicle paint**
  - Damaged areas should be repaired as soon as possible.
  - Do not treat painted parts with or hard waxes.
  - Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
  - Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not use paint care products.
- **Chromed and anodised parts**
  - Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.
- **Foils**
  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of foil damage.
  - Do not clean with dirty cloths or sponges.
  - To remove ice and snow, do not use a scraper or other means.
  - Do not polish the foils
  - Do not use a pressure washer to clean the foils
- **Rubber seals**
  - Do not treat the door seals and window guides with any products - the protective lacquer layer could be affected.
- **Windows and external mirror glass**
  - Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp objects - there is a risk of damage to the filaments or glass antenna.
  - Do not use a cloth, which was used to polish the body - this could soil the window and reduce visibility.
- **Headlights/lights**
  - Do not dry off the headlights/lights, do not use sharp objects - there is a risk of damage to the protective coating and subsequent cracking of the headlight glass.
- **Reversing camera**
  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of camera damage.
  - Do not remove snow / ice with warm / hot water.
  - To wash, never use a pressure washer or steam jet.
  - For cleaning, do not use abrasive cleaners.
- **Door lock cylinder**
  - Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!
- **Wheels**
  - Heavy contamination of the wheels can affect the balance of the wheels - this can result in vibrations and, under some circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering wheel.

Remove ice and snow from the windows

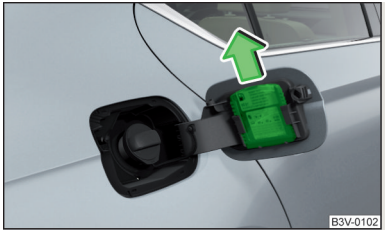


Fig. 301
Installation location of the ice scraper, removing the scraper

Read and observe ! and ! on page 264 first.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors. This can be on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

› Open the fuel filler flap and slide the scraper in the direction of arrow » Fig. 301.

! CAUTION

- Move the scraper in one direction only, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the glass surface.
- Do not remove snow / ice on the surface that is soiled (e.g. pea gravel, sand, road salt) - there is a risk of damaging the surface.
- Remove snow / ice carefully, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the labels that have been fitted by the factory.

Caring for the interior

Read and observe ! and ! on page 264 first.

Vehicle component	Facts of the matter	Remedy
Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / Material	Dust, surface contamination	Vacuum cleaner
	Pollution (fresh)	Water, slightly damp cotton / wool cloth, if necessary, mild soap solution[a], then wipe with a soft cloth
	Stubborn stains	Specially prepared detergent
	Care (natural leather)	Treat the leather periodically with a suitable leather protector and use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning.
	Care (Alcantara® / fabric)	Remove stubborn hairs using a “cleaning glove” Remove pills from materials with a brush
Plastic parts	Soiling	Water, slightly damp cloth or sponge, or cleaning agent provided for this purpose
Windows	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry using the intended cloth
Covers of electrically heated seats	Soiling	Specially provided cleaning agent
Seat belts » !	Soiling	soft cloth and mild soap solution[a]

[a] Mild soap solution = 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

! WARNING

- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

! CAUTION

- **Natural leather /Faux leather / Alcantara® / material**
  - In lengthy periods in bright sunlight, it might be sensible to cover these materials in order to avoid bleaching.
  - Fresh stains (e.g. from pens, lipstick, shoe polish etc.) should be removed as soon as possible.
  - Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams.
  - Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
  - Do not use solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® seat upholstery.
  - Some clothing fabrics (e.g. dark denim) do not have sufficient colour fastness - this may leave evident marks on upholstery. This is not a defect in the fabric.
  - Sharp objects on garments (e.g. zips, rivets, sharp- edged belts) can damage the upholstery fabrics in the vehicle. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.
- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dashboard – there is a risk of damage to the dashboard.
- **Windows**
  - Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- **Covers of electrically heated seats**
  - Do not clean with water or other liquids - there is a risk of damage to the heating system.
  - Do not dry by switching on the heating.
- **Seat belts**
  - Allow to dry before rolling up the seat belts.

i Note

During vehicle use, the leather and Alcantara® parts may show minor changes (e.g. folds, discolouration).

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

Fig. 302
Stickers with prescribed fuel

The correct fuel for your vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 302.

The fuel capacity for vehicles with front wheel drive is about **50 litres,** and for vehicles with four-wheel drive about **55 litres,** with about **6 litres** as reserve.

WARNING

Fuel vapours are explosive - can be fatal!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage.
- If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with the intended weather conditions, please contact a ŠKODA partner. They will tell you whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the respective country or whether it is permissible to operate the vehicle with another fuel.

Petrol and diesel refuelling

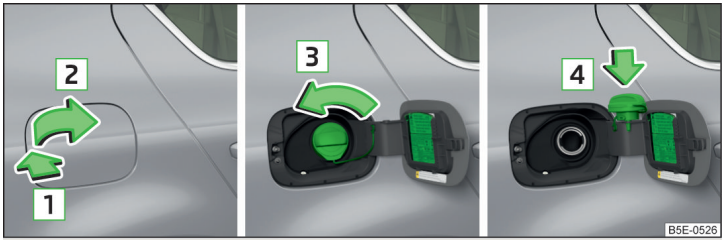


Fig. 303 **Open fuel filler flap/unscrew tank cap/place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

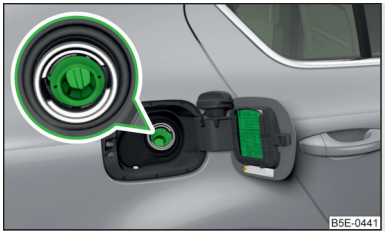


Fig. 304
Fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines

Read and observe ! and ! on page 268 first.

Perform the refuelling under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off.

› Press the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 1 and fold in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 303.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place in the recess on top of the fuel filler flap in the direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go, and refuel.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time. Not continue refuelling.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it securely engages 3.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Incorrect refuelling guard on vehicles with diesel engines
The fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines has been fitted with an incorrect refuelling guard » Fig. 304.

If the diesel pump nozzle does not sit directly in the fuel filler tube, move it to and fro with slight pressure to insert it correctly.

The diameter of the diesel pump nozzle can be identical to that of the petrol pump nozzle in some countries. When driving in these countries, the incorrect fuelling protection should be removed by a specialist company.

Unleaded petrol

Read and observe ! and ! on page 268 first.

The correct fuel for the vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 302 *on page 268*.

The vehicle can only be operated using **unleaded petrol** that complies with the standard **EN 228**[1] contains and **maximum** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Prescribed fuel 95 / min. 92 and 93 RON / ROZ
We recommend using petrol **95** RON.

Optionally, the petrol **92** or. **93** RON can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency** petrol **91** RON can be used (slight power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

Unleaded petrol min. 95 RON / ROZ
Use min. **95** ROZ petrol.

In an **emergency** petrol **91**, **92** or **93** RON can be used (slight loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

Prescribed petrol 98/(95) RON / ROZ
We recommend using petrol **98** RON.

Optionally, petrol **95** RON can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency** petrol **91**, **92** or **93** RON can be used (slight loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

! CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of engine damage and damage to the exhaust system.
- If gasoline is used which is lower than the prescribed octane number, then continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load. Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Petrol with a **lower** Octane count than **91** should not even be used in an emergency!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is put in the tank by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.

! CAUTION

Petrol additives (additives)
- Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard[1] meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. Therefore, we recommend that you do not add any fuel additives to the petrol - there is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.
- **The following additives and auxiliary products may not be used - there is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system!**
  - Additives with metal components (metallic additives), in particular with manganese and iron content.
  - Fuels with metallic content (e.g. LRP - lead replacement petrol).

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

Note

▪ Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
▪ The use of petrol with an octane rating higher than **95** RON in does not result in either a noticeable increase in power nor lower fuel consumption in vehicles for which unleaded petrol **95/min 92 or 93** RON is specified.
▪ On vehicles using prescribed petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

Read and observe ! and ! on page 268 first.

The correct fuel for the vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 302 *on page 268*.

The vehicle can only be operated using **diesel fuel** that complies with the standard **EN 590**[1] and contains a **maximum** 7% biodiesel **(B7)**[2].

Operating under different weather conditions

Use only diesel in accordance with the current or expected weather conditions. Ask the petrol station personnel whether the diesel fuel offered corresponds to these conditions.

CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of engine damage and damage to the exhaust system.
▪ If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is put into the tank, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition!
▪ The biofuel **RME** must not be used!

CAUTION

Diesel fuel additives

▪ The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. Therefore, we recommend that you do not add any fuel additives to the diesel - - there is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.

Refuel CNG (compressed natural gas)

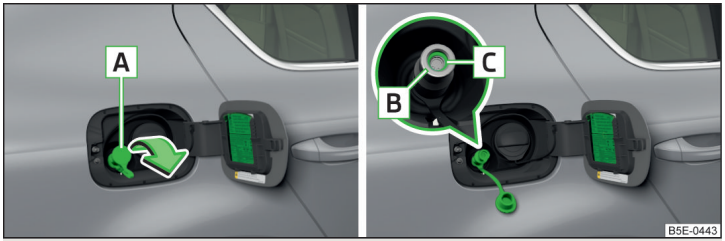


Fig. 305 **Natural gas filler tubes**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 268 first.

Refuel with natural gas under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.
✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off » page 112.

Natural gas refuelling may vary from station to station. If refuelling with natural gas at a station is unfamiliar to you, get someone to instruct you or allow the fuelling operation to be carried out by the station staff.

Refuelling operation

› Open the fuel filler flap.
› Remove cap A » Fig. 305in the direction of the arrow and insert connector for the refuelling system into filler neck B.

[1] In Germany DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590: 2004, in India IS 1460 / Bharat IV or in an emergency IS 1460 / Bharat III.
[2] In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

The fuel tank is full when the compressor of the refuelling system automatically switches off.

› Check that sealing ring C » Fig. 305has remained inserted in filler neck B. If the sealing ring has slipped on the connector, reinsert it into the filler neck.
› Insert cap A into the filler neck and close the fuel filler flap until it locks into place.

The natural gas refuelling systems have an overfill protection relating to the outdoor temperature. At very high outside temperatures, it may happen that the gas tank may not be fully refuelled.

If the vehicle is parked directly after a refuelling operation, on restart the pointer of the gas gauge may not show exactly the same level as immediately after the filling process. This is not a leak in the system, but a reduction in pressure due to the cooling of the gas in the gas tank after refuelling.

The maximum lifetime of the gas tank is 20 years.

The capacity of the natural gas fuel tank is approximately **15 kg**.

WARNING

- Natural gas is highly explosive and highly flammable.
- When refuelling, never get into the vehicle. If you have to get into your vehicle in exceptional cases, touch a metal surface before you touch the filling coupling again. Otherwise, electrostatic discharging may occur - There is a risk of fire!

Note

During the filling process sounds are heard which are harmless. If you are unsure which service station staff to use, ask the petrol station staff.

CNG

Fig. 306 **Position of the CNG label(s).**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 268 first.

A G-TEC-vehicle may be operated with CNG and unleaded petrol » page 269.

Positioning of the CNG sticker in natural gas vehicles » Fig. 306.

Automatic switching from natural gas to petrol operation - Automatic switching from natural gas to petrol operation takes place in the following situations (examples).

- With an empty gas tank or not enough pressure in the tank.
- After refuelling with natural gas.
- At very low surrounding temperatures.

Every six months, to ensure the correct functioning of the fuel system, the fuel tank for petrol should be run down until the warning light comes on.

Gas leak

If a gas leak is suspected (noticeable odour), proceed as follows.

- Stop the vehicle.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Extinguish cigarettes, switch off spark-producing or incendiary items and remove them from the vehicle.
- Open the doors and the boot lid to ventilate the vehicle sufficiently.
- Do not continue to drive if the odour persists.
- If it is not possible to leave an enclosed area with a vehicle with a gas leak (e.g. in a tunnel, underpass, garage, ferry, etc.), call the emergency services immediately.

Seek help from a specialist garage to correct the gas system fault.

In a traffic accident

If a gas leak is suspected in a traffic accident, proceed as follows.

- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Extinguish cigarettes, switch off spark-producing or incendiary items and remove them from the vehicle.
- ▶ Have all the occupants get out.
- ▶ Keep all persons away from the vehicle. We recommend standing at least 10 metres from the vehicle.
- ▶ Inform the emergency services that it is a natural gas vehicle.

Regular gas system checks

Regular gas system checks must be carried out in a specialist workshop on natural gas-powered vehicles. The vehicle owner is responsible for ensuring tests are conducted properly.

Every 2 years

- ▶ Check the filler cap.
- ▶ Check the condition of fuel filler tubes and the sealing ring in the fuel filler tubes, and clean the sealing ring if necessary.
- ▶ Check the gas system for leaks and carry out an examination of gas containers.

Every 20 years

- ▶ Replace the gas tank.

! WARNING

- Do not underestimate the smell of gas in the car or when refuelling - risk of fire, explosion and injury.
- The natural gas tanks in the vehicle must not be exposed to unwanted heat sources.

Engine compartment

Introduction

! WARNING

Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!

! WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, the following instructions must be observed - risk of injury or fire. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

! WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment

- Stop the engine and remove the ignition key, on vehicles with the KESSY system, open the driver's door.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** the lever into the neutral position. For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

! WARNING

Information for working in the engine room

- Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- Never touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan suddenly switch on approx. 10 minutes after switching off the ignition!
- Do not smoke or use open flames in the vicinity of the engine.
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.

! WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running

- If it is necessary to work on the engine compartment with the engine running, then observe the **rotating engine parts and electrical plants** - it can be fatal!

WARNING (Continued)

- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, particularly on the vehicle's battery.

CAUTION

Refill only operating fluids of the correct specification - danger of damaging the vehicle!

Note

- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.
- We recommend you have the battery replaced by a specialist garage.

Open the bonnet and close

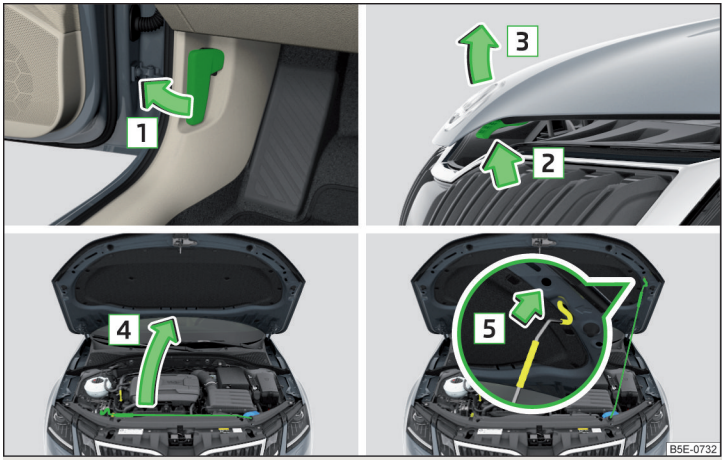


Fig. 307 **Opening the bonnet**

Read and observe and on page 272 first.

Open flap

› Make sure that the windscreen wiper arms are not folded away from the windscreen - there is a risk of damage to the bonnet.
› Open the front door and pull the release lever below the dash panel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 307.
› Press the release lever in the direction of arrow 2 and the bonnet will be unlocked.
› Raise the bonnet in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow 4 from the holder.
› Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow 5.

Close the bonnet lid

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› From around 20 cm, lightly push the bonnet lid closed until it securely engages.

If the bonnet lid is not properly closed, the display of the instrument cluster will show this.

WARNING

- Never drive if the bonnet is open - could cause an accident!
- Make sure that when closing the engine compartment lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

Engine compartment overview

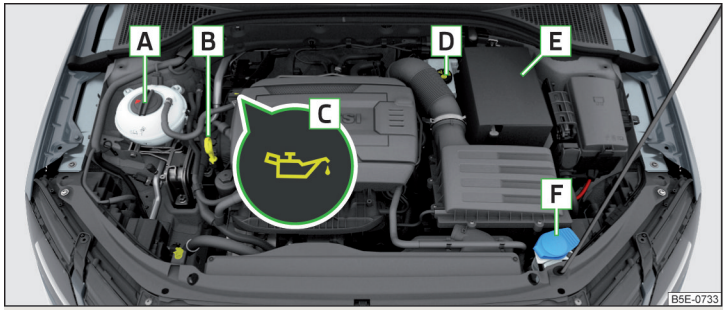


Fig. 308 **Arrangement example in the engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 272 first.

A	Coolant expansion reservoir	276
B	Engine oil dipstick	275
C	Engine oil filler opening	275
D	Brake fluid reservoir	277
E	Vehicle battery	278
F	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	274

Windscreen washer fluid

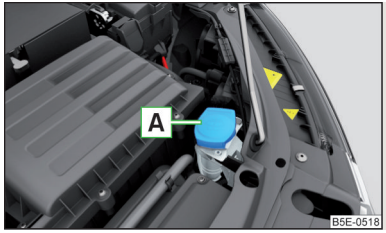


Fig. 309
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 272 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir A is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 309.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3 litres or about 4.7 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system[1].

Use a suitable windscreen washer fluid in accordance with the current or expected weather conditions. We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

! CAUTION

- If the vehicle is equipped with a headlight cleaning system, then only use windscreen washer fluid types that do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights - otherwise there is a risk of damage to headlights.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can become contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

We therefore recommend that the oil change is carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The engine oil should be changed after specified service intervals » page 262.

Depending on the driving style and operating conditions, the engine uses some oil (up to 0.5 l / 1 000 km). Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

! WARNING

The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 272.

[1] In some countries, 4.7 ltr. applies for both variants.

CAUTION

Do not add additives to the engine oil - risk of engine damage.

Note

We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Specification

Read and observe and on page 274 first.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	VW 508 00 optional VW 504 00[a)]
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	VW 504 00
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	

a) The use of VW 504 00 oil instead of VW 508 00 can result in a slight deterioration in the emissions values.

Diesel engines	Specification
1.6 l/66, 85 kW TDI	VW 507 00
2.0 l/105, 110, 135 kW TDI	

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	

Diesel engines	Specification
1.6 l/66, 85 kW TDI	VW 507 00
2.0 l/105, 110, 135 kW TDI	

Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

CAUTION

- If none of the engine oils listed in the table are available, other oils can be used instead. To prevent engine damage, a **maximum of 0.5 l** of engine oil with the following specifications may be used until the next oil change:
  - Petrol engines: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
  - Diesel engines: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Check and refill

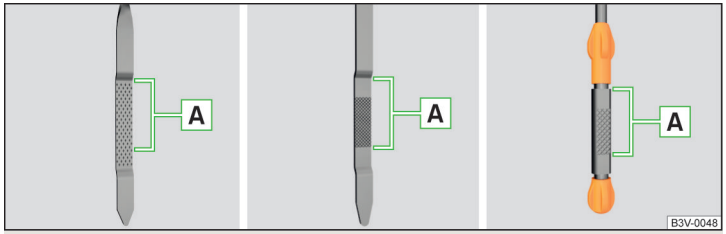


Fig. 310 **Dipstick variants**

Read and observe and on page 274 first.

Check the oil under the following conditions and refill.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.

✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.

✓ The engine is turned off.

Checking the level

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.

› Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.

› Push the dipstick to the stop and pull out again.

› Read the oil level and push in the dipstick.

The oil level must be in range A » Fig. 310. If the oil level is below the range A, refill the oil.

Refilling

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening C » Fig. 308 *on page 274*.
› Add oil of the correct specification in portions of 0.5 litres » page 275.
› Check the oil level.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never fall outside range A » Fig. 310 - otherwise there is a risk of damaging the engine and the exhaust system.
- If it is not possible to top up the engine oil or if the oil level is above range A, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Note

An engine oil level which is too low is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and a corresponding message » page 40. Nevertheless, we recommend that you check the oil level regularly using the dipstick.

Coolant

Introduction

The coolant cools the engine and consists of water and coolant additive (with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevents furring).

The coolant additive level in the coolant must between 40 and 60 %.

The correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive should be checked if necessary by a specialist garage or corrected if necessary.

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 272.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding or injury from being splashed with coolant!

WARNING (Continued)

- To protect against coolant splashes, cover the cap with a cloth when opening.
- Coolant and coolant fumes are harmful - avoid contact with the coolant. If your eyes or skin come into contact with the coolant, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water and seek medical advice if required.

CAUTION

Do not cover the radiator or fit any parts (e.g. auxiliary lights) in front of the air intakes - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Checking and refilling

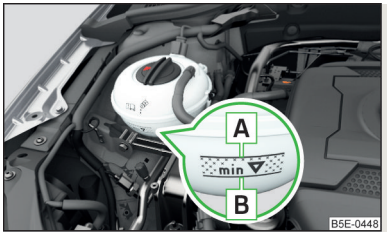


Fig. 311
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 276 first.

Check the coolant under the following conditions and refill.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is not warm (if the engine is warm, the test results could be inaccurate).
✓ The engine is turned off.

Check the coolant level - the coolant level must be between the marks A and B » Fig. 311. If the coolant level is below the mark B, refill the coolant.

Refilling

The coolant expansion tank must always contain a small amount of coolant » !.

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.

› Always top up using the correct specification of fluids.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

The **specification** of the coolant is shown on the coolant expansion reservoir» Fig. 311.

If no specified coolant is available, use only distilled or demineralised water and have the mixing ratio of water and coolant additive corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

CAUTION

▪ If the expansion tank is empty, do not top up with coolant. The system could aerate - risk of damaging the engine! Do not drive the vehicle! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
▪ Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 311. When it heats up, the coolant could press out of the cooling system - there is a risk of damage to the engine parts.
▪ If it is not possible to add coolant, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
▪ A coolant additive which does not correspond to the correct specification can reduce the anti-corrosion effect of the cooling system - there is a risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine.
▪ If water other than distilled (demineralised) water is used, then have the coolant replaced by a specialist garage - there is a risk of engine damage.
▪ A loss of coolant could be due to **leaks** in the cooling system - there is a risk of engine damage. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Note

A coolant level which is too low is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and a corresponding message » page 39. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Brake fluid

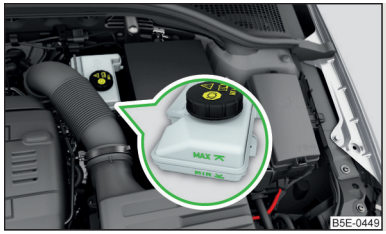


Fig. 312
Brake fluid reservoir

Check the brake fluid under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.

Check brake fluid level - the brake fluid level must be between the markings “MIN” and “MAX”» Fig. 312.

Specification - the brake fluid must comply with **VW 501 14** standard (this standard meets the requirements of FMVSS 116 DOT4).

WARNING

▪ The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 272.
▪ There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the “MIN” » Fig. 312 marking. Stop driving - There is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

▪ The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.
▪ A brake fluid level which is too low is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and a corresponding message» page 34. We therefore recommend that you check the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery

The on-board power supply tries as follows to avoid draining the vehicle battery when it is heavily loaded.

- By increasing the engine idle speed.
- By limiting the power of certain consumers.
- By switching off some loads(heated seats, heated rear window) for as long as necessary.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

WARNING

Battery acid is highly corrosive - risk of injury, irritation or poisoning! Corrosive vapours in the air irritate and damage the respiratory tract and the eyes. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Seek medical assistance if required.

WARNING (Continued)

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings.

WARNING

When working on the car battery, there is the risk of explosion, fire, injury or irritation! The following guidelines must be observed.

- Avoid smoking, the use of open flames or light and any activities that could cause sparks.
- **A discharged vehicle battery can freeze slightly.** Never charge up a frozen or thawed vehicle battery. Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Do not connect the battery terminals with each other by bridging the two poles of a short circuit.

CAUTION

Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.

Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Check condition

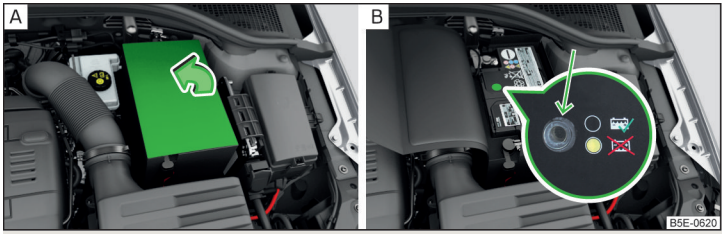


Fig. 313 **Vehicle battery: Open the cover/acid level indicator**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 278 first.

The battery condition is checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Check the acid level
For car batteries with acid level indicator, use the colouration of the display to check the acid level. In vehicle batteries with the designation **“AGM”** there is no acid level examination.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle battery may be provided with a cover, this can be opened in the direction of arrow » Fig. 313 - A.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. Therefore, carefully knock on the display » Fig. 313 - B.

Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.

Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Battery discharge
Frequent short journeys will not sufficiently recharge the car battery.

The battery capacity decreases at low temperatures.

If the vehicle is not used for longer than 3 to 4 weeks, disconnect the negative terminal ⊖ or charge the battery constantly with a very low charging current.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 278 first.

Only charge the vehicle battery when the ignition and all consumers are switched off.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

Charging
- For vehicles **with** START-STOP system or auxiliary heating, connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger to the ⊕ pole of the battery, the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the earth point of the engine » page 292.
- For vehicles **without** START-STOP system or auxiliary heating, connect the terminals of the charger to the corresponding battery poles (⊕ to ⊕. ⊖ to ⊖).
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
- After the charging process has finished: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Disconnect the terminals of the charger from the vehicle battery.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

! WARNING
- When charging the vehicle battery, hydrogen is released - risk of explosion. An explosion can be caused from sparks or connection or releasing the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- The so-called “quick charging” of the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge. Therefore, have “Quick loading” carried out by a specialist garage.

Disconnect/reconnect and change

Read and observe ! and ! on page 278 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and the same size as the original Battery.

We recommend you have the battery **replaced** by a specialist garage.

› To **disconnect** the battery, switch off the ignition and disconnect first the negative terminal ⊖, and only after this the positive ⊕.
› To **connect** the battery, first connect the positive terminal ⊕, and only after this the negative terminal ⊖.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Power windows	» page 61
Panorama sliding/tilting roof	» page 62
Sun screen	» page 63
Time settings	» page 43

CAUTION

▪ Disconnect the vehicle battery only with the ignition turned off - there is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
▪ Before disconnecting the battery, close the electric tailgate, all the windows, the sliding / tilting roof and the electric sunshade - otherwise malfunctions of equipment elements may occur.
▪ Under no circumstances must the connection cables be connected incorrectly – risk of fire.

Note

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of all electrical systems is guaranteed.

Wheels

Wheels and tyres

Introduction

Advice on tyre/wheel usage

New tyres, during the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Always fit **tyres with a greater profile depth** on the front wheels.

Wheels and bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use wheel rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Always **store wheels or tyres**in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. The tyres themselves should be stored standing.

Tyre life
Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. Therefore, we recommend not using tyres that are more than 6 years old.

The manufacturing date is indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the **inside**). For example, **DOT ... 10 17...** means that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of the year 2017.

Tyre damage
We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis.

Remove any foreign objects in the tyre tread immediately (e.g. small stones).

Foreign bodies which **have penetrated into the tyre** (e.g. screws or nails) should not be removed. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Installation of new tyres
Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all 4 wheels.

When mounting new tires the tires have to be replaced axle by axle.

Unidirectional tyres
Some tires may be directional. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The specified running direction must be strictly adhered to, otherwise the following tyre characteristics may be degraded.
- Driving stability.
- Traction.
- Tyre noise and tyre wear.

WARNING
- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
- Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident.

CAUTION
- The tyres must be protected from contact with substances such as oil, grease and fuel, which could damage them. If the tyres come into contact with these substances, then we recommend you have this checked out in a specialist workshop.
- Do not use rims with ground or polished surface in winter conditions - there is a risk of wheel damage (e.g. from the road grit).

Note
- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres is carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Tyre pressure

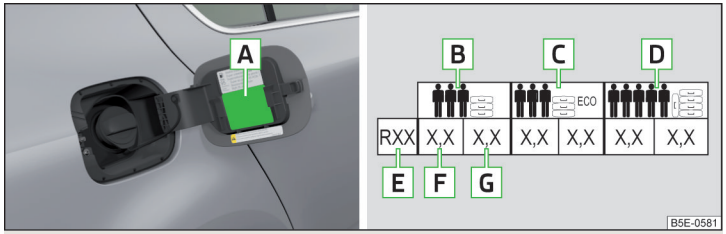


Fig. 314 **Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressure value / inflate tyres**

The prescribed tyre inflation is on the sticker with pictograms A» Fig. 314 (for some countries, the pictograms are replaced with a text).

Tyre pressure is always to match the load.

B Inflation pressure for half load

C Inflation pressure for environmentally friendly operation (slightly lower fuel consumption and emissions)

D Inflation pressure for full load

E Tyre diameter in inches
This information serves merely as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a list of shared tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity (in so-called COC document).

F Tyre pressure value on the front axle

G Tyre pressure value on the rear axle

Check tyre pressures
Check the tyre pressure (including that of the emergency or spare wheel) at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be saved each time the pressures are changed » page 248.

WARNING

- Do not drive with an incorrect tyre pressure - risk of accident.
- In the event of very fast pressure loss, e.g. in the event of sudden tyre damage, an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking.

Note

The declaration of conformity (COC document), can be obtained from a ŠKODA[1)] partner.

Tyre wear and wheel change

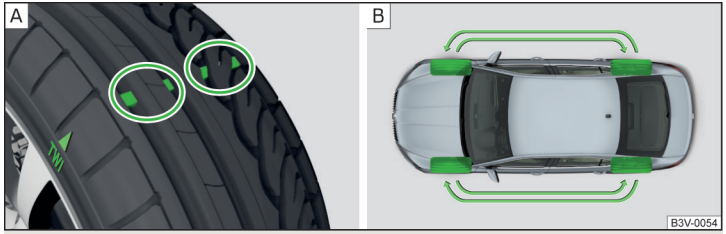


Fig. 315 **Tyre wear indicator / wheel change**

The **tyre wear** increases in the following circumstances.

- Incorrect tyre pressure.
- Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration / deceleration).
- Incorrect balancing of wheels (have the wheels balanced after changing tyres / repair or with “restlessness” on the steering).
- Wheel alignment error.

Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres which display the permissible minimum tread depth » Fig. 315 - A. A tyre is to be regarded as worn out when this indicator is flush with the tread. Markings on the walls of the tyres with the letters “TWI” and/or other symbols (e.g. △), identify the position of the wear indicators.

For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you **change** the **wheels** every 10,000 km according to the schedule » Fig. 315 - B.

WARNING

- Change when they are worn down to the wear indicators at the latest - risk of accident.
- Improper wheel alignment affects the driving behaviour - there is an accident.
- Unusual vibrations or “pulling” of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. Reduce speed and stop! If no tyre damage is evident, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Spare wheel

The size of the spare wheel is identical to that of the vehicle factory installed wheels.

After changing the spare wheel, the tyre pressure must be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system» page 248.

WARNING

- If you get a puncture and a spare tyre has to be fitted with the opposite direction of rotation, please drive with particular caution. The tyre no longer retains its optimal characteristics in this situation.
- If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted.

Spare wheel

Use the emergency spare wheel only to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is **not intended for permanent use**.

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

[1)] Only valid for some countries and some models.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.
- Do not cover the signs.
- Be particularly observant when driving.
- Inflate the temporary spare wheel to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » page 281 (the prescribed tyre pressure of the spare wheel R 18 is 4.2 bar).

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system» page 248.

! WARNING
- Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted!
- When driving with the temporary spare wheel at full throttle acceleration, avoid sharp braking and fast cornering.
- Do not use snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.
- Observe instructions on the warning sign of the emergency wheel.

Tyre marking

Explanation of tyre markings - e.g. 195/65 R 15 91 T

195	Tyre width in mm
65	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
15	Diameter of wheel in inches
91	load index
T	Speed symbol

Load index - indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre

load index	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95
Load (In kg)	560	580	600	615	630	650	670	690

Speed symbol - indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned

speed symbol	S	T	U	H	V	W	Y
Maximum speed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270	300

! WARNING
Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** and **speed** for the tyres fitted – risk of accident.

Operating in winter conditions

All-year (or “winter”) tyres

All-year or “winter” tyres (indicated by an **M+S** or a mountain peak/snowflake symbol) to improve the performance of the vehicle in winter conditions.

For the best possible handling, use all-season or “winter” tyres on all four wheels with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm.

If using “winter” tyres, fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C.

Speed symbol
All-season or “winter” tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol) of a lower speed category than stated in the technical vehicle documentation can be used, provided the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The speed limit for all-season or “winter” tyres can be set in the infotainment system in menu CAR / → → → **Tyres**.

If the vehicle has all-season or “winter” tires of a lower speed category than the specified maximum speed of the vehicle (referring to tyres that have not been delivered by the factory), then a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category provided for the fitted tyres must be fixed in the interior of ▸

the vehicle in a constantly visible place in the driver's field of vision. The warning label (sticker) can be replaced by setting the maximum value of the speed category supplied for the mounted tyres in Infotainment[1]. This specification defines the maximum vehicle speed with mounted all-season or "winter"tyres that may not be exceeded.

Snow chains

The snow chains improve driving in wintry road conditions.

Before fitting the snow chains, remove the full wheel trims.

Snow chains must only be fitted on the front wheels and are applicable only to the following wheel / tyre combinations.

Octavia

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 15[a)]	43 mm	195/65 R15
6J x 15[a)]	47 mm	195/65 R15
6J x 16[b)]	48 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 16[b)]	50 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17[b)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[b)]	48 mm	205/50 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks no larger than 13 mm.
b) Only fit snow chains with links and locks no larger than 12 mm.

Octavia Scout

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 16[a)]	50 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17[a)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 16[a)]	48 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 16[b)]	48 mm	205/60 R16
6J x 17[a)]	48 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[b)]	48 mm	205/55 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks no larger than 12 mm.
b) Only fit snow chains with links and locks no larger than 9 mm.

1) Applies to some countries.

Octavia RS

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 17[a)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[a)]	48 mm	205/50 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks no larger than 12 mm.

WARNING

Do not use chains on snow- and ice-free routes - the driving behaviour may be affected and there is a risk of a puncture.

Introduction

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle

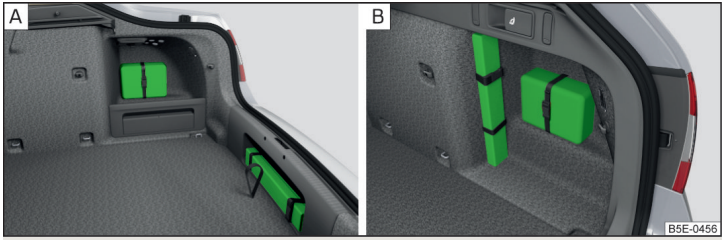


Fig. 316 **Placement of first aid kits and the warning triangle: Variant 1 / Variant 2**

The following information applies for the first aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Placing the first-aid kit
The first-aid box can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 316.

Placing of the warning triangle - variant 1
The warning triangle can be inserted into the recess under the loading edge and secured with the fastener tape» Fig. 316 A. Natural gas vehicles have the warning triangle located under the floor mat in the luggage compartment.

Warning triangle – version 2
The first-aid box can be attached to the right-hand side of the boot using a strap» Fig. 316B.

! WARNING
Properly secure the first aid kit and the warning triangle, or there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Placement of reflective vest

Fig. 317 **Storage compartment for the reflective vest**

The reflective vest can be stored in brackets under the front seats » Fig. 317.

Fire extinguisher

Fig. 318 **Release the fire extinguisher**

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

› To **remove** the fire extinguisher, release the safety catches on the two belts in the direction of arrow » Fig. 318 and remove the fire extinguisher.
› To **secure**, place the fire extinguisher back in the mount and secure with the belts.

The Owner´s Manual is fitted next to the fire extinguisher.

Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. After this date, the correct function of the device is not guaranteed.

WARNING

Always properly secure the fire extinguisher, there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Vehicle tool kit

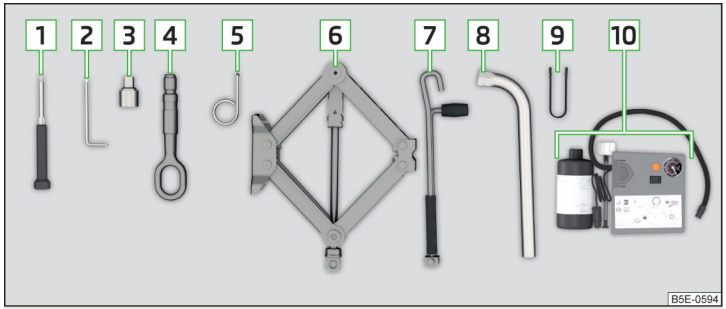


Fig. 319 **Vehicle tool kit**

The box with the tool kit is located in the storage compartment for the spare wheel and may be secured with tape, depending on specification.

Depending on the vehicle configuration, it may not contain all the components listed in the on-board tool kit.

1. Screwdriver
2. Key for removing and installing the tail light
3. Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
4. Towing eye
5. Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6. Jack with sign
7. Crank for the jack
8. Wheel wrench
9. Extraction pliers for the wheel bolt caps
10. Breakdown kit

WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift other vehicles or loads with this – there is a risk of injury.
- Always stow the tool safely in the box and make sure that it is attached with the belt to the spare wheel - otherwise it could cause injury to the occupants if breaking suddenly or colliding with another vehicle.

CAUTION

Screw the jack back to its starting position prior to putting it back in its box - Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the box.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Changing a wheel

Preliminary work

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

- As far as possible, park the vehicle far away from the traffic flow - find a place with a flat and firm surface.
- Switch off the engine.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select 1st **gear**.
- For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Position the hazard warning system and the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- **All the occupants should get out of the vehicle.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.
- Uncouple any trailers.

Changing a wheel

- Take out the emergency or spare wheel » page 287.
- Remove the full wheel trim » page 287 or caps » page 288.
- Loosen the wheel bolts » page 288 ».

› Jack up the vehicle» page 289 until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (“alternating crosswise”)» page 288.
› Replace the wheel trim » page 287and the caps » page 288.

When fitting a wheel with unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 281.

All bolts must be clean and must turn easily. If the screws are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.

WARNING

- Undo the wheel bolts just a little (about one turn) while the vehicle is not jacked up. Otherwise, the wheel could come off and fall down – there is a risk of injury.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts - risk of accident!

Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Stow the replaced wheel in the well under the floor covering of the luggage compartment and secure with a locking screw.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
› Check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressure on the assembled wheel, and, for vehicle with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 248.
› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible. The prescribed tightening torque is **120 Nm**.

Replace the damaged tyre. It is not recommended to repair the tyre.

WARNING

A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim. Too low tightening torque, the wheels may fall off while driving - risk of an accident. Therefore, drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Removing/stowing the emergency or spare wheel

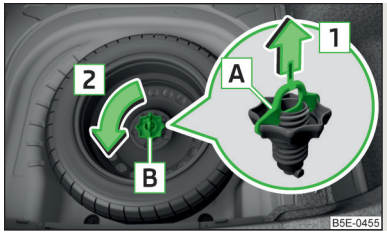


Fig. 320
Take out the wheel

The wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with special bolt B» Fig. 320.

Take out the wheel

› Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
› Remove locking A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 320.
› Unscrew the screw B in direction of arrow 2 and remove the wheel.

Store wheel away

› Place the wheel into the wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
› Screw in nut B in the opposite direction to arrow 2 » Fig. 320.
› Insert locking A in the opposite direction to which arrow 1 is pointing.
› Replace the box with the tool kit into the wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.

Full wheel trim

Removing the trim

› The clamps for removing the full wheel trims hang on the edge of the full wheel trim.

› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing the trim

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

The back of the wheel trim supplied by the factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories shows the position for the anti-theft wheel bolt. When using the anti-theft wheel bolt, this is to be fitted in this point » !.

! WARNING

We recommend that you use hub caps from ŠKODA Original Accessories. A sufficient air supply may not be able to be guaranteed with other wheel trims to cool the braking system - there is a risk of an accident.

! CAUTION

■ If the wheel trim is set outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel trim.
■ Use only manual pressure and do not hit the full wheel trim – otherwise there is a risk of damaging the trim.

i Note

We recommend that you use hub caps from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts

Fig. 321
Remove the cap

› To **remove the cap**, insert the extraction pliers up to the stop on the cap and pull this in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 321.
› To **install**, insert the cap up to the stop on the wheel bolt.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

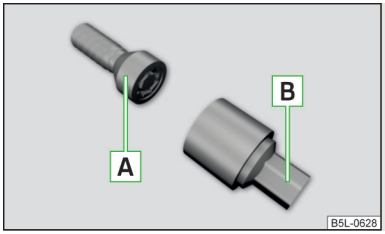


Fig. 322
Anti-theft wheel bolt and attachment

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect the wheels from theft. The upper section B » Fig. 322 must be used to **loosen/tighten** these.

› Insert the upper section B on the anti-theft wheel bolt A until it stops.
› Insert the wrench on the upper section B until it stops and loosen/tighten the wheel bolt.
› Removing the upper section.

The attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle in case of a possible wheel change!

For wheel trims supplied ex-factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories, the anti-theft wheel bolt should be installed in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

i Note

We recommend that you retain the label with the code number. A replacement upper section can be acquired from ŠKODA original parts based on this.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

Fig. 323
Loosening the wheel bolts

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop. Use the associated upper section for the anti-theft wheel bolts » Fig. 322 *on page 288*.
› To **loosen the screws**, hold the wrench end and turn the screw about **one** turn in the direction of arrow » Fig. 323.
› To **tighten the screws**, hold the wrench end and turn the screw against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 323, until it is tight.

WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing - risk of accident.

Raising the vehicle

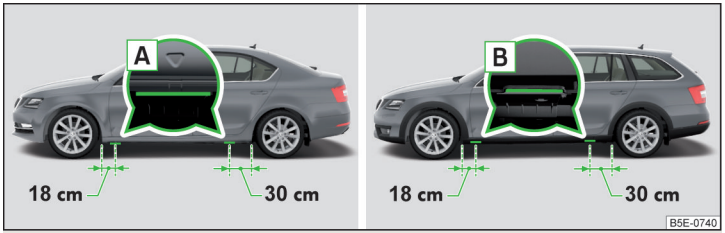


Fig. 324 **Runner connectors for the jack: Variant 1 / Variant 2**

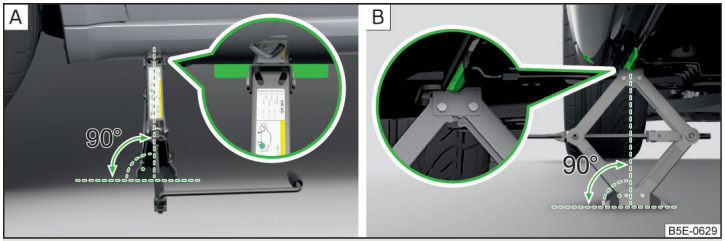


Fig. 325 **Attach lifting jack**

Before the vehicle is raised, the safety instructions must be observed » !.

Use the jack from the tool kit to raise the vehicle. Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre.

The runner connectors are located on the lower sill **variant 1** A or. **Variant 2** B » Fig. 324.

› Insert the crank 7 into the mount on the jack 6 » page 286.
› Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point » Fig. 325 - A.
› Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar » Fig. 325 - B.
› Continue to lift the vehicle until the defective wheel is just off the floor.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions, otherwise there is risk of injury.
- Secure the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip.
  - Provide a wide and stable base under the jack on loose surfaces (e.g. such as gravel).
  - Create a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber floor mat) under the jack on a smooth surface (e.g. cobblestones).
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs, under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly attached to the bar of the lower beam – otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Puncture repair kit

Introduction

The following information applies to the factory-fitted puncture repair kit.

Use the puncture repair kit to seal tyre punctures with a diameter of up to about 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the puncture repair kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Do not remove foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre (e.g. nails etc.).

Do **not use** the puncture repair kit in the following instances.
- The rim is damaged.
- The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the instruction manual of the tyre filling bottle with sealant.
- Tyre punctures of more than 4 mm.
- There is damage to the tyre wall.
- The expiration date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

WARNING

- If the sealant comes into contact with skin, wash the affected area immediately.
- Observe the instructions provided in the puncture repair kit manufacturer's instructions for use.

Description of puncture repair kit

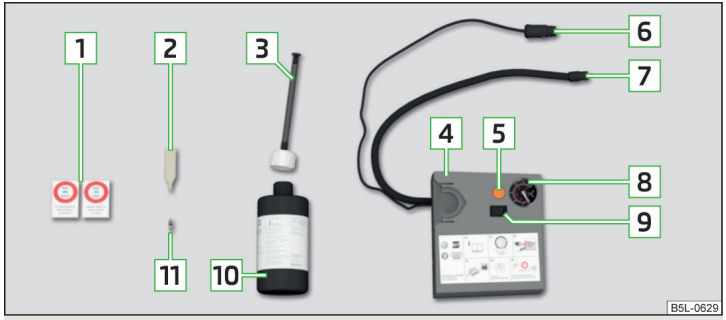


Fig. 326 **Description of puncture repair kit**

Read and observe ! on page 290 first.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

1 Sticker with speed designation “max. 80 km/h”/“max. 50 mph”
2 Valve remover
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor delivered with the vehicle)
5 Button for the tyre pressure reduction
6 12 volt cable connector
7 Tyre inflation hose
8 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
9 ON and OFF switch
10 Tyre inflation bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Preparing to use the puncture repair kit

Read and observe ! on page 290 first.

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before performing a wheel repair the road.
› As far as possible, park the vehicle far away from the traffic flow - find a place with a flat and firm surface.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select 1st **gear**.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Position the hazard warning system and the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
› **All the occupants should get out of the vehicle.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being repaired.
› Uncouple any trailers.

Sealing and inflating tyres

Read and observe ! on page 290 first.

Sealing

› Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
› Insert the valve remover 2 » Fig. 326 *on page 290* on the valve insert, so that the valve insert fits into the slot of the valve remover.
› Unscrew the valve insert and lay it on a clean surface (e.g. cloth, paper etc.).
› Forcefully shake bottle 10 several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflater bottle 10. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the tyre valve.
› Screw in the valve insert using the valve remover 2.

Inflating

› Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose 7 » Fig. 326 *on page 290* firmly onto the tyre valve.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, set the lever in the neutral position.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Start the engine.
› Plug the connector 6 into 12 volt socket » page 91.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar is reached, turn off the air compressor. Maximum run time of 6 minutes » !.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle approx. 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to “distribute” in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 7 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› Stick the corresponding sticker 1 on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

- If the tire does not inflate at least. 2.0 bar, the damage is too great. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. STOP Do not drive the vehicle! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – risk of burning.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 6 minutes at the most – risk of overheating! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Information for driving with repaired tyres

Read and observe ! on page 290 first.

The inflation pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› The tyre cannot be properly sealed with the breakdown kit. STOP **Do not drive the vehicle!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value » page 281.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 272.
- When handling the vehicle battery, the following warnings must be observed » page 278.
- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an acid level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns!

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

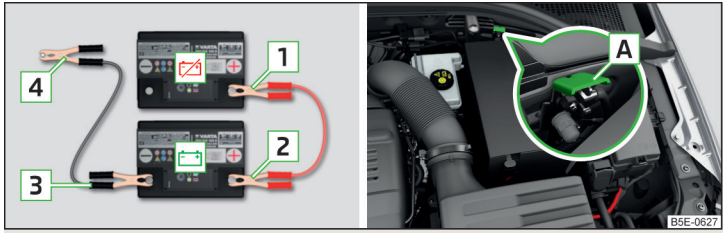


Fig. 327 **Jump starting: - Discharged battery, - Power-supplying battery/earth point of the engine for the START-STOP system**

Read and observe ! on page 292 first.

If it is not possible to start the engine due to a discharged vehicle battery, the battery of another vehicle can be used to start the engine. Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps.

The **rated voltage** of the two batteries must be 12V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the current-giving battery must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

- Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
- Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the current-giving battery.
- Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the current-giving battery.
- For vehicles **with** the START-STOP system, secure the clamp 4 to the ground point of the engine A » Fig. 327.
- For vehicles **without** the START-STOP system, secure the clamp 4 to a solid metal part that is firmly attached to the engine block or secure to the engine block directly.

Starting engine

- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start within 10 s, then cancel the starting procedure and repeat after half a minute.
- Remove the jump start cables in the **reverse** order as attachment.

WARNING

- Never clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery - danger of explosion.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit!
- Route the jumper cables so that they cannot be caught in rotating parts in the engine compartment - danger of injuries and the risk of vehicle damage.

Towing the vehicle

Information about the towing process

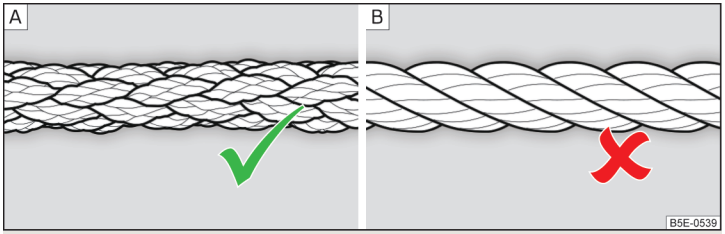


Fig. 328 **Braided tow rope / Spiral tow rope**

For towing using a tow rope, use only a braided synthetic fibre rope » Fig. 328 - A » !.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the**towing eyes at the front** » page 293, **towing eyes at the rear**» page 294or to the**towing device of the trailer device** » page 250.

Conditions for towing.

- ✓ **Cars with automatic gearboxes must not be towed with the rear wheels raised - there is a risk of gearbox damage!**
- ✓ If the gearbox has no oil, your vehicle must be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- ✓ The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.
- ✓ The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

Driver of the tow vehicle

- › On vehicles with **manual transmission**, engage gear slowly when starting.
- › On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, accelerate with particular care.
- › Only then approach correctly when the rope is taut.

Driver of the towed vehicle

- › If possible, the vehicle should be towed with the engine running. Operate the brake booster and power steering only if the engine is running, otherwise the brake pedal must be depressed more strongly and more power has to be directed to the steering.
- › If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
- › Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
- › Always keep the tow rope taut during the towing procedure.

! WARNING

- Wound tow ropes must not be used for towing » Fig. 328- B, the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle - risk of accident.
- Ensure tow rope is not twisted - risk of accident.

! CAUTION

- Do not tow-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 292, *Jump-starting*.
- In the case of off-road towing manoeuvres, for both vehicles there is the risk that the fastening parts could be overloaded and damaged.

i Note

We recommend that you use the tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Front towing eye

Fig. 329 **Remove cap / install towing eye**

Remove/insert cap

› To **remove**, press on the cap in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove this in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 329.

› To **insert**, insert the cap in arrow range 1 and then press on the opposite edge of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› To **install**, screw in the towing eye by hand in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 329 until the stop» !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› To **remove**, unscrew the towing against the direction of arrow 3.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be tightened, otherwise the towing eye may break during the towing.

Towing eye rear

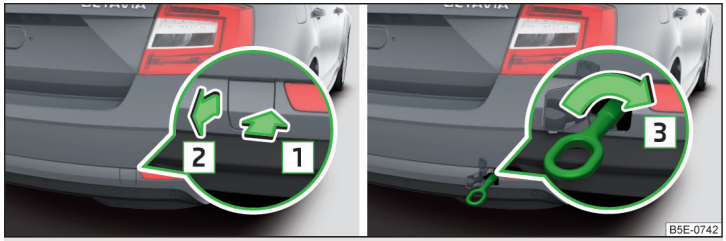


Fig. 330 **Remove cap / install towing eye - Variant 1**

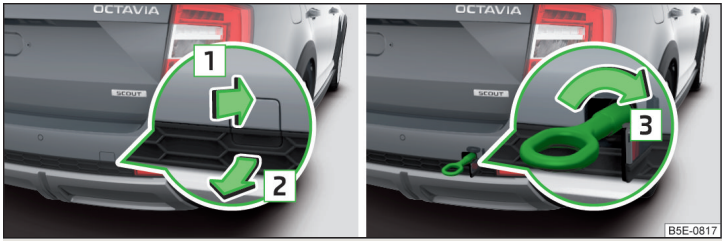


Fig. 331 **Remove cap / install towing eye - Variant 2**

Remove/insert cap

› To **remove**, press on the cap in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove this in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 330.

› To **insert**, insert the cap in arrow range 1 and then press on the opposite edge of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› To **install**, screw in the towing eye by hand in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 330» Fig. 331until it clicks into place» !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› To **remove**, unscrew the towing against the direction of arrow 3.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

For vehicles with factory-fitted towing device, at the back there is no mount for a screw-in towing eye. Use the detachable ball rod for towing » page 250, *Hitch*.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be tightened, otherwise the towing eye may break during the towing.

Remote control and removable light - replacing the battery/batteries

Introduction

CAUTION

- The replacement battery/batteries must comply with the original specification.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the rechargeable batteries.

Note

- We recommend having the faulty battery/batteries replaced by a specialist garage.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Remote control key

Fig. 332 **Open the cover/remove the battery**

Read and observe ! on page 295 first.

› Fold out the key bit.
› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 332 with your thumb or by using a flat screwdriver in region B.
› Open the battery in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow 2 and install a new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the key after replacing the battery » page 55.

Remote control of the auxiliary heating

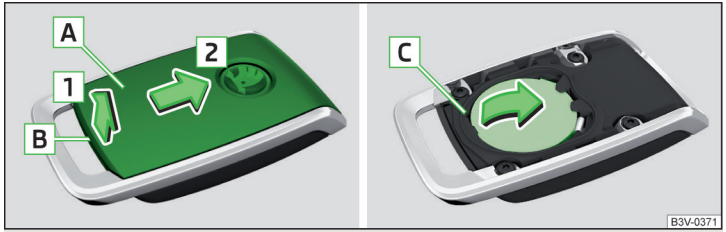


Fig. 333 **Open the cover/remove the battery**

Read and observe ! on page 295 first.

› Use a thin screwdriver to remove the cover A in the area B » Fig. 333.
› Open the cover in the direction of arrow 1 and push out in the direction of arrow 2.
› Use the screwdriver to remove and replace the battery in the area C.
› Insert the battery cover in the opposite direction to arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

Removable light

Fig. 334
Locking clip on the battery cover

Read and observe ! on page 295 first.

› Lever off the cover for the rechargeable batteries with a narrow and pointed object from the area of the lock clips A » Fig. 334.
› Replace the batteries.
› Insert the cover for the rechargeable batteries and press it down until it clicks into place.

! CAUTION

If an incorrect battery type is used or a non-rechargeable battery, there is a risk of damaging the light and the vehicle's electrical system.

Emergency unlocking / locking of doors

Introduction

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

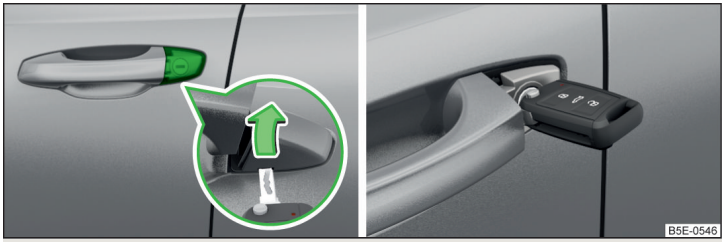


Fig. 335 **Driver's door handle: Fold up the lock cover/lock cylinder with key**

In an emergency, the driver's door can be locked/unlocked via the lock cylinder using the key.

› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Insert the key into the recess on the lower side of the cover and fold up the cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 335.
› Release the door handle.
› For vehicles with**LHD**,insert the key with the fold-out key bit **with the buttons facing upwards** » Fig. 335into the lock cylinder and unlock/lock the vehicle.
› For vehicles with **RHD**, insert the key with the fold-out key bit **with the buttons facing downwards** into the lock and unlock/lock the vehicle.
› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Replace the cover.

! CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without locking cylinders

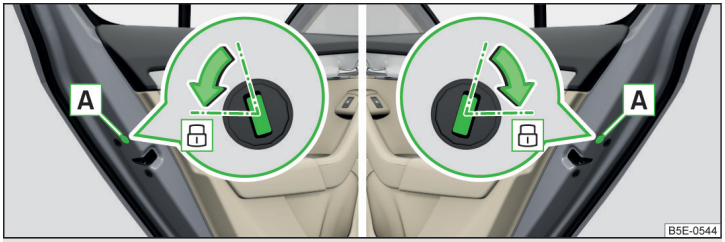


Fig. 336 **Emergency locking: Left/right rear door**

› Open the corresponding back door and remove the trim A » Fig. 336.
› Insert the key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (sprung position).
› Replace the cover A.

After closing, the door is locked.

Unlock the boot lid

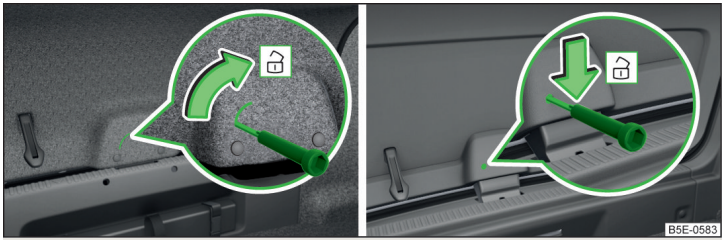


Fig. 337 **Unlock Flap: Variant 1 / Variant 2**

The boot lid can be unlocked manually from inside.

› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the recess or the opening in the trim» Fig. 337 as far as the stop.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

Fig. 338 **Remove the cover/release the selector lever**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Open the stowage compartment in the front centre console.
› Grab hold of the cover A in the area of the arrows and carefully raise it forwards in the direction of the arrow 1 and then backwards » Fig. 338.
› Press on the yellow plastic part in the direction of arrow 2, simultaneously press the lock button in the selector lever handle and put the lever in position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

Fig. 339
Setting the service position for the wiper arms

Fig. 340 **Replace windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 297 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Setting the service position
- Switch the ignition on and off again.
- Within 10 seconds, push the lever in the direction of arrow » Fig. 339 and hold for approximately 2 seconds.

Removing the wiper blade
- Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 340.
- Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
- Hold the wiper arm and press the safety catch A in the direction of arrow 2.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade
- Push the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
- Turn on the ignition and press the lever into the direction of the arrow » Fig. 339.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

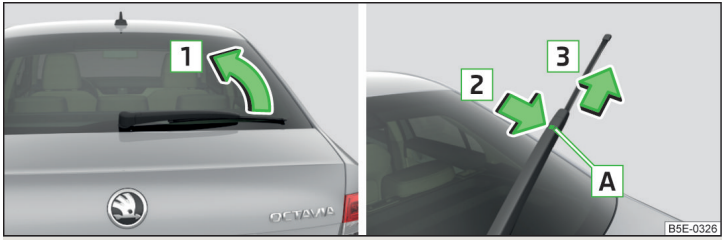


Fig. 341 **Replace the rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 297 first.

Removing the wiper blade
- Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 341.
- Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
- Hold the wiper arm and press the safety catch A in the direction of arrow 2.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade
- Push the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

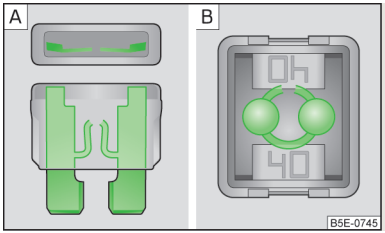


Fig. 342
Blown fuse

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. A blown fuse is recognisable by the molten metal strip » Fig. 342 A/B.

WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 272.

CAUTION

- Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows after a short time, then seek the assistance of a specialist garage.
- Do “not repair” the fuses and do not replace them with stronger ones - it can cause a fire and could damage parts of the electrical system.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse. Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.

Fuses in the dashboard - LHD

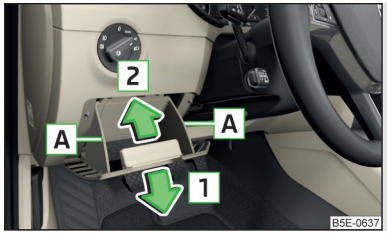


Fig. 343
Storage compartment on the driver's side

Read and observe ! and ! on page 299 first.

The fuse box is located behind the storage compartment on the driver's side.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Open the storage box on the driver's side.
› Hold the stacker laterally in the region A and open by pulling in the direction of arrow 1 (A greater force is required to open) » Fig. 343.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment » Fig. 346 *on page 301*.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.
› Close the compartment by pressing in arrow direction 2 until you hear it click.

Fuses in the dashboard - RHD

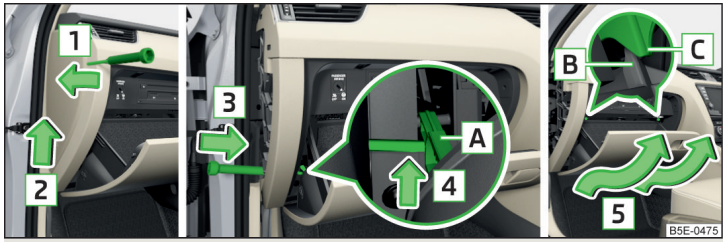


Fig. 344 **Storage compartment on the front passenger side**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 299 first.

The fuse box is located behind the storage compartment on the front passenger side.

Fold down the storage compartment and replace the fuse

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Insert a screwdriver under the side cover » Fig. 344.
› Unlock the cover in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Push the cover out in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Open the storage compartment.
› Insert a screwdriver from the side into the dash panel in the direction of arrow 3.
› Use the screwdriver to unlock the brake rod A of the storage compartment in the direction of arrow 4.
› Remove the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment » Fig. 346 *on page 301*.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.

Fold back the storage compartment

› Move the stop buffer B of the storage compartment behind the brackets C » Fig. 344.
› Push in the storage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 5.
› Insert the brake rod and lock it against the arrow 4 with a screwdriver.
› Push in the side cover against the direction of the arrow 2.
› Press the side cover fully against the direction of the arrow 1.
› Close the storage compartment.

Fuse assignment in the dashboard

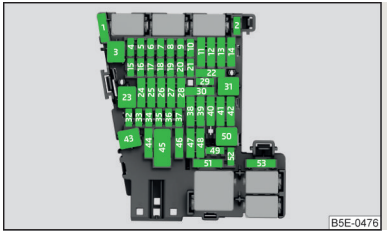


Fig. 345
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 299 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Not assigned
3	Voltage stabiliser for taxi vehicles
4	Heated steering wheel
5	Databus
6	Sensor Alarm
7	Air conditioning, heating, recipient of the wireless remote control for auxiliary heating, selector lever of the automatic transmission
8	Light switch, rain sensor, diagnosis connection, ambient lighting, control unit for front headlights
9	All-wheel drive
10	Infotainment screen
11	Light - left
12	Infotainment
13	Belt tensioner - driver's side
14	Air blower for air conditioning,heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	Phonebox, Wireless phone charging

No.	Consumer
17	Instrument cluster, emergency call
18	Reversing camera
19	KESSY system
20	Operating lever underneath the steering wheel
21	Adaptive Shock absorber
22	Trailer device - electrical outlet
23	Panoramic tilt / slide sunroof
24	Light - right
25	Central locking- front left door, window - left, exterior mirrors - Heating, fold-in function, setting the mirror surface
26	Heated front seats
27	Interior lighting
28	Towing hitch - left lighting
29	Not assigned
30	Heated rear seats
31	Not assigned
32	Parking aid (Park Assist)
33	Airbag switch for hazard warning lights
34	TCS, ESC, tyre pressure monitoring, air conditioning, reversing light switch, mirror with automatic blackout, START-STOP, heated rear seats, sport sound generator
35	Headlight range adjustment, diagnosis socket, sensor (camera) behind the windscreen, radar sensor
36	Headlight right
37	Headlight left
38	Towing hitch - right lighting
39	Central - front right door, window lifter - right, right Mirrors - Heating, fold-in function, setting the mirror surface
40	12 volt power socket
41	Belt tensioner - front passenger side
42	Central - rear doors, headlamp washers, washer
43	Music amplifier

No.	Consumer
44	Trailer device - electrical outlet
45	Electrically adjustable seats
46	230 volt power socket
47	Rear window wiper
48	Assist system for blind spot monitoring
49	Engine starting, clutch pedal switch
50	Opening the boot lid
51	Multi-function unit for taxi vehicles
52	Voltage stabiliser for taxis, USB socket
53	Heated rear window

Fuses in the engine compartment

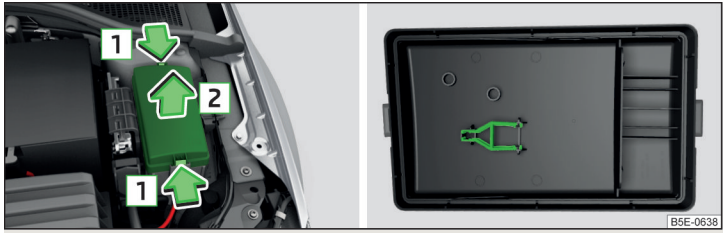


Fig. 346 **Fuse panel cover: Removing cover / plastic clip for fuses**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 299 first.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Simultaneously press the lock buttons of the cover together in the direction of arrow 1 and remove the cover in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 346.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box » Fig. 346.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.
› Replace the cover, push the lock buttons of the cover together and lock.

CAUTION

The cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be used correctly, otherwise water may penetrate into the fuse box – there is a danger of damage to the vehicle!

Fuse assignment in engine compartment

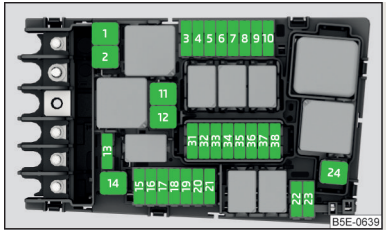


Fig. 347
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 299 first.

No.	Consumer
1	ESC, ABS
2	ESC, ABS
3	Engine control system
4	Radiator fan, oil temperature sensor, air mass meter, valve for fuel pressure control, electric auxiliary heater, oil pressure relief valve, valve for exhaust gas recirculation
5	Ignition coil of CNG relay, fuel injectors, fuel metering valve
6	Brake sensor
7	Coolant pump, radiator shutters, oil pressure valve, gear oil valve
8	Lambda probe
9	Ignition, preheating unit, flue damper, heating the crankcase ventilation
10	Fuel pump, ignition
11	Electrical auxiliary heating system
12	Electrical auxiliary heating system
13	Automatic gearbox
14	Heated windscreen
15	Horn
16	Ignition, fuel pump, CNG relay
17	ABS, ESC, motor control system, Relay for heated windscreen
18	Databus, battery data module
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Anti-theft alarm
21	Heated windscreen
22	Engine control system, voltage stabilizer for taxi vehicles
23	Starter
24	Electrical auxiliary heating system
31	Vacuum pump
32	Not assigned
33	Oil pump for automatic gearbox
34	Front differential
35	Not assigned
36	Not assigned
37	Aux. heating
38	Not assigned

Bulbs

Introduction

This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs or LED lights must be replaced by a specialist garage.

For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the low, high or fog beam.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 272.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- H7 and H8 bulbs are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.

CAUTION

- Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.
- The cap of the filament bulb must always be seated correctly in the headlight, otherwise this may allow water and debris to enter the headlight - risk of damage to the headlights.

Note

We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle.

Bulb arrangement in the halogen headlights

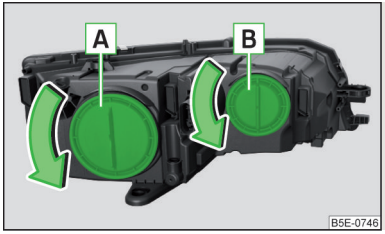


Fig. 348
Left headlight

Read and observe and on page 303 first.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 348

A Low beam
B Main beam

Changing the bulb for the low beam

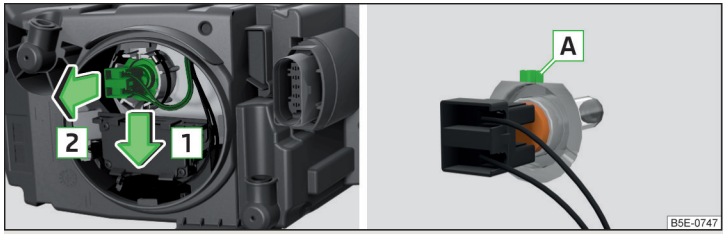


Fig. 349 **Changing the bulb for the low beam**

Read and observe and on page 303 first.

- Turn the protective cap A » Fig. 348 *on page 303* in direction of the arrow.
- Disconnect the connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 349.
- Remove the connector to the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
- Remove the connector.
- Plug the connector into the new bulb so that the fixing lug A on the bulb points upwards.
- Insert the connector, with the bulb, into the headlight opposite to the direction of arrow 2 until you feel it lock into place.
- Insert the protective cap A » Fig. 348 *on page 303* and turn it opposite to the direction of the arrow.

Changing the bulb for the main beam

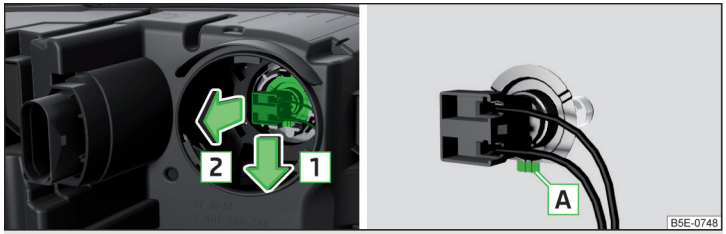


Fig. 350 **Changing the bulb for the main beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 303 first.

- Turn the protective cap B » Fig. 348 *on page 303* in direction of the arrow.
- Disconnect the connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 350.
- Remove the connector to the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
- Remove the connector.
- Plug the connector into the new bulb so that the fixing lug A on the bulb points downwards.
- Insert the connector, with the bulb, into the headlight opposite to the direction of arrow 2 until you feel it lock into place.
- Insert the protective cap B » Fig. 348 *on page 303* and turn it opposite to the direction of the arrow.

Change bulb for fog lights switch - Variant 1

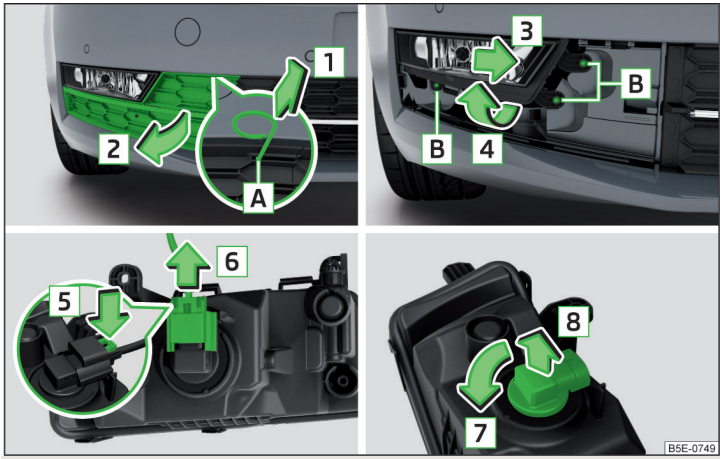


Fig. 351 **Remove the fog lamp / bulb change - variant 1**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 303 first.

Remove the protective grille and headlight

- Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims into opening A » Fig. 351.
- By pulling the hook in direction of arrow 1, remove the protective grille in the direction of arrow 2.
- Unscrew the screws B with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
- Carefully move the headlights in the direction of arrow 3 and remove in the direction of arrow 4.

Replacing the light bulb

- Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 5.
- Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 6.
- Turn the socket with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow 7.
- Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 8.
- Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 7 as far as the stop.

› Fit the connector.

Refit the headlight and grille

› Insert the fog light opposite to the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 351, push opposite to the direction of arrow 3 and bolt into place.
› Insert the guard and push it gently until it locks into place.

Change bulb for fog lights switch - Variant 2

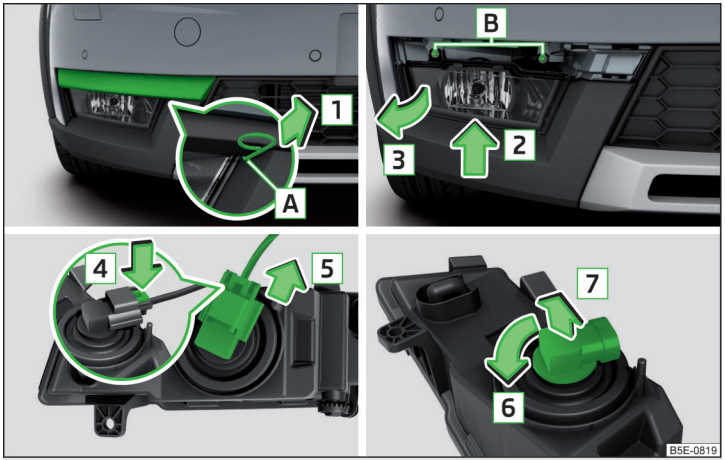


Fig. 352 **Remove the fog lamp / bulb change - variant 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 303 first.

Remove the cover and headlight

› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims into opening A » Fig. 352.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Unscrew the screws B with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› Raise the headlights in the direction of arrow 2 and remove carefully in the direction of arrow 3.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 4.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Turn the socket with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow 6.
› Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 7.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 6 as far as the stop.
› Fit the connector.

Refit the headlight and cover

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 352 and tighten.
› Insert the guard and push it gently until it locks into place.

Removing/installing tail light

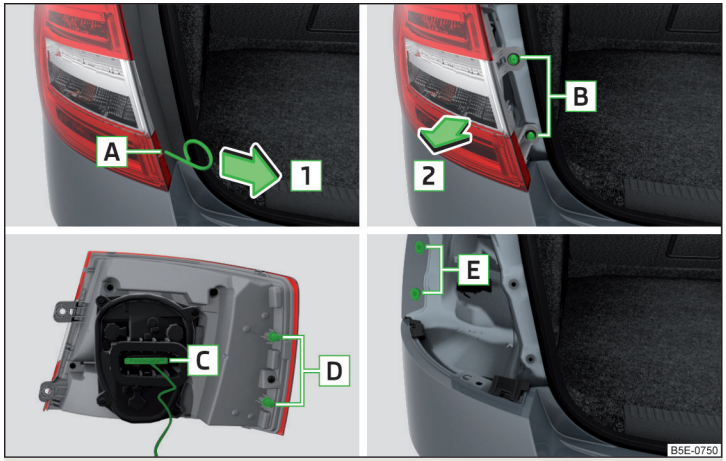


Fig. 353 **Removing lamp**

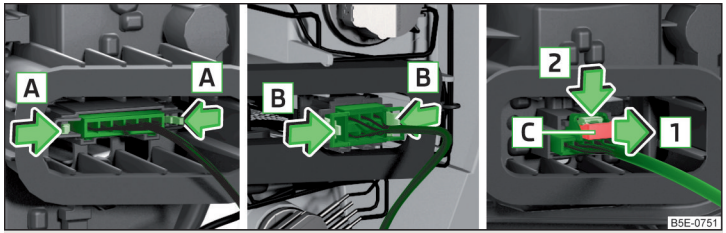


Fig. 354 **Connector removal variants**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 303 first.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.
› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims into opening A[1] » Fig. 353.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Unscrew the screws B with the key from the tool kit.
› Hold the light and carefully remove in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove connector C .

Remove the plug

The connector type varies according to the vehicle version » Fig. 354.

› For connectors with lateral safety tabs, push these in the direction of arrows A or B and remove the connector carefully.
› For connectors with removable safety tabs C, pull these in the direction of arrow 1, press the safety tabs in the direction of arrow 2 and remove the connector carefully.

Fitting

› Insert the bulb holder into the lamp. The safety tabs on the connector must lock into place.
› Insert the lamp with pins D » Fig. 353 into the recesses E in the body.
› Carefully push the cover in » !.
› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover. The cover must engage securely.

[1] The position of the opening may vary depending on the vehicle model.

› Shut the boot lid.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle does not become stuck between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – or there is a risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly - Variant 1

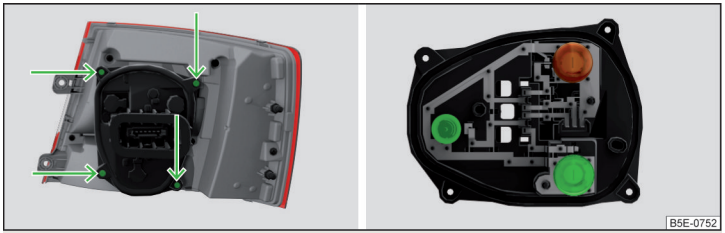


Fig. 355 **Outer part of the lamp/inner part of the lamp with bulbs**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 303 first.

› Unscrew the lamp holder » Fig. 355 with the screwdriver from the car tool kit, and remove the lamp holder from the light assembly.
› Turn the respective bulb **anti-clockwise** until it stops and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder into the light and screw in.

Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly - Variant 2

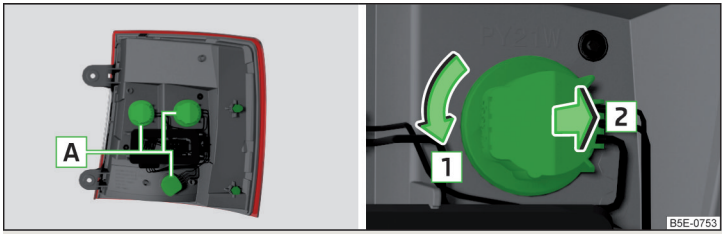


Fig. 356 **Outer part of the lamp/Remove holder with bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 303 first.

- Turn the holder with the bulb A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 356.
- Remove the socket with the bulb from the lamp housing in the direction of arrow 2.
- Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
- Reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 to the stop.

Technical data

Technical data

Basic vehicle data

Introduction

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The values given have been determined in accordance with the rules and conditions specified in statutory or technical regulations for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The values listed are for the basic model without any optional equipment.

Vehicle data

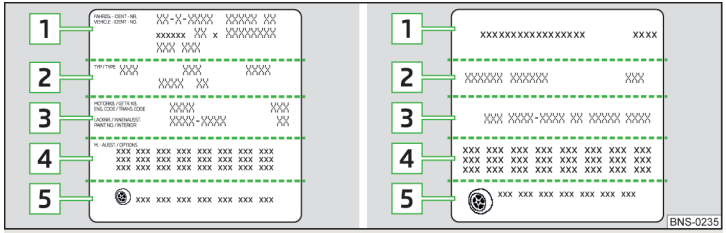


Fig. 357 **Vehicle data sticker**

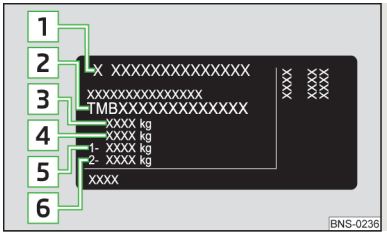


Fig. 358
Type plate

Vehicle data sticker
The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 357 is affixed in the Owner's Manual and under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description
5 Approved tyre diameter in inches[1)]

The approved tyres and rim sizes for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's technical documentation (the so called COC document) and this also states the declaration of conformity[2)].

Type plate
The type plate » Fig. 358 is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right-hand driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

1 Vehicle manufacturers
2 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
3 Maximum permissible gross weight
4 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
5 Maximum permissible front axle load
6 Maximum permissible rear axle load

1) Only valid for some countries.
2) Only valid for some countries and some models.

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

The VIN can also be displayed in the CAR/ → ⚙ → **Service** menu of the infotainment system.

Engine number
The engine number is embossed in the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents, field 17.

Maximum permissible towed weight
The listed maximum allowable trailer weight is only valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

! WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight

This value is only a guide value and corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without any equipment added that would also increase the weight (e.g. air conditioning, emergency or spare wheel etc.). The operating weight also includes the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight - Octavia

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	MG	1225
	DSG	1247
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	MG	1225
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	MG	1394
	DSG	1419
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1255
	DSG	1269
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1213
	AG	1253
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG (EU5)	1318
	MG (EU6)	1320/1318[a]
	DSG 4x4	1428
	DSG (EU4, EU5)	1333
	DSG (EU6)	1335/1333[a]
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1305
1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR	MG	1305
	DSG	1320
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1325
	DSG	1345
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1332
	MG 4x4	1438
	DSG	1352
	DSG 4x4	1468
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1463

[a] Only valid for some countries.

Operating weight - Octavia RS

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	MG	–[a]
	DSG	–[a]
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	MG	–[a]
	DSG	–[a]
	DSG 4x4	–[a]

[a] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Warning triangle – Octavia Combi

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	MG	1247
	DSG	1269
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	MG	1247
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	MG	1416
	DSG	1441
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1277
	DSG	1291
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1235
	AG	1275
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG (EU5)	1340
	MG (EU6)	1342/1340[a]
	DSG 4x4	1450
	DSG (EU4, EU5)	1355
	DSG (EU6)	1357/1355[a]
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1327
1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR	MG	1327
	DSG	1342
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1347
	DSG	1367
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1354
	MG 4x4	1458
	DSG	1374
	DSG 4x4	1490
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1485

[a] Only valid for some countries.

Operating weight - Octavia Combi RS

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	MG	-[a]
	DSG	-[a]
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	MG	-[a]
	DSG	-[a]
	DSG 4x4	-[a]

[a] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Operating weight - Octavia Combi Scout

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	-[a]
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	-[a]
	DSG 4x4	-[a]
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	-[a]

[a] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Note

If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.

- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof load including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- The trailer drawbar load with trailer operation (max. 75 kg or 80 kg for vehicles with 4-wheel drive or 56 kg for G-TEC vehicles).

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

Note

- The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
- Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption valueslisted on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

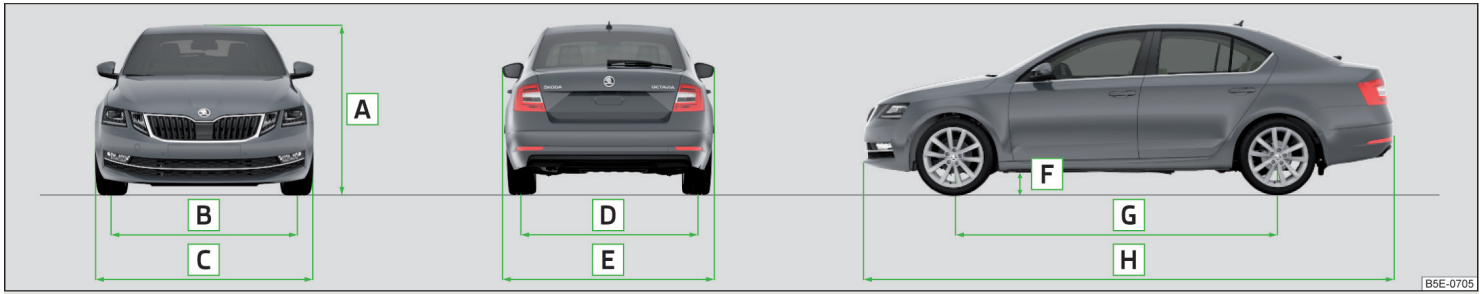


Fig. 359 **Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 359	Specification		Octavia	Octavia 4x4	Octavia RS
A	Height	Basic dimension	1461	1459	–[a]
		G-TEC vehicles	1458	-	-
B	Front track » page 314				
C	Width		1814	1814	–[a]
D	Rear track » page 314				
E	Width including exterior mirrors		2017	2017	–[a]
F	Clearance		141	138	–[a]
G	Wheelbase	Basic dimension	2686	2680	–[a]
		Vehicles with 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine	2680	-	-
		G-TEC vehicles	2680	-	-
H	Length		4670	4670	–[a]

[a] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Dimensions - Octavia estate

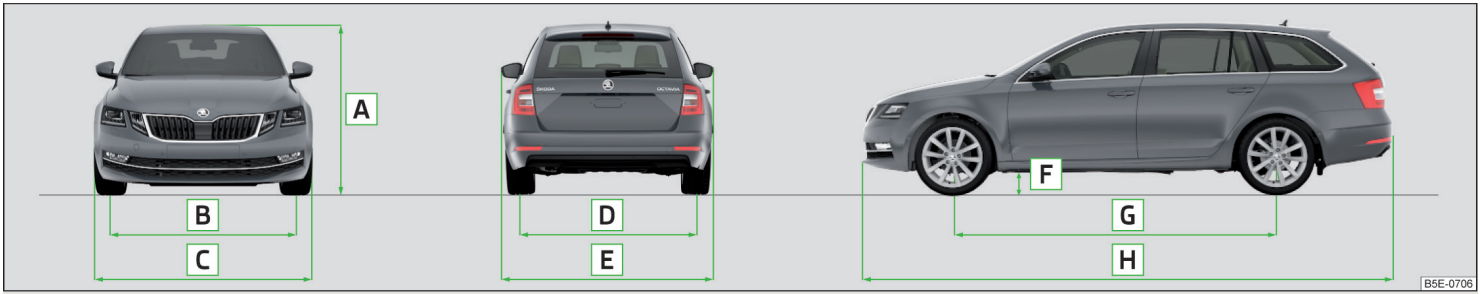


Fig. 360 **Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 360	Specification		Octavia Estate	OCTAVIA Estate 4x4	Octavia Combi RS	Octavia Combi Scout
A	Height	Basic dimension	1465	1463	–[a]	–[a]
		G-TEC vehicles	1462	-	-	-
B	Front track » page 314					
C	Width		1814	1814	–[a]	–[a]
D	Rear track » page 314					
E	Width including exterior mirrors		2017	2017	–[a]	–[a]
F	Clearance		141	139	–[a]	–[a]
G	Wheelbase	Basic dimension	2686	2680	–[a]	–[a]
		Vehicles with 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine	2680	-	-	-
		G-TEC vehicles	2680	-	-	-
H	Length		4667	4667	–[a]	–[a]

[a] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Track gauge front/rear

Engine	Front track	Rear track
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	1549	1540
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	1549	1540
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	1543	1549
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	1543	1534
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	1549	1540
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	1543	1542
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	–[a)]	–[a)]
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	1549	1540
1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR	1549	1540
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	1543	1534
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	1543	1534/1542[b)]
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	1543	1542

[a)] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.
[b)] Applies to Octavia 4x4/Octavia Combi 4x4 vehicles.

Overhang angle

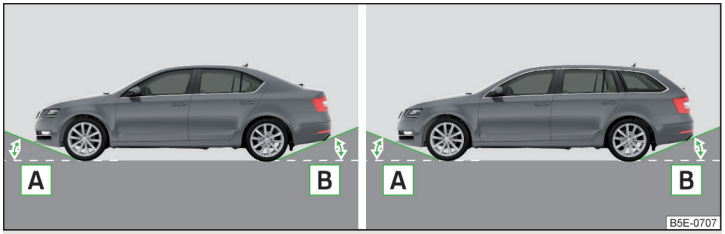


Fig. 361 **Overhang angle: Octavia/Octavia Estate**

Angle » Fig. 361

A Overhang angle, front

B Overhang angle, rear

The values shown indicate the maximum incline of an embankment, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without collision of the bumper or underbody. The values listed represent the maximum axle load at the front and rear.

Departure angle (°) - Octavia

» Fig. 361	Octavia		Octavia 4x4		Octavia RS	
	A	B	A	B	A	B
Basic dimension	14	12.1	14.2	12.4	–[a]	–[a]
G-TEC vehicles	14.1	13.3	-	-	-	-
Vehicles with 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine	14.1	12.5	-	-	-	-

[a] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Departure angle (°) - Octavia Combi

» Fig. 361	Octavia Estate		OCTAVIA Estate 4x4		Octavia Combi RS		Octavia Combi Scout	
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
Basic dimension	14	12.4	14.2	12.3	–[a]	–[a]	–[a]	–[a]
G-TEC vehicles	14	13.3	-	-	-	-	-	-

[a] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

Introduction

The values given have been determined in accordance with the rules and conditions specified in statutory or technical regulations for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The emissions standard is detailed in the technical vehicle documentation as well as in the certificate of conformity (COC document), which can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner[a)].

[a)] Only valid for some countries and some models.

1.0 l/85 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	85/5000-5500			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	200/2000-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	203	202	201	200
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.9	10	10.1	10.2

1.2 l/63 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	63/4300-5300	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	160/1400-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1197	
Body	**Octavia**	**Octavia Estate**
Transmission	**MG**	**MG**
Top speeds (km/h)	181	178
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12	12.2

1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	81/4800-6000			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	200/1500-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	195	195	193	193
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.9	11	11	11.1

1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	110/5000-6000			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250/1500-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	219	219	216	216
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.1	8.2	8.2	8.3

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	81/5800			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	155/3800-4000			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**AG**	**MG**	**AG**
Top speeds (km/h)	192	190	191	188
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	12	10.8	12.2

1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	132 / 5100-6200 (132 / 4500-6200)[a]						
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250 / 1250-5000 (280 / 1350-4500)[a]						
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1798						
Body	**Octavia**			**Octavia Estate**			
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**	**MG**	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4 Scout**
Top speeds (km/h)	231	231	229	229	229	227	–[b]
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.3	7.4	7.4	7.4	7.5	7.5	–[b]

[a] Applies to 4x4 vehicles.
[b] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

2.0 l/169 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	–[a]			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	–[a]			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	–[a]			
Body	**Octavia RS**		**Octavia Combi RS**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	–[a]	–[a]	–[a]	–[a]
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	–[a]	–[a]	–[a]	–[a]

[a] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	66/2750-4600	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	230/1400-2750	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598	
Body	**Octavia**	**Octavia Estate**
Transmission	**MG**	**MG**
Top speeds (km/h)	186	183
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.2	12.3

1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	85/3250-4000			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250/1500-3200			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	203	202	201	200
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.1	10.2	10.2	10.3

2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	105/3500-4000			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	320/1750-3000			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	215	212	213	210
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.7	8.9	8.7	9

2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	110/3500-4000									
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	320 / 1750-3000 (340 / 1750-3000)[a]									
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968									
Body	**Octavia**				**Octavia Estate**					
Transmission	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**MG 4x4 Scout**	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4 Scout**
Top speeds (km/h)	218	215	215	212	216	213	–[b]	213	210	–[b]
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.5/8.4[a]	8.5	8.6/8.5[a]	8.3	8.6/8.5[a]	8.6	–[b]	8.7/8.6[a]	8.4	–[b]

[a] Applies to cars with the EU6 emission standard.

[b] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	135/3500-4000								
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	380/1750-3250								
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968								
Body	**Octavia**				**Octavia Estate**				
Transmission	**MG RS**	**DSG RS**	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4 RS**	**MG RS**	**DSG RS**	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4 Scout**	**DSG 4x4 RS**
Top speeds (km/h)	–[a)]	–[a)]	228	–[a)]	–[a)]	–[a)]	226	–[a)]	–[a)]
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	–[a)]	–[a)]	7.1	–[a)]	–[a)]	–[a)]	7.2	–[a)]	–[a)]

[a)] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Index

A

B

C

D

E

F

N

O

S

T

U

V

W

X

Other Characters

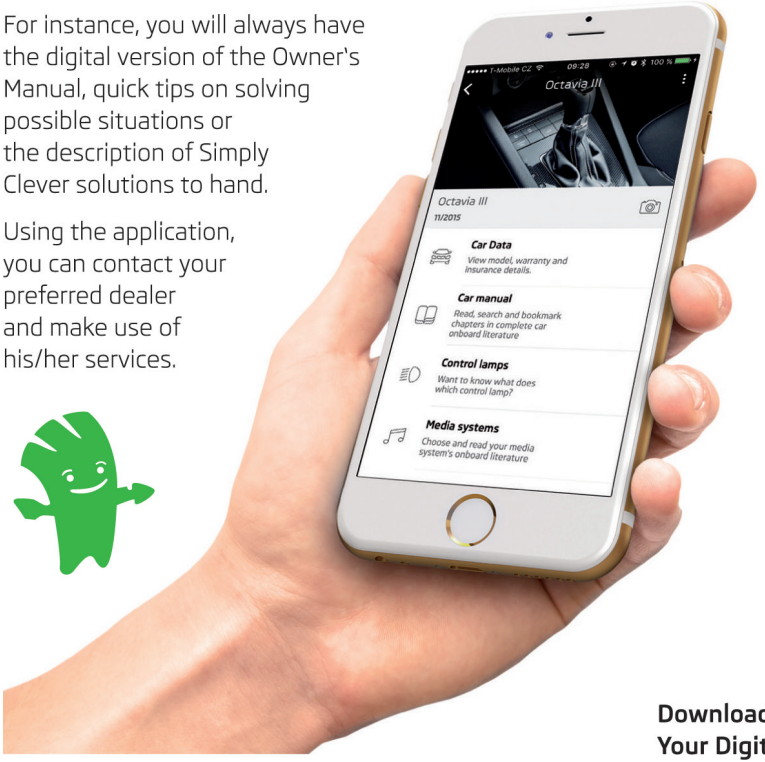
Published by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

The MyŠKODA App - your favourite mobile application

The mobile application MyŠKODA App is available for devices with the Android operating system (Google) or iOS (Apple). Its task is to support you, as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO, in everyday situations that are not only related to your vehicle.

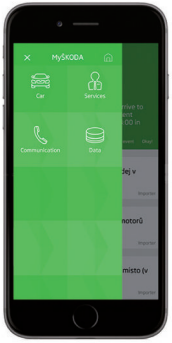
For instance, you will always have the digital version of the Owner's Manual, quick tips on solving possible situations or the description of Simply Clever solutions to hand.

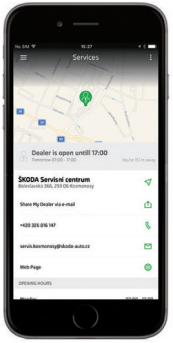
Using the application, you can contact your preferred dealer and make use of his/her services.



The application has an interactive assistant called **PAUL**. This guides you through the application and helps you solve everyday situations:

- Each time when there is an online connection to your vehicle, this will be monitored by PAUL. He tells you about everything that happens.
- PAUL is on hand with help and advice, using your calendar with scheduling. If there an online connection to the vehicle, he is able to include the fuel gauge, as well as traffic and weather conditions in scheduling. Therefore, you can always rely on PAUL to keep you informed and never let you down.





Download the MyŠKODA App
Your Digital Companion

Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Octavia anglicky 02.2017
5E0012720AL

5E0012720AL